**Owner's Manual**
**English 06.2025**
**4M6012720AE**

4M6012720AE

www.audi.com

Q8 Owner's Manual

# Owner's Manual

## Q8

**Audi** Vorsprung durch Technik

ownersmanual.audi.com

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2025 AUDI AG

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.

**WARNING**

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 83*.

4M6012720AE

**Notes on this Owner's Manual** . . . 6

**Quick reference** . . . 7
**Getting started** . . . 7
Online information . . . 7
FAQs . . . 7
Front cabin . . . 10
Overview of warning and indicator lamps . 11

**Displays and controls** . . . 17
**Instrument cluster** . . . 17
Overview of instrument cluster . . . 17
How to use the multi-function steering wheel . . . 18
Selecting the display . . . 18
Coolant temperature gauge . . . 19
Rev counter . . . 19
Power meter . . . 20
Mileage recorder . . . 20
Outside temperature display . . . 20
Engine oil temperature gauge . . . 21
Boost display . . . 21
Shift light display . . . 21
Sport displays . . . 21
Vehicle functions . . . 22

**Touch displays** . . . 24
General instructions for using the touch displays . . . 24
Multi Media Interface . . . 26

**Head-up display** . . . 33
Description . . . 33

**Speech dialogue system** . . . 34
General information . . . 34
Description . . . 34
External voice control function . . . 35

**Global functions** . . . 36
Other function selector buttons . . . 36

**Setting off** . . . 37
**Personal settings** . . . 37
Users . . . 37

**Opening and closing** . . . 39
Central locking system . . . 39
Keys . . . 45
Boot lid . . . 49
Child lock . . . 53
Electric windows . . . 54
Panoramic glass roof . . . 55
Garage door opener . . . 56

**Lights and vision** . . . 59
Exterior lights . . . 59
Interior lights . . . 63
Clear vision . . . 64
Windscreen wipers . . . 66

**Sitting correctly and safely** . . . 70
Ensuring the correct seating position . . . 70
Front seats . . . 70
Rear seats . . . 74
Steering wheel . . . 74
Head restraints . . . 75
Seat belts . . . 76
Memory function . . . 80
Airbag system . . . 80
Child restraint systems . . . 83

**Storage and convenience** . . . 90
Ashtray . . . 90
Cigarette lighter . . . 90
Power sources . . . 90
Cup holders . . . 91
Storage compartments . . . 91
Luggage compartment . . . 92
Roof carrier . . . 97

**Heating and cooling** . . . 100
Air conditioner . . . 100
Steering wheel heating . . . 105
Auxiliary heating/ventilation . . . 105
Auxiliary air conditioner . . . 107
Fluids in the air conditioner . . . 109

**Driving** . . . 110
Starting the vehicle . . . 110
Driving the vehicle . . . 112
Engine . . . 117
Start/stop system . . . 122
Brakes . . . 123

Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 125
Special driving situations . . . . . 127

**Handling dynamics** . . . . . 131
Audi drive select . . . . . 131
Suspension . . . . . 132
Steering . . . . . 134
Four-wheel drive (quattro) . . . . . 135
Electronic stabilisation control . . . . . 136

**High-voltage system** . . . . . 139
General information . . . . . 139
Charging the high-voltage battery . . . . . 141
Charging settings . . . . . 146
Charging equipment . . . . . 147

**Towing a trailer** . . . . . 158
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan . . . . . 158
Swivelling towing bracket . . . . . 161
Towing bracket with square tube . . . . . 165
Trailer assist . . . . . 167

**Assistance systems** . . . . . 171
**Driver assist systems** . . . . . 171
General information . . . . . 171
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings . . . . . 172
Driver assist menu . . . . . 175
Parking aid menu . . . . . 175

**Driver information** . . . . . 177
Speed warning . . . . . 177
Camera-based traffic sign recognition . . . 177
Traffic light information . . . . . 180
Fatigue warning . . . . . 181
Distraction warning . . . . . 182
Lap timer . . . . . 183
Acceleration measurement . . . . . 184
Night vision assist . . . . . 185

**Driver assistance** . . . . . 188
Speed regulation systems . . . . . 188
Efficiency assist . . . . . 190
Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 192
Distance warning . . . . . 205
Lane departure warning . . . . . 206
Audi pre sense . . . . . 208
Side assist . . . . . 212
Exit warning . . . . . 214
Intersection assist . . . . . 215
Emergency assist . . . . . 216

**Parking and manoeuvring** . . . . . 219
Introduction . . . . . 219
Rear parking aid . . . . . 219
Parking aid plus . . . . . 220
Reversing camera/surround view cameras . 223
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 227
Assisted parking . . . . . 228
Park assist . . . . . 231
Park assist plus . . . . . 233
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 236
Manoeuvre assist . . . . . 241

**Infotainment** . . . . . 243
**Telephone** . . . . . 243
Introduction . . . . . 243
Setting up . . . . . 243
Using the Audi phone box . . . . . 245
Using the telephone . . . . . 247
Settings . . . . . 250
Messages . . . . . 251
Troubleshooting . . . . . 252

**Audi connect** . . . . . 254
General information . . . . . 254
Audi connect infotainment . . . . . 255
Establishing a Wi-Fi connection . . . . . 255
Using the Wi-Fi hotspot . . . . . 255
Audi connect infotainment services . . . . . 256
Functions on demand . . . . . 256
Audi connect apps . . . . . 257
Audi connect vehicle control services . . . . 257
Settings . . . . . 258
Troubleshooting . . . . . 259

**Emergency call** . . . . . 260
Overview . . . . . 260
Emergency call . . . . . 260
Online roadside assistance call . . . . . 262
Information on data processing . . . . . 263
Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit . . . . . 264

4M6012720AE

**Navigation** . . . . . 265
Calling up the navigation menu . . . . . 265
myAudi navigation . . . . . 265
Entering a destination . . . . . 266
Stopping route guidance . . . . . 269
Map . . . . . 269
Predictive route guidance . . . . . 271
Alternative routes . . . . . 272
Further functions . . . . . 272
Satellite map . . . . . 273
Electric range . . . . . 274
Map update . . . . . 274
Traffic information . . . . . 275
Hazard alerts . . . . . 276
Settings . . . . . 277

**Radio** . . . . . 279
General information . . . . . 279
Radio functions . . . . . 280
Online radio . . . . . 282
Options and settings . . . . . 283
Troubleshooting . . . . . 285

**Media** . . . . . 286
General information . . . . . 286
DVD drive . . . . . 286
Bluetooth audio player . . . . . 287
Online media . . . . . 287
Multimedia connections . . . . . 288
Playing media . . . . . 289
Options and settings . . . . . 293
Supported media and file formats . . . . . 294
Troubleshooting . . . . . 295

**TV** . . . . . 297
General information . . . . . 297
TV functions . . . . . 298
Further settings . . . . . 300
Interference . . . . . 301
Receiving encrypted TV channels . . . . . 301

**In-car experience** . . . . . 303
Themes . . . . . 303

**Smartphone interface** . . . . . 304
Setting up . . . . . 304
Troubleshooting . . . . . 305

**Further settings** . . . . . 306
System settings . . . . . 306
Software update . . . . . 307
Connected devices . . . . . 307
Legal information . . . . . 308

**Service and care** . . . . . 310
**Checking and topping up fluids** . 310
Fuel . . . . . 310
Filling the tank . . . . . 311
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/ DEF) . . . . . 314
Emission control system . . . . . 318
Engine compartment . . . . . 320
Engine oil . . . . . 324
Cooling system . . . . . 326
Brake fluid . . . . . 329
Electrical system . . . . . 330
Battery . . . . . 330
Windscreen washer system . . . . . 334
Service interval display . . . . . 334

**Wheels** . . . . . 336
Tyres and rims . . . . . 336
Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . . . 342
Tyre pressure monitoring system . . . . . 343

**Care of vehicle and cleaning** . . . . . 346
General information . . . . . 346
Washing the vehicle . . . . . 346
Information on cleaning and care . . . . . 347
Taking the vehicle out of service . . . . . 351

**Self-help** . . . . . 352
**Mobility** . . . . . 352
General information . . . . . 352
Equipment . . . . . 352
Tyre repair kit . . . . . 353
Changing a wheel . . . . . 355
Collapsible spare wheel . . . . . 359

Jump-starting . . . . . 360
Towing away . . . . . 362

**Fuses and bulbs** . . . . . 365
Fuses . . . . . 365
Bulbs . . . . . 369

**Customer information** . . . . . 370
**Data protection** . . . . . 370
Information on data protection . . . . . 370
Image recording . . . . . 370
Memory . . . . . 370
Information transmitted . . . . . 372

**Accessories and modifications to the vehicle** . . . . . 375
Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle . . . . . 375
Accessories and replacement parts . . . . . 376
Position for a toll device on the windscreen . . . . . 377

**Technical data** . . . . . 378
Identification data . . . . . 378
Vehicle data . . . . . 378

**Other information** . . . . . 381
Online Car Care . . . . . 381
Trademarks and licences . . . . . 381
Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH . . . . . 381
Information on waste disposal . . . . . 381
Radio equipment . . . . . 382
Additional customer information . . . . . 385

**Index** . . . . . 387

4M6012720AE

This Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

**MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE**

Read this Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

**Updates to the Owner's Manual:** Please bear in mind that Audi[1)] works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. Depending on the vehicle and the market, such alterations may be possible via software updates. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This is done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. You can find out whether a digital or printed supplement applies to your vehicle by referring to the corresponding information in the supplement.

**Vehicle-specific features:** This Owner's Manual describes standard, country-specific and optional equipment which is available for the entire model series. It is also possible that some equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. The Manual therefore also describes items which are not fitted in your specific vehicle. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

**Indications of applicability:** Some sections do not apply to all vehicles. In such cases, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". In addition to this, optional and/or vehicle-specific equipment and functions may be marked with an asterisk "* " or indicated by a corresponding remark (e.g. "depending on vehicle equipment").

**Symbols and descriptive conventions in the Owner's Manual:**

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ Section continued on next page

⇨ *page 80* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects

⇨ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

**WARNING**

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

**CAUTION**

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

**For the sake of the environment**

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

**Note**

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

1) "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

# Getting started

## Online information

### myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on your mobile device via myAudi. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

- ▸ Go online to my.audi.com, or
- ▸ Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

**Note**

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

### Accessing the Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Depending on the country, you may be able to view the Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP** > **Owner's Manual**.

Whenever you open the Owner's Manual, it is opened in the language selected as the system language on the MMI.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: To change the language of the Owner's Manual, select the following on the home screen: **HELP** > **Owner's Manual** > ⓘ.

#### Application options

- – Call up Owner's Manual content by chapter
- – View supplements (if supplement is available)
- – Call up available indicator lamps and their meanings
- – Search for a certain key word in the index
- – The text search function can be used to search the entire contents of the Owner's Manual for your own search terms.

**WARNING**

You should only use the online Owner's Manual when the vehicle is safely parked; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident.

## FAQs

### Before you set off

- – How do I adjust the seats? ⇨ *page 70*
- – How do I adjust the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 74*
- – How does the selector lever work? ⇨ *page 113*
- – What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? ⇨ *page 113*
- – How does the electromechanical parking brake work? ⇨ *page 125*
- – How do I adjust the exterior mirrors? ⇨ *page 64*
- – How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇨ *page 311*
- – How do I charge my plug-in hybrid vehicle? ⇨ *page 141*
- – How do I refill the AdBlue tank on my diesel vehicle? ⇨ *page 316*
- – How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇨ *page 66*
- – Where is the windscreen washer container? ⇨ *page 323*
- – How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 343* or ⇨ *page 344*
- – How do I drive with a trailer or caravan? ⇨ *page 158*

### Breakdowns and emergencies

- – How do I jump-start my vehicle? ⇨ *page 360*
- – Where can I find the warning triangle? ⇨ *page 352*
- – Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇨ *page 352*
- – Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇨ *page 338*
- – Which airbags are installed in my vehicle? ⇨ *page 80*
- – Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇨ *page 362*

4M6012720AE

## Useful functions

– How can I use a mobile phone as a key to the vehicle? ⇨ *page 39* or ⇨ *page 48*
– How can I open the boot lid with a foot gesture? ⇨ *page 51*
– How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇨ *page 192*
– How can I have the adaptive cruise assist system react automatically to speed limits and the road ahead? ⇨ *page 198*
– How can I stay in my lane more easily? ⇨ *page 196*
– How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇨ *page 206*
– How can I use the parking aid? ⇨ *page 219*
– How can I safely navigate blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see? ⇨ *page 215* or ⇨ *page 225*
– How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇨ *page 60*
– How can I drive off more easily? ⇨ *page 126*
– How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇨ *page 212, Side assist*
– How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇨ *page 131, Audi drive select*
– Why does the engine switch off while I am driving? ⇨ *page 118*
– How can I benefit from using the swerve assist and turn assist features? ⇨ *page 211* or ⇨ *page 211*

## Displays and controls

– How do I turn on the touch displays? ⇨ *page 26*
– How do I use the touch displays? ⇨ *page 24*
– How do I adjust the volume? ⇨ *page 36*
– How do I navigate through the menus? ⇨ *page 27*
– How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇨ *page 31*
– How can I control functions such as the navigation system by voice? ⇨ *page 34*
– Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇨ *page 18* or ⇨ *page 36*
– How can I have information displayed on the windscreen? ⇨ *page 33, Head-up display*
– How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇨ *page 64*

## Infotainment

– How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇨ *page 243*
– How can I switch between connected devices? ⇨ *page 307*
– How can I call up information online? ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*
– How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇨ *page 255*
– What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇨ *page 266*
– How do I operate the map functions? ⇨ *page 269*
– How can I display traffic information? ⇨ *page 275*
– How can I listen to the radio? ⇨ *page 279*
– How can I play media? ⇨ *page 289*
– How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇨ *page 287, Bluetooth audio player*

## Tips and tricks

– How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇨ *page 41*
– How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇨ *page 55, Convenience open/close function*
– How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇨ *page 51*
– How can I operate both sides of the air conditioner together? ⇨ *page 101*
– How can I deactivate the front passenger's airbag? ⇨ *page 83*
– How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇨ *page 83*
– What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇨ *page 346*
– How can I drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way? ⇨ *page 121*

▶

– How can I see when the next service is due?
⇨ *page 334*

4M6012720AE

# Front cabin

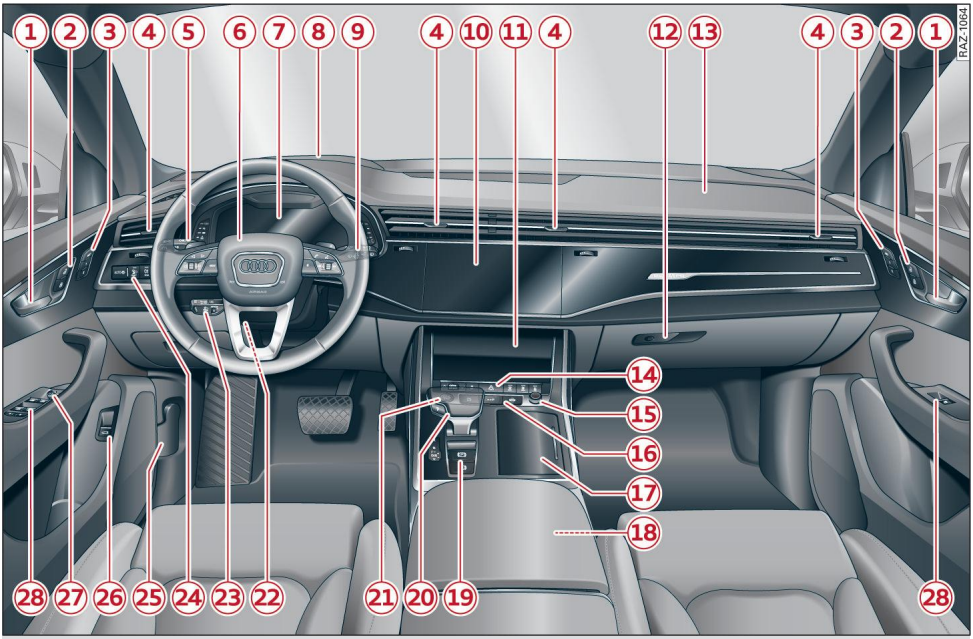



**Fig. 1** Front cabin

① Interior door handle
② Central locking switch . . . . . 41
③ Buttons for memory function . . . . . 80
④ Vent
⑤ Control lever for:
– Turn signals and main beam headlights . . . . . 60
– Main beam assist . . . . . 60
– Lane departure warning . . . . . 206
– Lane guidance . . . . . 196
⑥ Multi-function steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag . . . . . 80
– Controls . . . . . 18, 36
– Paddle levers . . . . . 114
⑦ Instrument cluster . . . . . 17
⑧ Head-up display . . . . . 33
⑨ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer . . . . . 66
⑩ Upper display . . . . . 26
⑪ Lower display . . . . . 26
⑫ Lockable glove box with:
– CD/DVD drive . . . . . 286
– Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag . . . . . 83
⑬ Front passenger's airbag . . . . . 80
⑭ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– Drive select . . . . . 131
– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) . . . . . 137
– Hazard warning lights . . . . . 62
– Defroster . . . . . 100
– Rear window heating . . . . . 100
– Auxiliary heating / ventilation . . . 105
⑮ MMI control dial . . . . . 26, 36
⑯ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:
– Parking aids . . . . . 219
– Park assist plus . . . . . 233
– Driver assist systems . . . . . 175
⑰ Depending on equipment fitted: ▶

– Starting the engine in the event of a malfunction . . . . . 111
– Cup holder . . . . . 91
– Electrical socket . . . . . 90
– Ashtray . . . . . 90
– Cigarette lighter . . . . . 90
– Vehicle key holder

(18) Depending on equipment fitted:
– USB ports with charging function . 288
– Audi phone box . . . . . 245

(19) Switches for:
– Electromechanical parking brake . 125
– Hold assist . . . . . 126

(20) Selector lever for automatic gearbox . . . . . 113

(21) START ENGINE STOP button . . . . 110

(22) Steering wheel adjustment . . . . . 74

(23) Control lever for:
– Speed regulation systems . . . . . 188
– Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 192

(24) Controls for:
– Lights . . . . . 59
– All-weather lights . . . . . 59
– Rear fog light . . . . . 59

(25) Bonnet lock release . . . . . 322

(26) Button for:
– Boot lid . . . . . 49
– Tank flap release (plug-in hybrid drive) . . . . . 312

(27) Adjuster for exterior mirrors . . . . . 64

(28) Switches for:
– Window regulators . . . . . 54
– Child lock . . . . . 53


**Note**

– Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
– The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ *page 10*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

# Overview of warning and indicator lamps

## Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go back out when the engine is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages) ⇨ *page 18*.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.

## ⚠ Central warning/indicator lamps

If the warning lamp ⚠ or indicator lamp ⚠ lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

## Overview

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:

| Red warning lamps | |
|---|---|
|  | Central warning lamp ⇨ *page 11*, instrument cluster ⇨ *page 17* |
|  | Cooling system ⇨ *page 19*, ⇨ *page 326*, ⇨ *page 326*, ⇨ *page 327* |
|  | Seat belt ⇨ *page 79* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Engine start system<br>⇨ *page 111* |
|  | Gearbox<br>⇨ *page 116* |
|  | Drive system<br>⇨ *page 122*,<br>high-voltage system<br>⇨ *page 139*,<br>electrical system<br>⇨ *page 330* |
|  | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 125*,<br>⇨ *page 329*,<br>electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 127* |
|  | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 125* |
|  | Air suspension<br>⇨ *page 133* |
|  | Steering<br>⇨ *page 134* |
|  | Steering<br>⇨ *page 134* |
|  | Night vision assist<br>⇨ *page 186* |
|  | Night vision assist<br>⇨ *page 186* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194*,<br>take over braking prompt<br>⇨ *page 197*,<br>safe start monitor<br>⇨ *page 203* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194*,<br>⇨ *page 198* |
|  | Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist)<br>⇨ *page 198* |
|  | Distance warning<br>⇨ *page 205* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 206* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 206* |
|  | Pre sense<br>⇨ *page 209*,<br>⇨ *page 209*,<br>⇨ *page 209*,<br>intersection assist<br>⇨ *page 216* |
|  | Swerve assist<br>⇨ *page 211* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | Bonnet<br>⇨ *page 322* |
|  | Engine oil pressure<br>⇨ *page 324* |
|  | Engine oil level (MIN)<br>⇨ *page 324* |
|  | Electrical system<br>⇨ *page 330* |
|  | Loose wheel warning<br>⇨ *page 340*,<br>⇨ *page 340* |

**Yellow indicator lamps**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Central indicator lamp<br>⇨ *page 11* |
|  | Engine speed governing<br>⇨ *page 20* |
|  | Engine speed governing<br>⇨ *page 20*,<br>drive system<br>⇨ *page 122*,<br>cooling system<br>⇨ *page 326* |
|  | Central locking system<br>⇨ *page 42* |
|  | Battery in remote control key<br>⇨ *page 47* |
|  | Bulb monitor<br>⇨ *page 63* |

▶

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Adaptive light<br>⇨ *page 63* |
|  | Headlight range control<br>⇨ *page 63* |
|  | Light sensor/rain sensor<br>⇨ *page 63*,<br>⇨ *page 69* |
|  | Windscreen wipers<br>⇨ *page 69* |
|  | Safety systems<br>⇨ *page 81* |
|  | Engine start system<br>⇨ *page 111* |
|  | Convenience key<br>⇨ *page 111* |
|  | Gearbox<br>⇨ *page 116* |
|  | Vehicle sound<br>⇨ *page 122* |
|  | Drive system<br>⇨ *page 122* |
|  | Brake pads<br>⇨ *page 125* |
|  | Brake servo<br>⇨ *page 125*,<br>electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 127* |
|  | Brake system<br>⇨ *page 125* |
|  | Active roll stabilisation<br>⇨ *page 133* |
|  | Suspension control<br>⇨ *page 133* |
|  | Air suspension<br>⇨ *page 133* |
|  | Steering<br>⇨ *page 134* |
|  | Steering<br>⇨ *page 134* |
|  | Sport differential<br>⇨ *page 135* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Electronic stabilisation control<br>⇨ *page 137*,<br>⇨ *page 137* |
|  | Electronic stabilisation control<br>⇨ *page 137* |
|  | Electronic stabilisation control<br>⇨ *page 137* |
|  | Anti-lock brake system<br>⇨ *page 137* |
|  | Charge high-voltage battery<br>⇨ *page 146*,<br>tank/high-voltage system<br>⇨ *page 312* |
|  | Charge high-voltage battery<br>⇨ *page 146*,<br>tank/high-voltage system<br>⇨ *page 312* |
|  | Towing bracket<br>⇨ *page 161*,<br>⇨ *page 161*,<br>⇨ *page 164* |
|  | Fatigue warning<br>⇨ *page 182* |
|  | Distraction warning<br>⇨ *page 183* |
|  | Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist)<br>⇨ *page 198*,<br>take over steering prompt (lane departure warning)<br>⇨ *page 207* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 204* |
|  | Distance warning<br>⇨ *page 205* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 208* |
|  | Pre sense<br>⇨ *page 208*,<br>⇨ *page 211*,<br>⇨ *page 212* |
|  | Side assist<br>⇨ *page 214* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Exit warning system<br>⇨ *page 215* |
|  | Intersection assist<br>⇨ *page 216* |
|  | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 217* |
|  | Parking aids<br>⇨ *page 222* |
|  | Rear cross-traffic assist<br>⇨ *page 228* |
|  | Park assist<br>⇨ *page 233*,<br>park assist plus<br>⇨ *page 236* |
|  | Manoeuvre assist<br>⇨ *page 242* |
|  | Emergency call function<br>⇨ *page 262* |
|  | Fuel tank system<br>⇨ *page 311*,<br>⇨ *page 312*,<br>⇨ *page 318* |
|  | Emission control system<br>⇨ *page 312*,<br>⇨ *page 319* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | Particulate filter<br>⇨ *page 318* |
|  | Engine oil level (MIN)<br>⇨ *page 324*,<br>⇨ *page 325* |
|  | Engine oil level (MAX)<br>⇨ *page 324* |
|  | Engine oil sensor<br>⇨ *page 324* |
|  | Engine warm-up requested<br>⇨ *page 324* |
|  | Electrical system<br>⇨ *page 330* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Washer fluid level<br>⇨ *page 334* |
|  | Loose wheel warning<br>⇨ *page 340* |
|  | Tyre pressure<br>⇨ *page 342*,<br>⇨ *page 344* |
|  | Tyre pressure<br>⇨ *page 342*,<br>⇨ *page 345* |

**Further indicator lamps**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Dipped headlights<br>⇨ *page 59* |
|  | Side lights<br>⇨ *page 59*,<br>dipped headlights<br>⇨ *page 59* |
|  | Turn signals<br>⇨ *page 60*,<br>⇨ *page 62* |
|  | Turn signals<br>⇨ *page 60*,<br>⇨ *page 62* |
|  | Rear seat belt<br>⇨ *page 79* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Start/stop system<br>⇨ *page 123* |
|  | Hold assist<br>⇨ *page 126*,<br>⇨ *page 126* |
|  | Downhill assist function<br>⇨ *page 130* |
|  | Trailer turn signals<br>⇨ *page 159* |
|  | Cruise control<br>⇨ *page 188* |
|  | Speed limiter<br>⇨ *page 188* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190*,<br>adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Driving off automatically (adaptive cruise assist)<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 206* |
|  | Park assist plus<br>⇨ *page 234* |
|  | Main beam headlights<br>⇨ *page 60*,<br>⇨ *page 61* |
|  | Main beam assist<br>⇨ *page 60* |
|  | Engine<br>⇨ *page 110* |
|  | Rear seat alert with warning tone<br>⇨ *page 42* |
|  | Rear seat alert<br>⇨ *page 42* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Door lock<br>⇨ *page 42* |
|  | Child lock<br>⇨ *page 54* |
|  | Child lock<br>⇨ *page 54* |
|  | Main beam assist<br>⇨ *page 60*,<br>⇨ *page 61*,<br>⇨ *page 63* |
|  | Rear seat belt<br>⇨ *page 79* |
|  | Auxiliary heating / ventilation<br>⇨ *page 107* |
|  | Convenience key<br>⇨ *page 111* |
|  | Gearbox<br>⇨ *page 116* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Plug-in hybrid modes<br>⇨ *page 119* |
|  | Electromechanical parking brake<br>⇨ *page 127* |
|  | Brakes<br>⇨ *page 127* |
|  | Downhill assist function<br>⇨ *page 130* |
|  | Trailer assist<br>⇨ *page 169* |
|  | Trailer assist<br>⇨ *page 169* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Speed warning function<br>⇨ *page 177* |
|  | Camera-based traffic sign recognition<br>⇨ *page 179* |
|  | Fatigue warning<br>⇨ *page 182* |
|  | Distraction warning<br>⇨ *page 183* |
|  | Night vision assist<br>⇨ *page 187* |
|  | Cruise control<br>⇨ *page 190* |
| LIM | Speed limiter<br>⇨ *page 190* |
|  | Efficiency assist<br>⇨ *page 190*,<br>⇨ *page 199*,<br>adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 204* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 194*,<br>⇨ *page 197* |
|  | Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist)<br>⇨ *page 197* |
|  | Adaptive cruise assist<br>⇨ *page 200* |
|  | Distance warning<br>⇨ *page 205* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 206* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 206* |
|  | Lane departure warning<br>⇨ *page 208* |
|  | Side assist<br>⇨ *page 214* |
|  | Exit warning system<br>⇨ *page 215* |
|  | Intersection assist<br>⇨ *page 216* |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 217* |
|  | Emergency assist<br>⇨ *page 217* |
|  | Parking aids<br>⇨ *page 222* |
|  | Rear cross-traffic assist<br>⇨ *page 228* |
|  | Park assist<br>⇨ *page 233*,<br>park assist plus<br>⇨ *page 236* |
|  | Park assist<br>⇨ *page 233*,<br>park assist plus<br>⇨ *page 236* |
|  | Manoeuvre assist<br>⇨ *page 241*,<br>⇨ *page 242* |
|  | Tank flap<br>⇨ *page 312* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | AdBlue<br>⇨ *page 315* |
|  | Particulate filter<br>⇨ *page 318* |

# Instrument cluster

## Overview of instrument cluster




**Fig. 2** Overview of instrument cluster (Audi virtual cockpit)

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

① Display
- – Coolant temperature gauge . . 19
- – Charge level of high-voltage battery

② Left dial
- – Rev counter . . . . . 19
- – Power meter . . . . . 20

③ Tab area . . . . . 18

④ Central area . . . . . 18

⑤ Status line (one or two lines)

⑥ Right dial
- – Convenience display

⑦ Fuel gauge . . . . . 311

⑧ Additional display on right with speedometer

⑨ Additional display on left with:
- – Transmission position . . . . . 113
- – Audi drive select . . . . . 131

**WARNING**

The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.

**Note**

- – You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system ⇨ *page 306*.
- – Certain contents of the instrument cluster can also be projected onto the head-up display* ⇨ *page 33*.

# How to use the multi-function steering wheel

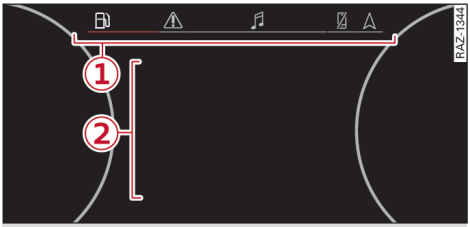



**Fig. 3** Instrument cluster: Driver information system

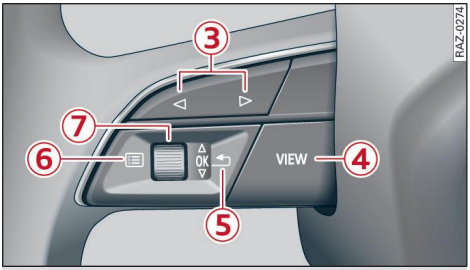



**Fig. 4** Left side of multi-function steering wheel

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs (1). The details from each tab are displayed in the central area (2).

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

### Selecting a tab

▸ Press the ◁ or ▷ button (3) repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

### Returning to the previous function level

▸ Press the ⮌ button (5).

### Opening/closing a menu

▸ Press the ☰ button (6).

### Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

▸ To select a function, scroll the left thumbwheel (7) to the desired function.
▸ To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel (7).

### Changing views

▸ Press the VIEW button (4).

### Overview of tabs

The following tabs are available depending on the vehicle equipment:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Vehicle functions |
| | |
| | Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed) |
| | Driver assist display with surroundings shown |
| | Night vision assist (only visible if night vision assist is activated) |
| | Multimedia |
| | Telephone |
| | Navigation |

# Selecting the display

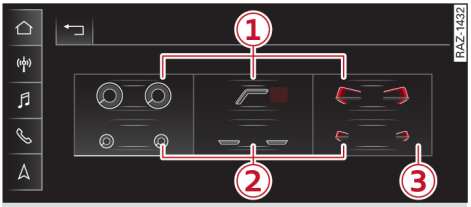



**Fig. 5** Upper display: Selecting display

### Changing views

▸ Press the VIEW button to switch between the standard view (1) and the extended view (2).

### Selecting a layout

Different layouts may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit**.
▸ Press on the desired layout to select it (3).

Applies to RS model: The selected layout is linked to the active Audi drive select mode. In this case, ▶

the layout that you last selected for the particular Audi drive select mode will be shown automatically.

▸ To link a layout to a specific Audi drive select mode, switch to the desired Audi drive select mode and set the desired layout on the MMI.

### Setting additional display

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit** > (**Configure**).

▸ Select the desired additional display.

### Reducing the view

On some equipment versions you can hide the central area in the instrument cluster.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reduced display**.

### Changing the colour scheme

Applies to: RS model

On some equipment versions you can change the colour scheme in the instrument cluster.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Change display colour**.

## Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ① ⇨ *page 17* only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

### Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the lower range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

### Normal temperature

The LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. If the warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 326*.

**CAUTION**

– Auxiliary headlights and other attachments in front of the cooling air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.

– The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek professional assistance.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

These engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

## Rev counter

The rev counter ② ⇨ *page 17* indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears after the engine has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or select transmission position D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

### Displaying the rev counter

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit** > **Left gauge** > **Rev counter** or **Combined**. ▶

### Engine speed governing

If the indicator lamp lights up, the engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components, e.g. against overheating or when starting a cold engine.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**CAUTION**

The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

## Power meter

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

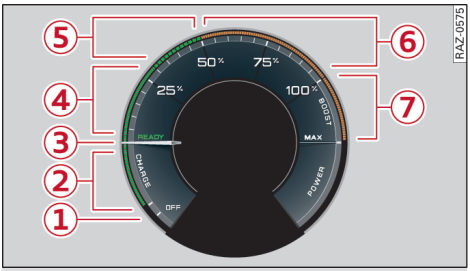



**Fig. 6** Instrument cluster: Power meter

### Displaying the power meter

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Audi virtual cockpit** > **Left gauge** > **Power meter** or **Combined**.

The power meter ② ⇨ *page 17* indicates the drive capacity currently being utilised. The needle of the power meter indicates the current capacity utilisation. A colour border indicates how heavily the drive system can currently be utilised. The colour borders may vary depending on which driving program is selected and how much electric power is currently available.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the power meter may indicate the following driving states:

① Drive system switched off
② Vehicle recuperating electrical energy
③ Drive system switched on
④ Vehicle driving with electric motor (green)
⑤ Vehicle driving with electric motor, combustion engine may cut in (green dashes)
⑥ Vehicle driving with combustion engine (orange)
⑦ Vehicle driving for a short period with maximum power output from electric motor and combustion engine.

## Mileage recorder

The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 17*.

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

### Resetting trip recorder

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Reset kilometres**.

## Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 17*.

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

At temperatures below +5 °C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇨ ⚠. ▶

**WARNING**

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

## Engine oil temperature gauge

The engine oil temperature is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

- Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view ⇨ *page 18*.

The display shows --- °C at low engine oil temperatures. The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80 °C and 120 °C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase above this value. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps or are not lit.

## Boost display

Applies to: vehicles with boost display

The current boost level of the engine (that is, the current charge pressure) is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

- Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view ⇨ *page 18*.

## Shift light display

Applies to: RS model

The shift light display indicates that the rev limit is about to be reached.

- Select the **Performance** layout. Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may also be able to select the **Rev Counter** or **Runway** layout ⇨ *page 18*.

The shift light display consists of green, yellow and red areas in the high sections of the rev counter. The shift light display flashes in red at engine speeds near the limit. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

## Sport displays

Applies to: RS model

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, sport displays such as the G meter or the tyre pressure display may be available.

### Calling up the sport displays on the instrument cluster

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Sport displays**.
- Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster.

### Calling up sport displays on the MMI

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Monitor**.
- If necessary, scroll to the desired display.

### G meter

The G meter indicates the longitudinal and lateral acceleration. The current values are shown on the instrument cluster while the vehicle is moving. The maximum values measured are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary. The MMI only displays the maximum values.

- Press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second to reset the stored values.

### Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure display shows the current inflation pressures and temperatures. Also refer to ⇨ *page 343, Tyre pressure monitoring system*.

### Engine data

The engine data in the instrument cluster show what percentage of the vehicle's maximum power or maximum torque is currently being used. ▶

### Temperature

The temperature display on the MMI shows the temperature of various fluids and vehicle components such as the gear oil and the sport differential.

### Tilt angle display

The tilt angle display on the MMI shows the vehicle's current and maximum transverse and longitudinal tilt angles relative to the horizon ⇨ *page 128*.

# Vehicle functions

## Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

▸ Press the ☰ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 22*
– Reduced display ⇨ *page 19*
– Reset trip recorder ⇨ *page 20*
– Energy flow display ⇨ *page 120*
– Sport displays ⇨ *page 21*
– Lap times ⇨ *page 183*
– Lap statistics ⇨ *page 184*
– Acceleration measurement ⇨ *page 184*

## On-board computer

### Switching between displays

▸ Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel ⑦ ⇨ *page 18, Fig. 4* until the desired display appears.

### Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption**, **short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

▸ To reset the values in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second, or
▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > ☰ button > **Reset kilometres**.

### Displays in on-board computer

The following displays can be called up, depending on the equipment on your vehicle:
– Time and date ⇨ *page 306*
– Plug-in hybrid drive: Range display
– Average fuel consumption ⇨ *page 22*
– Short-term memory summary
– Long-term memory summary
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 22*
– Driver assistance ⇨ *page 193*
– Traffic sign recognition and traffic light information
– Fatigue warning ⇨ *page 181*
– Distraction warning ⇨ *page 182*

### Short-term/long-term memory

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

### Average fuel consumption

The current consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average consumption from the short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving energy (e.g. using recuperation).

### Energy consumers

In the **Energy consumers** view, auxiliary equipment currently affecting the vehicle's consumption is listed. The display shows up to three energy consumers. The energy consumer drawing the most power appears at the top of the list. If more than three energy consumers are switched on, the ones currently using the most power are displayed. In addition, a scale indicates the overall current fuel consumption of all energy consumers. ▶

**Note**

The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed via the infotainment system ⇨ *page 306*.

## Gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ⇨ *page 114*.

The symbol ↑ after the current gear means **change up a gear**.

**CAUTION**

The gear shift indicator is intended to help the driver save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

# Touch displays

## General instructions for using the touch displays

### General information

Applies to: touch displays

The touch-sensitive displays in the vehicle are controlled in much the same way as a smartphone.

The instructions below describe methods for operating all the touch displays in the vehicle.

**Note**

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

### Pressing

Applies to: touch displays

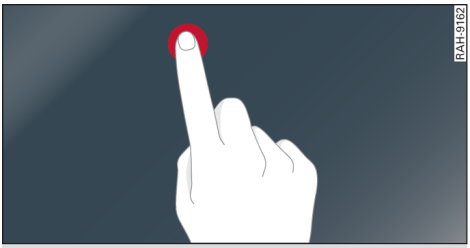



**Fig. 7** Touch display: Pressing

#### Selecting a function or button

▸ Press the desired function or button.

### Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch displays

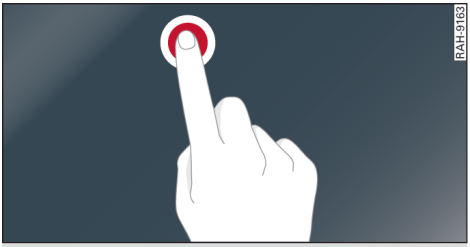



**Fig. 8** Touch display: Pressing and holding

#### Calling up options

For certain items, you can call up further options which are not immediately visible.

▸ Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.

### Pressing and dragging

Applies to: touch displays

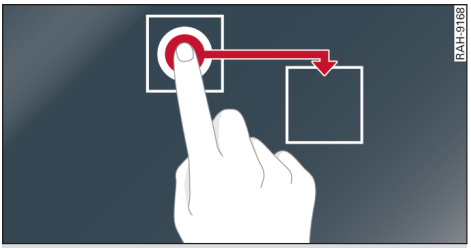



**Fig. 9** Touch display: Pressing and dragging

#### Moving an object

You can re-arrange certain objects as desired.

▸ Press and hold an object and drag it with your finger to the desired position.

#### Creating/deleting a folder

With some equipment versions you can create a folder with multiple elements.

▸ To create a folder, press and hold an object and drag it onto another object. The folder and a categorical folder name are created ⇨ *page 28*.
▸ To delete a folder, move all objects out of the folder.

### Pinching/spreading your fingers

Applies to: touch displays

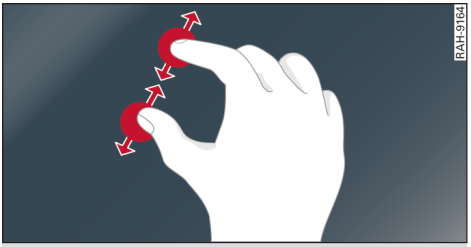



**Fig. 10** Touch display: Pinching/spreading your fingers

### Zooming in/out on an object

The following gestures can only be used on certain elements, such as a navigation map.

- Spread two fingers to make an object larger.
- Pinch two fingers together to make an object smaller.

## Rotating

Applies to: touch displays

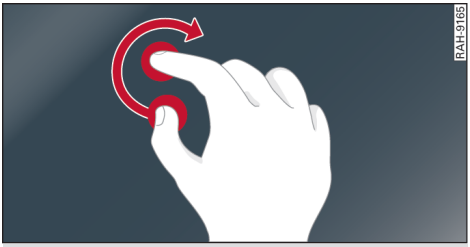



**Fig. 11** Touch display: Rotating

### Rotating the view or angle

- Rotate the object with two fingers.

## Swiping

Applies to: touch displays

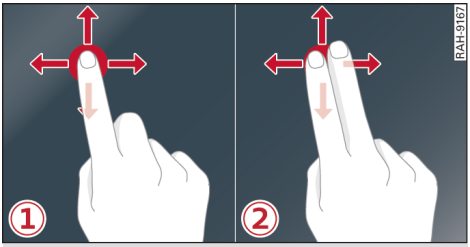



**Fig. 12** Touch display: ① Swiping with one finger, ② swiping with two fingers

### Scrolling or paging in menus/lists

- To scroll in menus/lists, swipe up/down with one finger.
- To page through menus/lists, swipe up/down with two fingers.

### Angling 3D views

- Swipe up/down with two fingers.

## Swiping away from/towards the edge

Applies to: touch displays

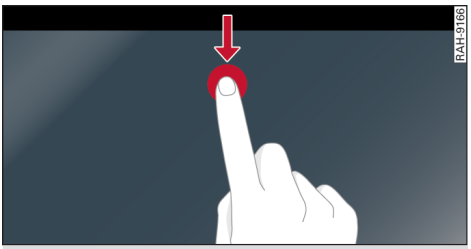



**Fig. 13** Touch display: Swiping away from the edge

### Opening hidden menus

The ▭ symbol indicates a hidden menu.

- Swipe your finger from the top/bottom edge of the screen towards the centre, or
- Press the ▭ button.

### Closing a hidden menu

- Press within the menu and swipe it towards the top/bottom edge of the screen.

## Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

### Example of a path description

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

### Using a path description

- The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used (in this example it is the MMI display).
- Applies to MMI: Press ⌂ to call up the home screen.
- If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- Press the **General** button.
- If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears. ▶

▸ Press the **Date & time** button.

**Note**

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. (**General**) or (⚙), are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

## Settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI**.

Available settings:

– **Brightness**
– **Touchscreen feedback**

# Multi Media Interface

## Notes on traffic safety

Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

**WARNING**

– Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!
– The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

**Note**

– Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.
– Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.

## Switching on/off

### Switching the MMI system on/off

▸ To switch the MMI system off, press and hold the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 36, Fig. 20* until the upper display and all the infotainment functions are switched off.
▸ To start up the MMI system, press the MMI control dial.

### Restarting the MMI system

▸ Press and hold the MMI control dial for at least ten seconds.

### Switching the displays on/off

▸ To switch the upper display off, press ⏻ on the lower display.
▸ You can switch the upper display on by touching it or pressing ⏻ on the lower display.
▸ To switch both displays off/on, press and hold ⏻ on the lower display.

## Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the two touch displays of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

With some equipment versions, in addition to using the pre-installed apps, you can also download additional apps ⇨ *page 257*.

### Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and connect a telephone.

▸ Follow the directions given on the display.
▸ Applies to MMI: To access the setup wizard at a later time, select the following on the home screen: **HELP** > **Setup wizard**.

### Usage tips

If necessary, you can have usage tips shown as an introduction to the different MMI functions.

▸ Applies to MMI: To call up usage tips, select the following on the home screen: **HELP** > **Usage** ▶

**tips** > **Basic information** or **Expert information**.

▸ Follow the directions given on the display.

### Online Owner's Manual

Applies to: vehicles with online Owner's Manual

With the online Owner's Manual, you can access your Owner's Manual directly on the infotainment system ⇨ *page 7*.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP** > **Owner's Manual**.

## Menus and symbols

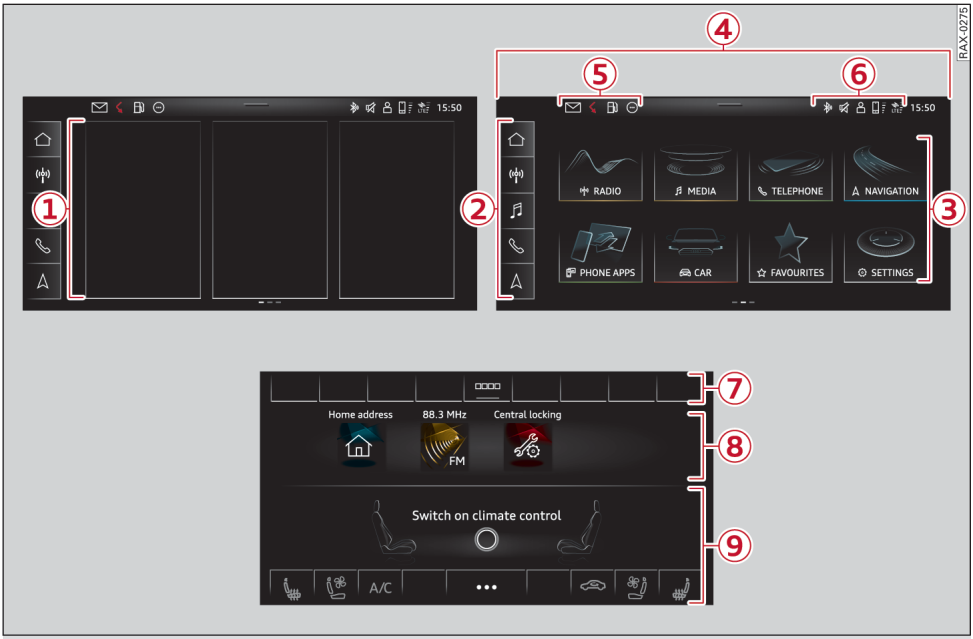



**Fig. 14** MMI: Upper/lower display

| | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ① | **Overview page** | Selected information boxes and quick access buttons for certain functions are shown here ⇨ *page 28* |
| ② | **Quick access bar** | Returning to the home screen or overview page, quickly accessing a menu ⇨ *page 28* |
| ③ | **Display area** | Selecting a menu, changing settings, displaying content ⇨ *page 28* |
| ④ – ⑥ | **Status bar** | Displaying current notifications ⑤ ⇨ *page 30*, status display ⑥ ⇨ *page 29*, time |
| ⑦ | **Function bar** | Activating functions or calling up associated information ⇨ *page 30* |

| | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ⑧ | **Shortcuts** | Using shortcuts ⇨ *page 31* |
| ⑨ | **Climate control settings** | Adjusting the air conditioning ⇨ *page 100* |

### Description of global symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all menus in the appropriate context.

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Go back one level |
| | Close menu |
| | Search for content |
| | Call up explanatory information for a menu |
| | Call up settings for the selected menu |
| | Call up sub-menu |
| | Adjust settings |
| | Assign favourite/favourite assigned |
| | Switch functions on/off |
| | Switch functions on/off |
| | Switch functions on/off |
| | Call up additional functions |
| | Call up additional information on the selected menu |

## Overview page

The overview page is the first menu page on the MMI. Information on certain vehicle functions, such as media, is shown in information boxes. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, when you log in with your myAudi ID, the overview page may contain personalised information, such as apps used recently. The MMI automatically determines the personalised information that is displayed and its layout.

### Configuring the overview page

- ▸ Press and hold an information box on the overview page.
- ▸ To change the position of the information box, keep holding it and drag it to the desired position. With some equipment versions the layout of the overview page can be changed as well.
- ▸ To change the information box, press and select the desired information box.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

### Calling up the global search function

With some equipment versions you can search for a particular term using the global search function.

- ▸ Call up the overview page and swipe your finger to the right.

## Quick access bar

You can use the quick access bar to return to the home screen and switch easily between four menus which can be configured as desired.

### Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu

- ▸ Press ⌂ or one of the four buttons.

### Configuring the quick access bar

- ▸ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen or on the quick access bar.
- ▸ To move a button to the quick access bar, drag it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- ▸ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them within the quick access bar to the desired position.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

**Note**

It is not possible to move ⌂ to another position.

## Display area

The buttons (including folders) in the display area of the home screen can be re-arranged as desired. ▶

### Configuring the display area

- ▸ Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen.
- ▸ To re-arrange the buttons, drag them to the desired position.
- ▸ To rename a folder, press on the folder name and enter a name of your choice.
- ▸ Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

### Switching between menu pages

If a menu contains more than one page,  is shown in the display area. The white bars indicate the position of the current menu page.

- ▸ To switch between menu pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

## Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with favourites

You can create favourites for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings. In the **FAVOURITES** menu, the stored favourites are sorted by topic in information boxes.

### Adding a favourite

The ☆ button indicates that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the favourites. In certain contexts it is also possible to add elements without the ☆ button to the favourites, e.g. entries in a list.

- ▸ Press ☆, or
- ▸ Press and hold an item in a list.
- ▸ Press **Store as favourite**. The selected element will be added as a favourite.

### Using a favourite

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**. The stored favourites will be shown.
- ▸ Select the desired favourite to call it up.

Stored favourites can only be deleted or re-arranged in the corresponding menu (e.g. **RADIO**).

### Re-arranging information boxes

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**.
- ▸ Press and hold the desired information box.
- ▸ Drag the information box to the desired position.
- ▸ Press **Done** to confirm the position.

## Status display

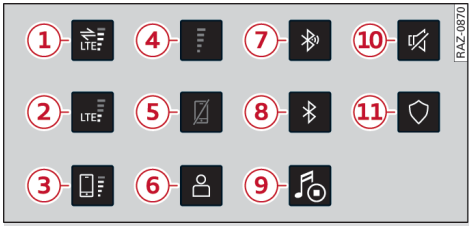



**Fig. 15** Upper display: Frequent symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you at a glance whether e.g. a mobile phone is connected or a data connection is available. The most frequent symbols are listed in the table.

| | Description |
|---|---|
| ① | A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. Data transfer is in progress. |
| ② | A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. No data transfer is in progress. |
| ③ | A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception. |
| ④ | No data connection is available. |
| ⑤ | A problem occurred when connecting the mobile phone to the MMI. |
| ⑥ | A user is selected. If a question mark appears in the symbol, the guest user is active. |
| ⑦ | A Bluetooth device is connected. |
| ⑧ | Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected. |
| ⑨ | Audio playback has been interrupted. |
| ⑩ | The audio source is muted. |
| ⑪ | A privacy setting is activated. The additional symbol indicates which privacy setting is currently activated ⇨ *page 372*. |

## Notification centre

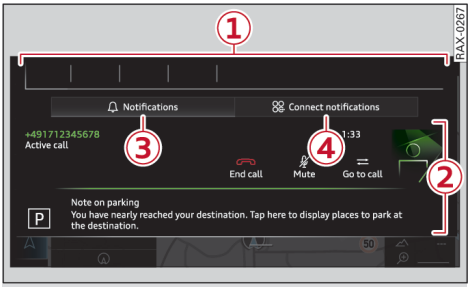



**Fig. 16** Upper display: Notification centre

Notifications from the Audi system and from Audi connect apps can be shown on the upper display. They will disappear after a certain time, and the corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑤ ⇨ *page 27, Fig. 14*. You can view these notifications in the notification centre ② ⇨ *Fig. 16* and adjust the quick settings ①.

On some equipment versions the system notifications and connect app notifications are grouped together and shown in separate lists ③ / ④.

### How to use the notification centre

- To open the notification centre, drag the status bar downwards, or
- Press the button in the status bar.
- To call up a notification list, tap on the desired button ③ or ④ in the notification centre.
- To adjust the quick settings, press the corresponding symbol ①.
- Press on a notification to receive further information about it.
- To delete a notification, drag it to the right edge of the screen.
- If there are more than four notifications in the notification centre, the older ones will be hidden. To display older notifications, swipe upwards with one finger.

### Setting which information is displayed

You can determine whether or not certain system notifications are displayed.

- To set which information is displayed, press the button, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Notifications**.
- Select and confirm which notifications you would like to have displayed.

### Adjusting quick settings

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the following quick settings may be available in area ①:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Adjust the sound settings |
| | Call up the settings menu |
| | Manage connected devices |
| | Manage users |
| 12:30<br>04.09.2023 | Set the date and time |
| | Set which information is displayed in the notification centre |

## Function bar

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can operate different functions from the function bar.

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| | Switch start/stop system on/off |
| | Applies to plug-in hybrid drive: Select driving mode |
| | Switch downhill assist function on/off |
| | Call up parking space search function |
| | Call up trailer assist function |
| | Call up garage door opener |
| | **Press**: Show settings for head-up display |
| | **Press and hold**: Switch head-up display on/off |
| | **Press**: Switch upper display on/off |
| | **Press and hold**: Switch both displays on/off |

## Shortcuts

You can create shortcuts for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings.

### Adding shortcuts

The ••• button in the upper display indicates that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the shortcuts. In certain contexts, you can also add items from a list to the shortcuts.

- ▸ Press and hold ••• or an item in a list.
- ▸ Press **Store as a shortcut**. The selected item will be added to the shortcuts on the lower display and shown as a tile. A favourite may also be added ⇨ *page 29*.

### Using shortcuts

- ▸ On the lower display, press the □□□□ button (8) ⇨ *page 27, Fig. 14* on the function bar. The stored shortcuts will be shown/hidden.
- ▸ To call up a stored function, press the corresponding tile.

### Moving/deleting shortcuts

- ▸ Press and hold a shortcut on the lower display.
- ▸ To re-arrange the shortcuts, drag a shortcut to the desired position.
- ▸ To delete a shortcut, press ⊗. When the shortcut is deleted, the favourite will also be deleted.

## Text entry

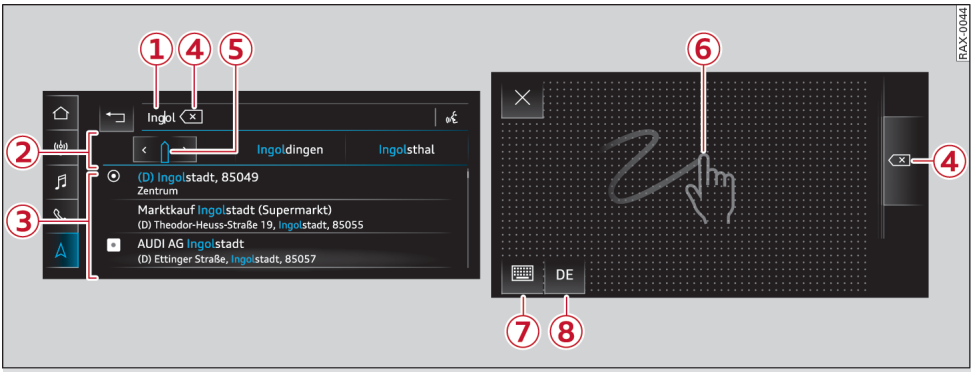



**Fig. 17** Upper/lower display: Entering text

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in the entry fields of different menus, e.g. to find an address in the navigation system.

On the lower display, you can enter text using handwriting recognition or the on-screen keyboard. The upper display will show the text as it is entered (1). In certain contexts, the system will suggest words based on the characters you have entered (2) and display them in a results list (3).

### Calling up the text entry function

- ▸ Press within the entry field (1).

### Changing the input language

Important: More than one input language must be set in the MMI ⇨ *page 32*.

- ▸ To switch between the set input languages, press the button (8).

### Changing the input method

- ▸ To switch between handwriting recognition and the on-screen keyboard, press the button (7).

### Entering text

- ▸ Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area (6). You can write individual ▶

characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.

- Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters[1].
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark.
- Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right[2] in the entry area (6).
- To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider (5) displayed on the screen.
- To delete a single character, press ⌫ (4), or
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left[2] in the entry area (6).
- To delete more than one character, press and hold ⌫ (4).
- To delete all characters up to a certain position, press and hold ⌫ (4) and drag your finger to the desired position[1]. The characters that disappear when you do this will be deleted when you let go.
- To delete all characters, press ⊗ (4)[1].

### Using suggested words or selecting entries from the results list

- You can use a suggested word (2) or select an entry from the results list (3) by pressing on it.
- To display more entries in the results list, swipe up/down with one finger.

### Setting the input language/keyboard layout

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard** > **Keyboard**.
- To set additional input languages, press the ⌬ button.
- To change the keyboard layout for one of the input languages, press >. Select e.g. QWERTZ or QWERTY.

1) Depending on country

2) If the input language is set to Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

# Head-up display

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with head-up display

The head-up display shows certain warnings and selected information from supporting systems in the driver's field of vision.

### Switching on/off

The button is located on the function bar on the lower display ⇨ *page 27*.

▸ To switch the head-up display on/off, press and hold the button.

### Settings on infotainment system

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Head-up display**, or
▸ Press the button.

Available settings:

– **Display rotation**
– **Brightness**
– **Display height**: The height of the display can be adjusted. Assume an appropriate seating position ⇨ *page 70* and make adjustments on the image of the head-up display.
– **Display contents**: You can determine which types of information are displayed. Some of the information and warnings cannot be hidden.

**CAUTION**

Do not place any objects over the opening for the head-up display to avoid scratching the glass cover.

**Note**

– The display may be harder to see in unfavourable light conditions or if you are wearing polarised sunglasses.
– To be able to see the display as clearly as possible, adjust the position of your seat and the height setting for the head-up display.
– A special windscreen is required for the head-up display.
– Notes on cleaning ⇨ *tab. Cleaning the interior on page 349*.

# Speech dialogue system

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice from the driver's or front passenger seat.

### For best results when using the speech dialogue system

- Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- Close the windows to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.

**WARNING**

– Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

– The speech dialogue system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!

**Note**

No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.

## Description

### How to operate the speech dialogue system

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

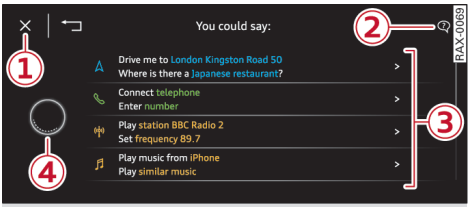



**Fig. 18** Upper display: Speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

### Via the button

- Briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or, in certain contexts, press on the display.
- Give a spoken command after the tone.
- To switch the speech dialogue system off, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel or say **Cancel**. Alternatively, press ① ⇨ *Fig. 18*.

### Via a voice command

- Applies to MMI: To operate the speech dialogue system via a voice command, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > (**Speech dialogue system**) > **Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi"**.
- Say the activation phrase **Hey Audi** followed by the desired command.
- To switch the speech dialogue system off, say **Cancel**, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel or press ① ⇨ *Fig. 18*.

### Commands and hints

The speech dialogue system menu shows possible commands or helpful hints for the current dialogue ③.

- For additional assistance for the current dialogue, say **Help** or press ②. ▶

▸ To pause the speech recognition, say **Pause** or press (4). To resume using the speech recognition, press (4) again or briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

## Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

### Command during speech dialogue

When this function is switched on, you can simply say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > (**Speech dialogue system**) > **Allow command during speech dialogue**.

### Online recognition

Applies to: vehicles with online recognition

You can activate online recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the internet, your spoken commands will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

▸ A menu for the online recognition function is displayed when you switch the speech dialogue system on for the first time, or
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Speech dialogue system** > **Agreement for SDS online recognition**.
▸ Read and accept the licence conditions.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with external voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone.

### Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 243*. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

▸ To switch the external voice control function on, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
▸ To switch off the external voice control function, press and hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel, or press **Cancel**.

### Operating the external voice control function

▸ Give a spoken command after the tone.
▸ To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the button on the multi-function steering wheel or press **Resume**.

**Note**

Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

# Global functions

## Other function selector buttons

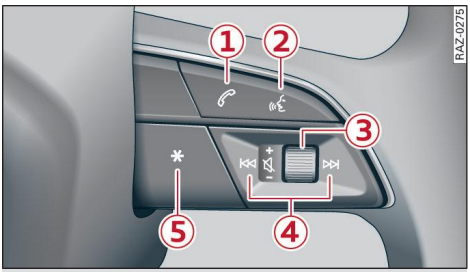



**Fig. 19** Right side of multi-function steering wheel

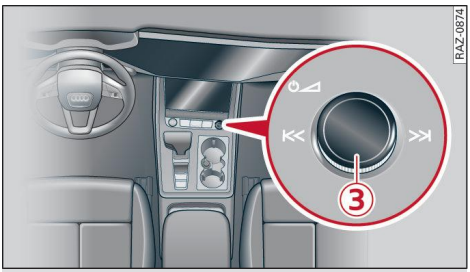



**Fig. 20** Centre console: MMI control dial

### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- To turn the volume up/down, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *Fig. 19* up/down or turn the MMI control dial ③ ⇨ *Fig. 20* clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- To mute the sound, press the right thumbwheel or the MMI control dial.

### Selecting the previous/next track/station

- Press the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or briefly push the MMI control dial to the left/right.

### Fast forward/rewind

- Press and hold the |◁◁ / ▷▷| button ④ or push the MMI control dial to the left/right and hold it there until the desired playing position is reached.

### Quick access button on steering wheel

Button ⑤ gives you quick access to various functions, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

- For information on the RS button, refer to ⇨ *page 131*.

You can program the ✳ button with various functions.

- To use the function currently programmed, press the ✳ button.
- To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the ✳ button, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Steering wheel button**.
- Select and confirm the desired function.

### Switching the speech dialogue system on/off

button ②; refer to ⇨ *page 34*.

### Operating telephone functions

button ①; refer to ⇨ *page 247*.

**WARNING**

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

# Personal settings

## Users

### General information

Applies to: vehicles with individual user settings

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned their most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

– **myAudi user**: myAudi users can use Audi connect services which require a myAudi account. Certain settings are transferred online to your myAudi account. If you log into your myAudi account in another vehicle, you can load your settings into that vehicle.
– **Local user**: Local users can only store their settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. Audi connect services which require a myAudi account are not available.
– **Guest user**: Guest users can store their settings in the vehicle without changing other users' settings. Audi recommends the guest user for temporary use only, as the settings can be overwritten by other users.

So that the user settings can be loaded automatically before a journey, the active user is recognised from the following options (depending on equipment):

– Vehicle key
– Audi connect key

Important: The driver's door must have been opened.

The recognised user is displayed on the MMI. Confirm the user displayed, select another user ⇨ *page 37*, or add a different user ⇨ *page 37*.

**WARNING**

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for the infotainment and vehicle settings – risk of accident!

**Note**

– Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings/last radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.
– Applies to myAudi users: The stored settings can only be transferred to compatible vehicles. This capability may be restricted in certain countries.
– Applies to myAudi users: The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.
– Applies to myAudi users with PIN protection activated: If a recognised user is displayed on the MMI and you drive off or wait without entering the 4-digit PIN, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings of the recognised myAudi user will be transferred to the guest user.

### User management

Applies to: vehicles with user management

#### Calling up the user management

Applies to: MMI

▸ On the home screen, press **USERS**.

#### Selecting a user

Applies to: MMI

▸ Press on the desired user.
▸ If prompted, enter your 4-digit PIN.

#### Adding a myAudi user

Applies to: MMI and Audi connect

Important: You must have registered at my.audi.com and have created a 4-digit PIN.

▸ Press **Add user**.
▸ Press **Log in now** to log in with your myAudi access data.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. ▶

To have existing destinations transferred once from the MMI to your myAudi account, confirm the system query with **Yes**.

### Adding a local user

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ Press **Add user**.
- ▸ Press **Start setup**.
- ▸ Press **Local user**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

### Editing a user

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have selected the user and loaded their settings.

- ▸ Press on the user.

Depending on the user type, some or all of the following options may be available:

**PIN protection**: When this function is activated, the 4-digit PIN must be entered before the user settings are loaded.

**Delete user from vehicle**: The user is only deleted from the MMI list in the vehicle.

**Change name**: You can change the name of local users.

### Deleting a user

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ On the home screen, select: **USERS** > ✎ > *one or more entries* > **Delete**. The user is only deleted from the list on the MMI. The user permissions for the vehicle (e.g. key user) are not deleted.

**Note**

- – The guest user cannot be renamed.
- – When you switch users, the vehicle will load the new user's settings into the vehicle.
- – For users with the 🔒 symbol, PIN protection is active. You can edit the user and deactivate the PIN protection.
- – Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.

## Key user

Applies to: vehicles with key user management

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

The key user automatically has remote access rights, which are required in order to control certain functions (depending on the equipment in your vehicle) such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

### Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ▸ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com.
- ▸ Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.

### Managing further users

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services on my.audi.com.

### Removing the key user in the myAudi app

- ▸ Open the myAudi app and remove the key user.

All Audi connect keys (depending on equipment) will be deleted.

### Removing the key user on the MMI

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USERS** > ⚙ > **Remove key user**.

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings.

**Note**

- – In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- – It is not necessary to log in with a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

# Opening and closing

## Central locking system

### General information

**WARNING**

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 43, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to child lock: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

### Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇨ *page 40*. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇨ *page 46*
- Sensors in the door handles ⇨ *page 46*
- Audi connect key on your mobile device (e.g. mobile phone) ⇨ *page 48*
- Audi connect key card ⇨ *page 48*
- Lock on the driver's door ⇨ *page 42*
- Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 41*

#### Key / vehicle key

The term "key" may refer to the remote control key or convenience key*, a mobile device with the Audi connect key* or the activated Audi connect key card*.

"Vehicle key" refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 46* and ⇨ *page 110*.

#### Power-close function*

When closing one of the doors or the boot lid, just push it gently so that it falls into the latch. The door will now close automatically ⇨ ⚠.

#### Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

#### Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the 🔒 button on the vehicle key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors. ▶

– The boot lid will spring open again automatically if the vehicle key that was last in use is left inside the boot when the boot lid is closed ⇨ ⓘ.
– If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇨ ⓘ.

It is not possible to detect an Audi connect key* or an Audi connect key card in the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with power-close function

– When closing, make sure that nothing obstructs the doors – risk of injury!
– You can stop the closing function at any time by pulling on the outer or inner door handle.

**CAUTION**

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

– If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If you attempt to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it is locked as described above, the vehicle is unlocked again. A warning tone[1)] sounds and the turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
– Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If the boot lid is closed and the vehicle key that was last in use is detected inside the boot, the boot lid will spring open again slightly. A warning tone[1)] sounds and the turn signals flash several times to indicate this. The doors will be locked. Take the vehicle key with you; otherwise it will not be protected against unauthorised access.

**Note**

– Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
– When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

## Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Central locking**.

### Doors to unlock

– If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
– If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key*, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle. ▶

1) Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the button.

### Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panoramic glass roof* can be opened using the vehicle key ⇨ *page 55, Convenience open/close function*. Pressing and holding the button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panoramic glass roof*.

### Lock when driving (Auto Lock)

To prevent unauthorised access from the outside (e.g. when stopped at traffic lights), you can set the system to automatically lock the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the button in the central locking switch is pressed.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

After an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

### Disable boot lid handle

You can select whether the luggage compartment can be opened via the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27*. When this function is activated, the boot lid can only be opened using the 2x button on the vehicle key or in the driver's door. On vehicles with convenience key*, the release catch on the boot lid can still be used to open the luggage compartment if an authorised convenience key is detected ⇨ *page 49*.

### Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

### Tone when locking[1)]

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

### Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle via sensor. It is still possible to lock the vehicle via sensor ⇨ *page 46*.

## Central locking switch




**Fig. 21** Driver's door: Central locking switch

▸ To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the / button ⇨ ⚠.

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

– The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
– The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
– You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
– After an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.
– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
– The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

[1)] This function is not available in all countries.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual**

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Select transmission position P to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Central locking: fault. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the central locking system. If it is not possible to lock the doors via the central locking system, you can lock them manually ⇨ *page 42*. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**/ Please check rear seats!**

or

**/ Please check rear seats and be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual**

At the end of each trip, a driver message will appear on the centre display to remind you that someone may be seated on the rear seats. If you previously opened one of the rear doors, the driver message will also appear in the instrument cluster. Make sure that you do not leave any children or animals behind when you leave the vehicle.

You can switch the notification sound on/off.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Rear notification sound**.

For vehicles with the safelock mechanism, please observe ⇨ ⚠ *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 44*

**Vehicle key detected in vehicle interior**

or

**Vehicle key detected in boot**

This driver message appears if a vehicle key is detected in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and a door or the boot lid is then closed. The vehicle also reacts by flashing the turn signals several times and issuing a warning tone[1]. Remove the vehicle key without delay. Otherwise, the vehicle will be locked automatically and the vehicle key will be locked in the vehicle (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely).

**Door lock: when the vehicle is moving, door can only be opened via manual release. See owner's manual**

The doors cannot be unlocked electrically at speeds above approx. 15 km/h. If you need to open the door in an emergency when the vehicle is travelling at a higher speed, you can manually release the door by pulling the handle out firmly twice. You will feel noticeable resistance when you do so. You may need to press the door handle back into its original position after doing this.

## Locking/unlocking the doors manually

*If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, the doors will have to be locked/unlocked separately.*

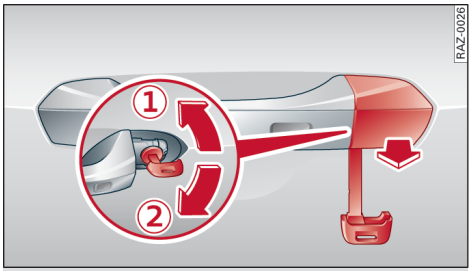



**Fig. 22** Driver's door lock




**Fig. 23** Door: Locking the door manually

[1] Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Switch on the ignition or press the button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

### Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the emergency key

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 45*.
- Insert the emergency key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap ⇨ *Fig. 22*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the emergency key to the unlock position ① ⇨ *Fig. 22*. The handle of the emergency key must face the rear door.
- To open the driver's door, pull the handle firmly; the handle will extend somewhat further than usual.
- To lock the driver's door, select transmission position P, close the door and turn the key to the lock position ② once ⇨ ⚠. The handle of the emergency key must face the rear door.

### Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the emergency key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 45*.
- If necessary, pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *Fig. 23*.
- Insert the emergency key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the left (if the door is on the right side) or to the right (if the door is on the left side).
- If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the vehicle is without electrical power, pulling the door handle once will unlock the door; pull a second time to open the door. You will need to pull firmly and will feel noticeable resistance. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

**⚠ WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.

## Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

### Switching the alarm off manually

- To deactivate the alarm press the button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

### Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked via the lock cylinder.

### Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection.

### Safelock[1)]

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. The message **Be aware of door** ▶

[1)] This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

**safelock** or **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock* mechanism will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

### Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock[1)]

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism*:

- Press the button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- Turn the emergency key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- Applies to vehicles with MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Interior monitor**.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED on the door sill will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.

**WARNING**

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

**CAUTION**

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.

**Note**

- The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the panoramic glass roof* are closed.
- The alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism*.

## Audi connect vehicle tracking system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle tracking system

Important: A key user must be set before you can use the Audi connect vehicle tracking system ⇨ *page 37*.

The tracking system can detect attempts to steal the vehicle and/or to manipulate the tracking system. It then automatically warns the service provider, who in turn contacts you.

### Activation

You can activate it as follows:

- Set up the vehicle tracking system at my.audi.com.
- Install the myAudi app on your mobile phone.

### Vehicle maintenance and transport

Vehicle maintenance and transport are special conditions. You can use my.audi.com or the myAudi app to put the vehicle into a time-limited special conditions mode so that there is no false alarm in these circumstances. ▶

1) This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

If the vehicle is being transported (e.g. on a car transporter, train or ship), the vehicle tracking system must be set to transport mode. This helps to avoid false alarms while the vehicle is being transported.

If maintenance or repair work is being performed on the vehicle or if the battery is to be disconnected, the vehicle tracking system must be set to workshop mode.

**Note**

– It cannot be guaranteed that a theft will be detected in all circumstances.
– A fully discharged vehicle battery can also cause the alarm to be triggered. In this case, you should charge the battery or have it replaced.
– The vehicle tracking system is intended to assist with insurance cover. Please contact your insurer for detailed information.
– When you sell your vehicle, delete the key user entries at my.audi.com. After successful verification, the provider will deactivate the vehicle tracking system on your car accordingly.

# Keys

## Set of keys




**Fig. 24** Keys supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

### ① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car.

### ② Emergency key and release button for emergency key

An emergency key is integrated in the vehicle key. To remove it, press the release button and pull out the emergency key.

You can use the emergency key to ...

– activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag* ⇨ *page 83*.
– lock/unlock the glove box.
– lock/unlock the doors manually ⇨ *page 42*.
– release the boot lid manually ⇨ *page 53*.

### Audi connect key card

Applies to: Audi connect key

The Audi connect key card performs a number of the functions of the vehicle key and is approximately the size and shape of a credit card ⇨ *page 48*.

### Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you.

Applies to Audi connect key: If you should lose a mobile device on which an Audi connect key is stored, the corresponding mobile device must be deactivated ⇨ *page 48*. If you do not have short-term access to the myAudi app, it is possible to deactivate all assigned Audi connect keys on the MMI ⇨ *page 48, Activating/deactivating the Audi connect key*. If you lose the Audi connect key card, you can deactivate it at any time by switching the ignition on with the vehicle key or Audi connect key*. Alternatively, you can deactivate the function in the myAudi app. To replace an Audi connect key card, please contact an Audi dealer.

It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

### Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle. ▶

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

### Data stored on the vehicle key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your vehicle key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.

**CAUTION**

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

**Note**

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- Applies to MMI: You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Car information**.
- A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.

## Locking and unlocking the vehicle

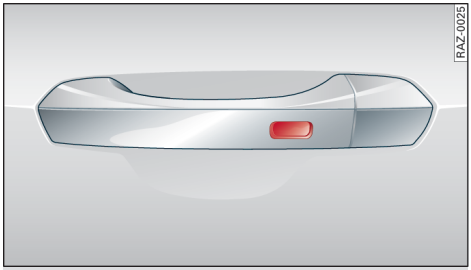



**Fig. 25** Door handle: Sensor* for locking the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇨ *page 40*.

### Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *page 45, Fig. 24*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **once**.

### Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- To unlock the vehicle, take hold of the door handle.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *Fig. 25*. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

### Unlocking/locking using the Audi connect key / Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key/Audi connect key card

Important: The Audi connect key/Audi connect key card must have been activated ⇨ *page 48, Audi connect key* / ⇨ *page 48, Audi connect key card*.

- To unlock/lock the vehicle, hold the mobile device/key card against the centre of the driver's door handle. ▶

### Locking/unlocking the vehicle using the Audi connect vehicle control services[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Important: The Audi connect vehicle control services must have been set up ⇨ *page 258*. The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched off.

Please note the information on the safelock mechanism ⇨ (!) *in Anti-theft alarm system on page 44*.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.

**Note**

– Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
– The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.
– Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm*. In this situation, press the unlock button.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
– You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) on the MMI ⇨ *page 40*.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

## LED and battery in vehicle key

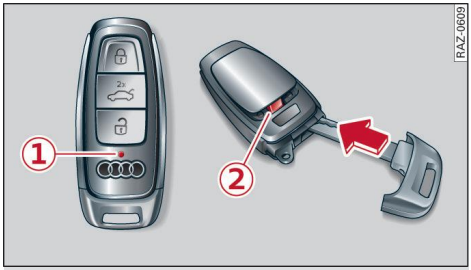



**Fig. 26** Vehicle key: Removing battery holder

### LED in the vehicle key

The LED ① lights up when you press the buttons.

- The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

### Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

- Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 45* and insert it at an angle into the opening ⇨ *Fig. 26*.
- Push the emergency key into the opening in the direction of the arrow to press the release button inside ②. Do not try to prise open the cover when doing so, as this could cause damage.
- Pull the cover off the battery compartment.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing up.
- Close the battery compartment with the cover.
- Insert the emergency key.

If the indicator lamp lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced.

**WARNING**

A button cell is fitted in the vehicle key. ▶

1) Depending on country

– If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
– Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
– Keep new and used batteries away from children.
– If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
– Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

## Audi connect key

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your mobile device to lock, unlock ⇨ *page 46* and start ⇨ *page 110* the vehicle.

Applies to all users: Important: You must be using a compatible mobile device with an Android operating system. You can find a selection of supported Android devices in the database of tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth. You must have registered at my.audi.com. The myAudi app must be installed on your mobile device, and the service must be activated in the MMI. A key user must have been set ⇨ *page 38*.

### Assigning an Audi connect key

Applies to: key user

▸ Use the myAudi app to create a key for yourself or another user.
▸ Applies to MMI: Call up the security code in your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Audi connect key** > **Call up security code**. A six-character code will be displayed.
▸ Enter the security code in the myAudi app. You will receive your key, or the user you have selected will receive an invitation to install the key.

### Accepting an Audi connect key

Applies to: invited users

▸ Accept the invitation in the myAudi app.

### Activating/deactivating the Audi connect key

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle. If you deactivate the function, all Audi connect keys that have been assigned and the Audi connect key card can no longer be used. All assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be used again as soon as you reactivate the function.

▸ Use your vehicle key to switch on your vehicle's ignition.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Audi connect key**.
▸ Activate or deactivate the option **Audi connect key**.

**Note**

– Audi connect keys can be managed on the myAudi portal or in the myAudi app.
– The key user can remove Audi connect keys that were assigned previously and re-assign them to other users.
– Invited users can also remove existing Audi connect keys.
– The Audi connect key may fail to function properly if the mobile device remains uncharged for several days.
– Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 307*.
– Applies to MMI: You can check how many Audi connect keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Car information**.

## Audi connect key card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

You can use your Audi connect key card to lock/unlock ⇨ *page 46* and start ⇨ *page 110* the vehicle. ▸

This prevents you from having to give your mobile device to others e.g. for a service appointment or if you require roadside assistance. The key card must be activated before each use.

Important: You must have an Audi connect key ⇨ *page 48*.

### Activating/deactivating an Audi connect key card

- ▸ Switch on the ignition using the Audi connect key (mobile device) ⇨ *page 110*.
- ▸ Remove your mobile device from the charging box ⇨ *page 245, Using the Audi phone box*.
- ▸ Place the key card in the charging box ⇨ *page 245, Using the Audi phone box*. Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The key card is automatically deactivated again as soon as the ignition is switched on using an Audi connect key or a vehicle key. Once deactivated, the key card can therefore be stored in the vehicle.

You can check the status of your key card on the MMI ⇨ *page 49*.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

## Checking the status

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect key

The status of assigned Audi connect keys and the Audi connect key card can be checked on the myAudi portal, in the myAudi app and in the vehicle.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Audi connect key** > **Audi connect key**.

# Boot lid

## General information

**WARNING**

- – Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- – Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 43, Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- – Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- – To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
- – After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- – The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.
- – If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury! ▶

– Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

**CAUTION**

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

**Note**

– When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the 2x button on the vehicle key twice. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.
– You can change the settings on the MMI to activate/deactivate the option for opening the luggage compartment via the release catch ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27* ⇨ *page 40*.

## Opening/closing boot lid




**Fig. 27** Boot lid: Release catch




**Fig. 28** Driver's door: Opening boot lid

### Opening boot lid

- Unlock the vehicle or boot lid with the / 2x button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 27*. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *Fig. 27*. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked. Or
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 28*.

### Closing boot lid

- Please refer to ⇨ *page 50, Power-operated boot lid*.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 49*.

## Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid

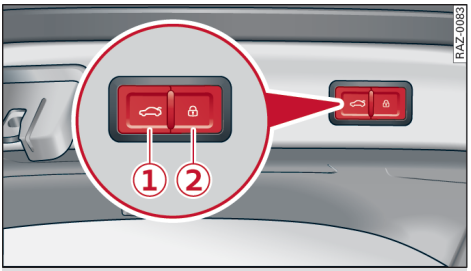



**Fig. 29** Boot lid: ① close button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)

The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 49*.

### Opening boot lid

- Press the 2x button on the vehicle key twice with the ignition switched off ⇨ *page 45, Fig. 24*. Or
- Briefly pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 28*. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ① ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27*. The vehicle key must be within a range ▶

of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked.

### Closing boot lid

- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or
- Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27*. Or
- Press the boot lid down slightly. Or
- With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 28* until the boot lid is closed. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the 2x button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 3 m). Or
- Press the button inside the boot lid. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press the / button inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the * button.

### Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press the button or the release catch in the boot lid again ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27*. Or
- You press the 2x button on the convenience key*. Or
- If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press the button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27* again, the boot lid will open/close again.

### Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- Press the button on the inside of the boot lid for at least four seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- To set a higher open position, wait for five seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- Then press the button for at least four seconds again to store the desired open position.

### Opening/closing boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly, less effort will be required.

- Pull the boot lid down slightly by the handle* on the inside and then push the boot lid down until it closes.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 49*.

**Note**

If the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the * button on the boot lid will not function.

## Opening boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled boot lid

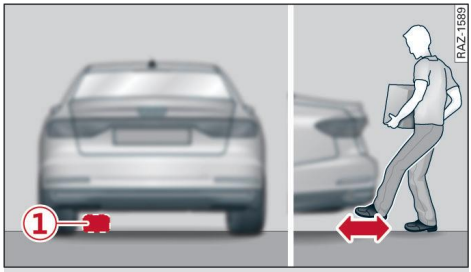



**Fig. 30** Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

The boot lid can be opened automatically ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 49*.

Important: The ignition must be switched off and the convenience key function must be activated on the MMI. The convenience key* must be on your person. You must be standing to the left of centre behind the boot lid.

### Activating/deactivating function

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off by activating/deactivating the function for unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) in the central locking menu ⇨ *page 40, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

### Opening boot lid

The turn signals flash to indicate that the boot lid is opening.

- ▸ To open the boot lid, swing your foot forwards and back very closely under the bumper ① without touching it in one single fluid movement ⇨ *Fig. 30*. Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open when the system detects the gesture.

### Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- ▸ You press button ① ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 29* or the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27* again, or
- ▸ You press the 2x button on the convenience key, or
- ▸ If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press button ① ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 29* or the release catch on the boot lid ⇨ *page 50, Fig. 27* again, the boot lid will close/open again.

### Information on using the foot gesture function correctly

The boot lid will open only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- – If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- – If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- – If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- – If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- – In heavy rain.
- – If the bumper is very dirty (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- – If the radio signal from the convenience key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).

### Information on incorrect use

The boot lid may be opened unintentionally in situations such as the following:

- – If a charging cable is routed around the rear of the vehicle.
- – When sweeping under the rear bumper.
- – If exposed to a strong jet of water or steam.
- – When repair work is performed on or near the rear bumper.
- – By gates moving in the area near the bumper.

You can deactivate the foot gesture control for the boot lid to prevent the function from being triggered incorrectly ⇨ *page 52, Activating/deactivating function*.

**WARNING**

- – Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 49*.
- – Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened unintentionally if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

- – Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened unintentionally (and could hit the garage ceiling) if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle.

▶

– Always make sure that there are no valid keys within the area of detection around the boot lid.

**CAUTION**

Deactivate the function for unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) on the MMI ⇨ *page 52, Activating/deactivating function* to prevent the boot lid from being opened unintentionally in the following situations:

– When you park the vehicle close to obstacles such as streetlights, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling
– Before washing the vehicle
– When using a car wash
– Before any maintenance and repair work on the vehicle
– Before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer

## Releasing the boot lid manually

*The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.*

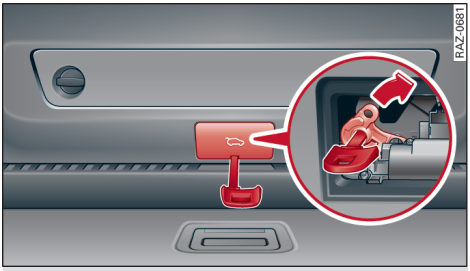



**Fig. 31** Inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

▸ Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇨ *page 94*.
▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 45*.
▸ Prise off the cover in the boot lid trim (using the emergency key).
▸ To unlock the boot lid, press the release lever in the direction of the arrow using the emergency key.

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 49*.

**WARNING**

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

# Child lock

*The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.*

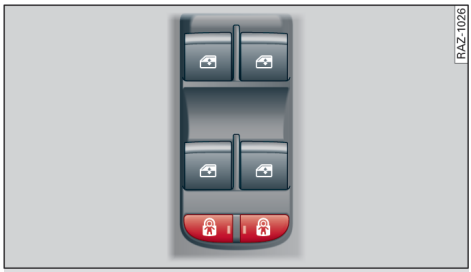



**Fig. 32** Driver's door: Controls

▸ To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the electric window switch and interior door handle on each of the rear doors), press the left/right button on the driver's door ⇨ *Fig. 32*. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
▸ Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:

– The rear interior door handles
– The rear window switches
– The buttons for the blinds* in the rear cabin
– Applies to vehicles with 4-zone automatic air conditioner: The air conditioner control console in the rear cabin. In this case, the air conditioner in the rear cabin can still be operated using the SYNC button ⇨ *page 101* on the air conditioner console in the front cabin. ▶

### Driver message in the instrument cluster display

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the button again.

If the message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.
– If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

## Electric windows

### Opening/closing windows and blinds

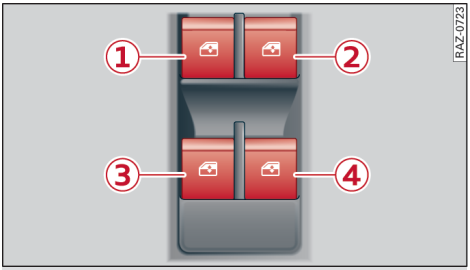



**Fig. 33** Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

① Front left window
② Front right window
③ Rear left window
④ Rear right window

### Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All electric windows have two-stage switches:

- To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the switch briefly to the second position. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

### Opening/closing blinds on rear side windows

Applies to: vehicles with electric blinds on the rear side windows

Important: The relevant window must be closed.

- To close/open the blind from the driver's seat, pull/press the corresponding window switch in the driver's door.
- To close/open the blind from the rear cabin, pull/press the corresponding window switch in the rear door.

**WARNING**

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.
– Always take care when closing the windows/blinds*. Incorrect use can cause injuries.

**Note**

– When the doors are opened, the windows will automatically be lowered slightly.
– If the driver's or front passenger's door is opened with the window all the way down, the window will be raised slightly. The window will be lowered again when you close the door.
– The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
– The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.

## Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

### Convenience open/close function for windows/panoramic glass roof*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sunroof* are opened all at once ⇨ *page 40, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

- Press and hold the / button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the sunroof* is open/closed ⇨ . Or
- Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle ⇨ *page 46, Fig. 25* until all the windows and the sunroof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the sunroof* are closed.

### Convenience open/close function for blinds*

Applies to: vehicles with electric blinds

You can open/close all the blinds simultaneously.

- Press and hold the button in the rear door.

**WARNING**

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.
– Take care when closing the windows and the panoramic glass roof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and panoramic glass roof* when you are approx. 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the panoramic glass roof* when pressing the button to close them. The windows and sunroof stop moving as soon as the button is released.

**Note**

Applies to vehicles with panoramic glass roof: If the roof blind is closed when you open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

# Panoramic glass roof

## Operating roof blind for panoramic glass roof

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof and roof blinds

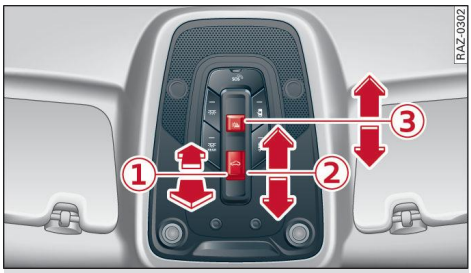



**Fig. 34** Headliner: Switches for panoramic glass roof and sun blind*

The switches have two stages.

If the roof blind is closed when you tilt/slide open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

### Operating the roof blind

The roof blind cannot be closed completely when the roof is open.

- To open/close the blind: Briefly slide the switch in the headliner (3) forwards/backwards to the second position.
- To set an intermediate position: Press/pull the switch to the first position until the blind has reached the desired position.

### Operating the sunroof

- To tilt the roof open: Briefly press the switch in the headliner upwards to the second position (1).
- To tilt the roof closed: Briefly pull the switch downwards to the second position.
- Applies when blind is open: To slide the roof open: Briefly slide the switch backwards to the second position (2).
- To slide the roof closed: Briefly slide the switch forwards to the second position.
- Applies when blind is open: To set an intermediate position: Slide, press or pull the ▶

switch to the first position until the roof has reached the desired position.

### Opening quickly

The sunroof and roof blind can also be opened at the same time.

▸ Briefly slide the switch backwards to the second position twice (2).

If necessary, you can interrupt the quick opening/closing procedure by pressing the button again.

### Closing the sunroof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

▸ After the sunroof opens automatically, pull and hold the corresponding switch within 5 seconds until the sunroof is closed.

**WARNING**

– Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 39*.
– Take care when closing the roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

Always close the roof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.

**Note**

– The sunroof and the blinds can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
– The sunroof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

# Garage door opener

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electrical devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight[1)] hand-held transmitters.

**WARNING**

– When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
– Do not allow the displays and their operation to distract you from watching the traffic.

**Note**

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults ⇨ *page 307*.

**Note**

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:
– You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.
– You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/HomeLink generation) on the MMI:
– On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener** > ⓘ.

1) The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 57, Programming*, the vehicle must be within range of the system and the ignition must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system.

- If you have programmed only one hand-held transmitter, press the button on the lower display. Or
- If you have programmed more than one hand-held transmitter, press the button on the lower display, then press the appropriate button for the system. Or
- Applies to vehicles with programmable steering wheel button: If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button, press the button ⇨ *page 36*. Or
- Applies to vehicles with GPS link: If you have programmed the **GPS link**, press the appropriate button on the top display (notification centre ⇨ *page 30*). The button will appear on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system.

When transmission has been completed successfully, the driver message **Send to: XXX** will appear.

## Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

### Programming

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program.

- To program the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the button on the lower display. Follow the instructions on the upper display. Or
- To program **further** systems, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: ⊕. Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- To **reprogram** a system, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**. Press the button and select for the system you would like to reprogram. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener is available immediately after programming; for others, it must be synchronised additionally.

### Synchronising[1)]

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
- Press the button for the system you would like to synchronise.
- Follow the instructions on the MMI.

### GPS link

Applies to: vehicles with GPS link

For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system.

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇨ *page 57* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or

If you wish to program the GPS link for a previously programmed system: ▶

[1)] Applies only to rolling code systems

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
▸ Press the button.
▸ Press the button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of.
▸ Select **GPS link**.
▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

The notification centre ⇨ *page 30* can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press .

### Renaming an assignment

You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

▸ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or

If you wish to rename a previously programmed system:
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
▸ Press the button.
▸ Press the button for the system you would like to rename.
▸ Select **Rename**. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
▸ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

### Deleting a system

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
▸ Press the button.
▸ To delete an **individual** system, press the ☐ button for the corresponding system. After the tick mark ✓ is set, select **Delete**.
▸ To delete **all** systems, select: **All** > **Delete**.

**Note**

– Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
– The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
– It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

**Note**

If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.
– Switch on the ignition.
– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Garage door opener**.
– Press and hold the corresponding ⊕ button.
– Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

# Lights and vision

## Exterior lights

### Switching lights on and off

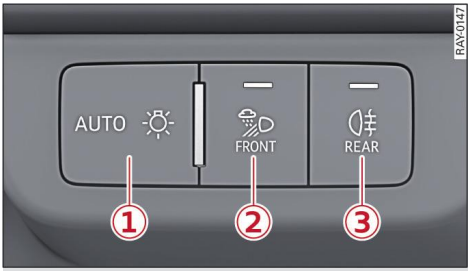



**Fig. 35** Dashboard: Light switch module

#### ① Light switch

Press ① until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the ignition is switched on.

– AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
– – You can turn on the dipped headlights as soon as you have switched on the ignition.
– – You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
– OFF – You can switch all of the light functions off at speeds below 10 km/h.

If the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp / will light up in the instrument cluster.

#### ② All-weather light

All-weather lights improve illumination of the road when visibility is poor.

#### ③ Rear fog light

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

#### Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.

#### Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights in these conditions and when driving after dark.

**Note**

– If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
– The driver is responsible for complying with the relevant country-specific regulations when using the lights while driving and parking the vehicle.
– Depending on the export market, the rear lights on some vehicles may be switched on ▶

together with the headlights when the daytime running lights* are activated. On other vehicles, the rear lights remain off.

– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
– When the side lights are switched on with the ignition switched off, the symbol will light up in the light switch module.

## Turn signal and main beam lever

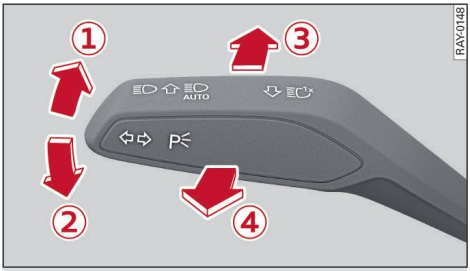



**Fig. 36** Control lever: Switching light functions on/off

The turn signal lever also operates the parking lights, main beam headlights and headlight flasher.

### Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ and parking lights P

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp ⇦ or ⇨ will flash. If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the ignition switched off:

① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)

② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the ignition is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

### Main beams and headlight flasher

▸ Move the lever to the appropriate position:

③ Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* ⇨ *page 60*)

④ Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

## Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

Applies to vehicles with matrix LED headlights: Individual segments of the main beams are activated or deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

### Activating the main beam assist AUTO

Important: The lights must be set to AUTO and the main beam assist function must be activated on the MMI ⇨ *page 62*.

▸ Briefly press the lever forwards ③ ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 36* to activate the main beam assist. The ▶

indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

### Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- To activate the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards (3) ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 36*. The indicator lamp will light up.
- To deactivate the main beams manually, pull the lever towards you (4) ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 36*. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

### Flashing the headlights

- To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you (4) ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 36*. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
– The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other road users.

**Note**

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

## Laser lights

Applies to: vehicles with laser lights

Laser lights increase the range of the main beams.

An additional module integrated in the headlight uses a phosphor to convert the blue laser light to white light.

### Activating/deactivating the laser lights

Important: The AUTO lighting function must be activated, and the main beam assist function and laser lights must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 62*.

The main beam assist function activates the main beams on the headlights. The laser lights are switched on shortly after the LED main beams.

- Briefly press the lever forwards (3) ⇨ *page 60, Fig. 36* to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be activated/deactivated automatically.

The laser lights are switched on at speeds above approximately 70 km/h when the main beams are activated.

The laser lights are dipped again when the road speed drops below approximately 50 km/h or when the main beam assist dips the LED main beams.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– All headlight repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. Improper repairs can cause damage to eyesight, impair the effectiveness of the system and invalidate the operating permit for your vehicle.
– The laser module must NOT be opened. This can cause permanent damage to eyesight. ▶

**Note**

The headlights contain class 2 lasers and technical components which transform the laser beams so that there is no danger when they are used as intended.

## Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Exterior lighting**.

### Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

**Activation time** – You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.

**Main beam assist** – You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

**Laser lights** – You can switch the laser lights on/off.

### Entry/exit lights

The **entry/exit lights** illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the ignition off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. The front and rear daytime running lights* are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

### Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

### Digital light signatures

You can choose between different light signatures. Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, the light signature is active in conjunction with the daytime running lights and/or the tail lights.

## Hazard warning lights




**Fig. 37** Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button (1) to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps ⇦ and ⇨ both flash simultaneously.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically[1)].

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

[1)] This function is not available in all countries.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, a bulb has failed. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual**

The adaptive light feature is out of action. The dipped headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual**

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual**

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later.

**Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual**

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Interior lights

## Front interior lights




**Fig. 38** Headliner: Interior lights

### Buttons for interior lights

* – Interior lights on/off

– Courtesy lighting on/off. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

### Touch-sensitive reading lights

- Briefly touch the surface (1) to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

## Rear interior lights

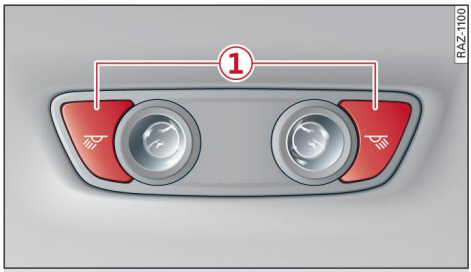



**Fig. 39** Headliner: Reading lights

### Reading lights

- Press the button (1) to switch the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function*, press the button (1) when the light is switched off, ▶

and keep pressing it until the desired brightness level is reached.

## Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Background lighting**.

You can select from several colour profiles, e.g. **Maritime**.

Additional settings and profiles:

– **Brightness**: You can adjust the brightness of the entire background lighting.
– **Individual**: You can adjust the brightness and colour of the background lighting for the linear and surface lighting.
– **Audi drive select**: The colour of the linear and surface lighting changes depending on the drive select* mode set.

**Note**

If the drive select* function is selected on some equipment versions, the current colour of the linear and surface lighting will change briefly to red or blue whenever the interior temperature is increased or reduced manually.

## Display brightness

You can adjust the standard brightness of the instrument cluster and display lighting. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness**.

Settings available on the MMI:

– **Cockpit dimming**
– **Head-up display**
– **MMI**
– **Audi virtual cockpit**

# Clear vision

## Adjusting the exterior mirrors




**Fig. 40** Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

▸ Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:

0 – To deactivate all setting functions.

/ – To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror surface, tilt the knob in the desired direction.

– To heat* the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

– To fold in the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the MMI settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 40*.

### Tilt function* for exterior mirror on passenger side

Important: The knob must be in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The mirror is tilted slightly when you select reverse gear in order to provide a better view of the kerb, for example, when reversing into a space.

You can adjust the mirror surface by tilting the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position from the reversing position: ▸

– When you switch off the ignition
– If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h.
– If the knob is no longer in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side

**WARNING**

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
– Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

**Note**

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

## Anti-dazzle setting

### Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

▸ Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

### Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

**CAUTION**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
– The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

## Sun visors




**Fig. 41** Headliner: Sun visor

### Sun visor

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the door ①.

In this position you can also slide the sun visors in or out (depending on the vehicle's equipment).

### Make-up mirrors

The light for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

## Sun blind

Applies to: vehicles with manual sun blind

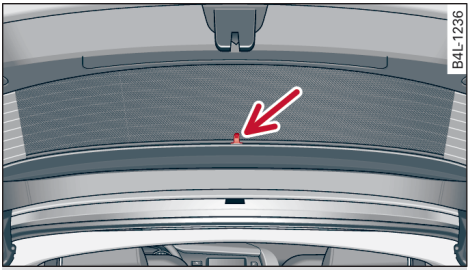



**Fig. 42** Rear window: Sun blind

### Sun blind on rear window

▸ Pull out the sun blind and hook it into the retainer on the boot lid.

# Windscreen wipers

## Switching on the windscreen wipers

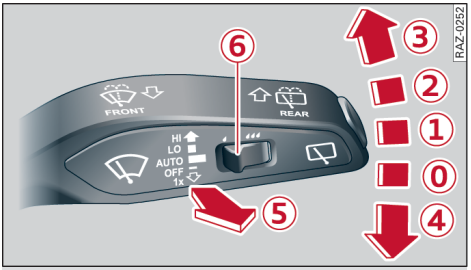



**Fig. 43** Control lever: Windscreen wipers

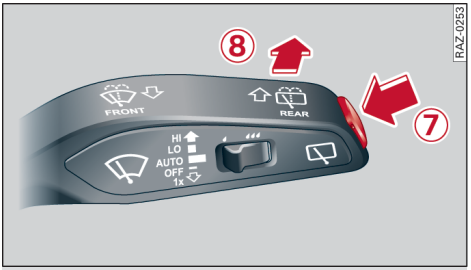



**Fig. 44** Control lever: Rear window wiper

▸ Move the lever to the appropriate position:

⓪ Wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Lights & vision** > **Rain sensor**.

② Slow wipe

③ Fast wipe

④ Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while. ▶

⑤ Wash/wipe. The number of wipe and extra-wipe cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑤.

The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

If you hold the lever in position ⑤ for more than half a second, the extended wipe function will be activated. In this case, the windscreen wiper will move closer to the edge of the windscreen during the extra wipe, and remove the dirt collected during the wiping cycle. This function is available at speeds of up to 120 km/h.

The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights and the camera for the night vision assist* are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position ⑤.

⑦ Rear wipe. The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑧ Rear wash/wipe. The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑧. The reversing camera is also washed (depends on the vehicle's equipment).

**WARNING**

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
– Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
– Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇨ *page 67, Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

**CAUTION**

– In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
– Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position ⓪) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

**Note**

– The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the lever to any position. Single wipe (lever in position ④) also works when the ignition is switched off.
– Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
– If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

## Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

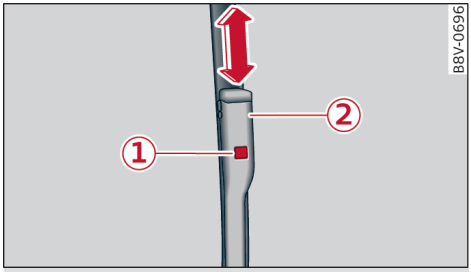



**Fig. 45** Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

### Wiper change position

- ▸ Switch the ignition off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 43* and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
- ▸ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the windscreen wiper lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

You can also switch the wiper change position on/off on the MMI system:

- ▸ Switch the windscreen wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 66, Fig. 43*).
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Wiper change position**.

### Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- ▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▸ Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 347*.

### Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- ▸ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▸ Keep hold of the wiper blade.
- ▸ Press the release button ① on the wiper blade.
- ▸ Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm ②.
- ▸ Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
- ▸ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- ▸ Switch off the wiper change function.

**WARNING**

– For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.
– Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
– Never move your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

**Note**

– You can also use the wiper change position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
– You cannot activate the wiper change position when the bonnet is open.

## Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade

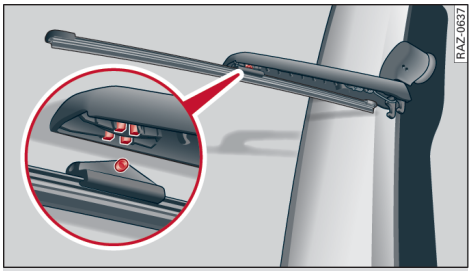



**Fig. 46** Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

### Cleaning the wiper blade

- ▸ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▸ Notes on cleaning ⇨ *table on page 347*.

### Taking off the wiper blade

- ▸ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▸ Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

### Fitting the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- ▸ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window. ▶

**WARNING**

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. The driver message shown in addition indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual**

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. You can continue to use all the other functions of the windscreen wiper lever that do not use the rain sensor. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Sitting correctly and safely

## Ensuring the correct seating position

### General information

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇨ *page 70*.
– The steering wheel is set correctly ⇨ *page 74*.
– The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇨ *page 64*.
– Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 75*.
– Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇨ *page 76*.
– Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇨ *page 83*.
– Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇨ *page 83*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 84*.

#### Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– Never stand up in the vehicle.
– Never stand on the seats.
– Never kneel on the seats.
– Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
– Never lean against the dash panel.
– Never lie down on the rear seat.
– Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
– Never sit sideways.
– Never lean out of the window.
– Never put your feet out of the window.
– Never put your feet on the dash panel.
– Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
– Never ride in the footwell.
– Never sit on the armrests.
– Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
– Never climb into the luggage compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.

**Note**

– Store your seating profile* ⇨ *page 80*. This allows you to access your personal seating profile quickly and easily at any time.
– If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

## Front seats

### General information

Ensure that:

– You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard. ▶

– Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
– Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion.
– The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back.
– You have a good view of your surroundings.
– You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster, warning/indicator lamps and head-up display*.

### Accessing the seat settings menu quickly

Applies to: vehicles with seat settings on MMI

Press the image of the driver's seat/passenger's seat ⇨ *page 100, Fig. 87* ① in the air conditioning menu to access the seat settings for a particular seat directly.

**WARNING**

– If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
– Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
– Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
– Always make sure that the floor mats are properly secured.
– Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

**CAUTION**

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the roof. This could cause damage.

**Note**

Use only one control at a time to adjust the seat.

## Manual adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment

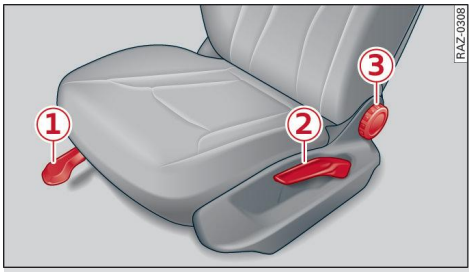



**Fig. 47** Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

### Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ① and move the seat.
▸ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever ②.

### Adjusting the backrest

▸ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob ③.

## Electric adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment

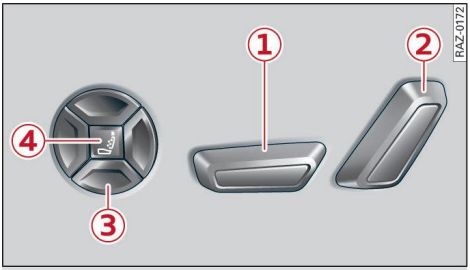



**Fig. 48** Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The basic settings can be adjusted using the buttons.

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

### Adjusting the seat position

- ▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button (1) forwards/backwards.
- ▸ To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button (1) upwards/downwards.
- ▸ To adjust the seat cushion, press the front area of button (1) upwards/downwards.

### Adjusting the backrest

- ▸ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button (2) forwards/backwards.

### Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button (3).

### Massage function

Massage function on/off (4). Setting massage programme and intensity ⇨ *page 73*.

**WARNING**

The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

## Adjusting the front seats on the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with seat adjustment via MMI




**Fig. 49** Seat adjustment

Further adjustments can be made using the MMI system.

The settings and the number of menus and buttons depend on the vehicle's equipment.

### How to use the controls

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Seats**.
- ▸ Swipe to the left or right to access the different menus (3).
- ▸ To display the different seats, press on 〉or 〈 (4).

The red highlighting in the symbol (5) shows which seat is currently selected.

### Seat adjustment

Applies to: MMI

- ▸ To select the seat adjustment type, press (1) as necessary.
- ▸ Press and hold the corresponding arrow (2) until the desired position is reached.

### Massage

Refer to ⇨ *page 73*.

### Seat temperature balance

You can use the seat temperature balance to heat/ventilate the backrest and seat cushion to different temperatures ⇨ ⚠ *in Settings on page 103*.

- ▸ Move the slider up/down to adjust the seat heating/ventilation balance.

### Further seat settings

Refer to ⇨ *page 73*.

## Massage function for front seats

Applies to: vehicles with massage function

### Calling up massage function

Applies to: MMI

▸ To call up the **Massage** menu, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 72, Fig. 48*.

### Switching massage function on/off

Applies to: MMI

▸ To switch the massage function on/off, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 72, Fig. 48*. Or:
▸ On the MMI, press **Start**/**Stop**.

### Setting massage programme and intensity

Applies to: MMI

▸ To select the massage programme, press the corresponding button, e.g. **Wave**, on the MMI.
▸ To set the intensity of the massage, press **Intensity** on the MMI repeatedly until the desired level is reached.

**Note**

The massage function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

## Further seat settings on the MMI

You can use the MMI to adjust further seat settings and switch functions on/off.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Seats** > **Further seat settings**.

The following options may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

### Reset seat position

You can move the front passenger's seat into the same position as the driver's seat.

### Easy entry for driver's seat/easy entry for passenger's seat

The easy entry function gives improved access to the vehicle.

## Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

Applies to: vehicles with remote front passenger's seat adjustment

You can adjust the front passenger's seat using the buttons on the driver's seat.

Applies to MMI:

▸ On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Seats**.
▸ To display the different seats, press on 〉 or 〈.
▸ Press the button to switch the function on. The bottom edge of the button will light up in red.

Once you have switched the function on, you can adjust the front passenger's seat using the buttons on the driver's seat ⇨ *page 72, Fig. 48*.

**Note**

This function is automatically deactivated when you close the menu.

## Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

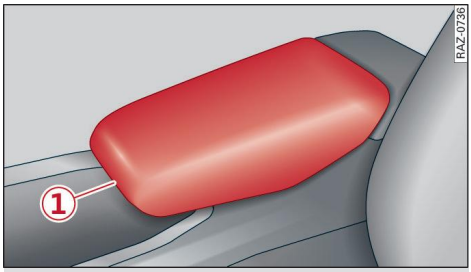



**Fig. 50** Front cabin: centre armrest

### Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

▸ To move the armrest forwards/backwards, press button ①.

**WARNING**

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit arm movement – risk of injury!

# Rear seats

## General information

**WARNING**

– Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.
– Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.
– Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.

## Seat adjustment

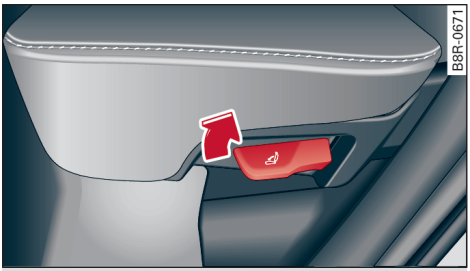



**Fig. 51** Adjusting the backrest

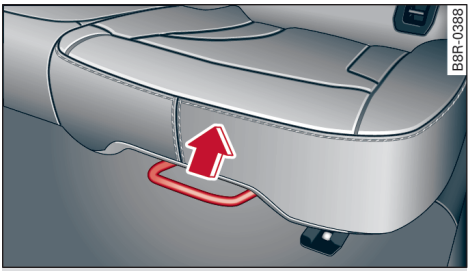



**Fig. 52** Adjusting the seat position

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

### Adjusting the backrest

▸ Hold the backrest with one hand while pushing the lever upwards ⇨ *Fig. 51* with the other.
▸ Move the backrest forwards/backwards to the desired position.
▸ Release the lever and keep moving the backrest until it locks in place.

### Adjusting the seat position

▸ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ⇨ *Fig. 52* and move the seat.
▸ Release the bar and move the seat further until it locks in position.

# Steering wheel

## General information

Ensure that:

– Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
– You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster and head-up display* at all times.
– You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.

**WARNING**

– Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

## Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

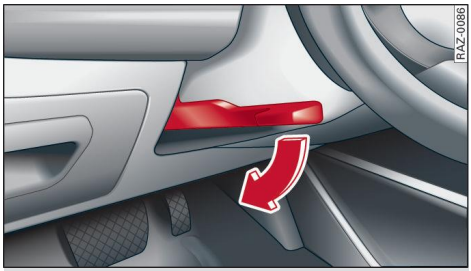



**Fig. 53** Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- ▸ Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.

**WARNING**

– Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!

– Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

## Adjusting the steering wheel position (electric adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with electric steering wheel adjustment

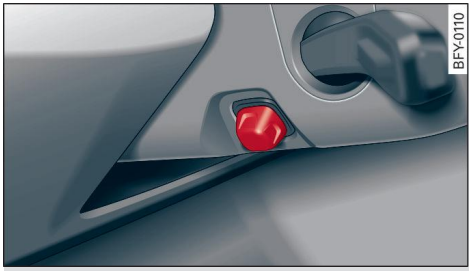



**Fig. 54** Steering column: Button for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted electrically to suit the driver.

- ▸ To adjust the steering wheel in the desired direction, press the corresponding point on the switch.

The steering wheel can be adjusted even when the ignition is off.

# Head restraints

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

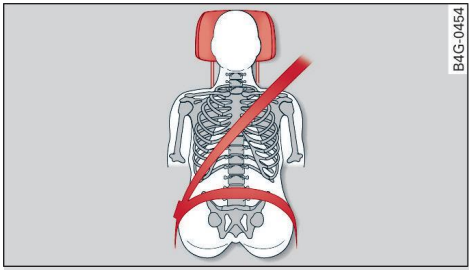



**Fig. 55** Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

– The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.

– The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.

– The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled up at least one notch.

**WARNING**

– There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.

– Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇨ *page 83*. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with ▶

the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

## Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

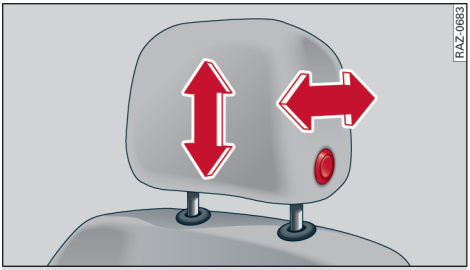



**Fig. 56** Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

### Adjusting head restraint

- ▸ To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- ▸ To lower the head restraint (or move it forwards or backwards), press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

## Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

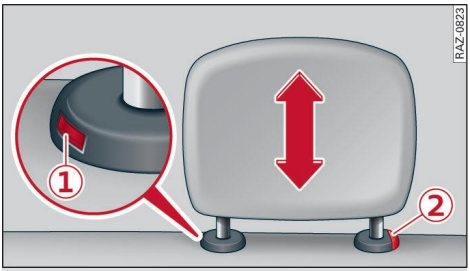



**Fig. 57** Rear seat: Adjusting/removing head restraint

### Adjusting head restraint

- ▸ To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- ▸ To lower the head restraint, press the button (2) and move the head restraint downwards. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

### Removing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▸ Applies to vehicles with folding backrest: Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 94*.
- ▸ Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- ▸ Use a suitable tool from the vehicle toolkit or open the blade of the vehicle key or emergency key and press it into the release point (1) on the inside or outside of the base.
- ▸ Press the button (2) and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 75*.

### Installing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- ▸ Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇨ *page 94*.
- ▸ Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- ▸ Press the button (2) and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

# Seat belts

## General information

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered. ▶

**WARNING**

The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.

- All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.
- In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
- Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one person (including small children) with the same seat belt.
- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇨ *page 70*.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇨ *page 347*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

## Wearing a seat belt correctly

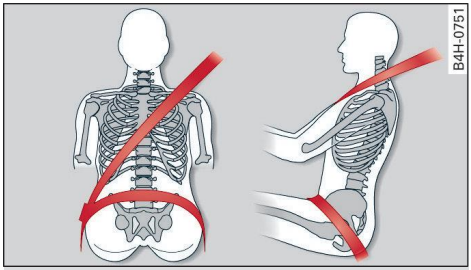



**Fig. 58** Positioning seat belts over lap/shoulder

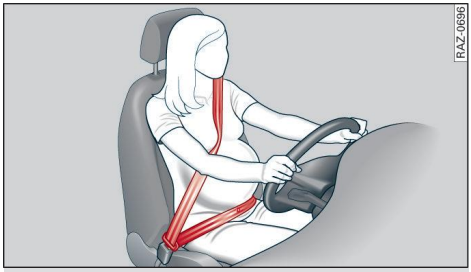



**Fig. 59** Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇨ *Fig. 58*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇨ *Fig. 59*. ▶

**WARNING**

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

– Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
– The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
– The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
– The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
– The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.
– Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
– The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
– Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
– Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
– Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
– During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

**CAUTION**

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

## Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

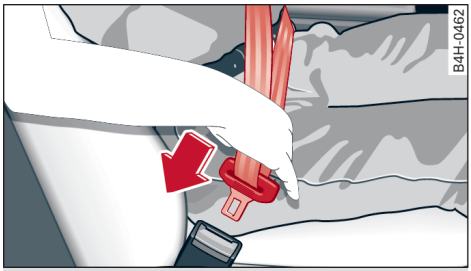



**Fig. 60** Latch plate and buckle

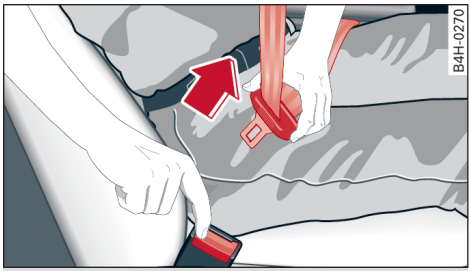



**Fig. 61** The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 76*.

### Fastening the seat belt

▸ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
▸ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇨ *Fig. 60*.
▸ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

### Unfastening the seat belt

▸ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇨ *Fig. 61*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
▸ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

## Seat belt monitor

– If the warning lamp lights up/flashes in the instrument cluster, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened while the vehicle was moving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

The status of the rear seat belts is also monitored by the following indicator lamps in the instrument cluster:

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the seat belt for the corresponding rear seat is not buckled or the seat is not occupied.

– If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

## Adjusting seat belt height

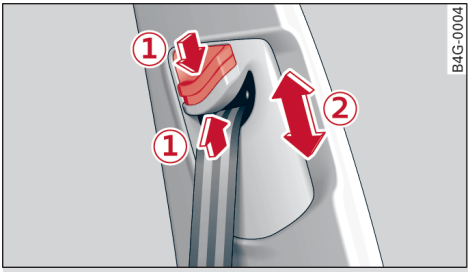



**Fig. 62** Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting (2) upwards.
- To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism (1) and slide the guide fitting (2) downwards.
- After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

**Note**

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

## Additional seat belt functions

### Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

### Belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

### Seat belt retraction

After the seat belt is unbuckled, it is rolled up by an electric motor in the reversible belt tensioner.

### Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened after you drive off or in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be taken up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

**WARNING**

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

**Note**

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

# Memory function

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function can be used to store and call up seat profiles via the recall buttons in the door trim.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, settings such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors can be stored.

## Storing and calling up seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

### Storing seat profile

- ▸ Press the SET button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▸ Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

### Calling up seat profile

- ▸ If the driver's/front passenger's door is open and the ignition is off, briefly press the recall button once. All the settings for the seat profile will be applied.
- ▸ If the driver's/front passenger's door is closed or the ignition is on, press and hold the recall button until the seat profile settings have been restored.

**WARNING**

– For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.

– If necessary, the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat.

# Airbag system

## General information

**WARNING**

– If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇨ *page 70*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.

– Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.

– Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows and in the footwell.

– Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.

– The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags. ▶

– If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The side airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
– Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
– Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
– The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.
– The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.

**Note**

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions ⇨ *page 83*.

## Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

## Description

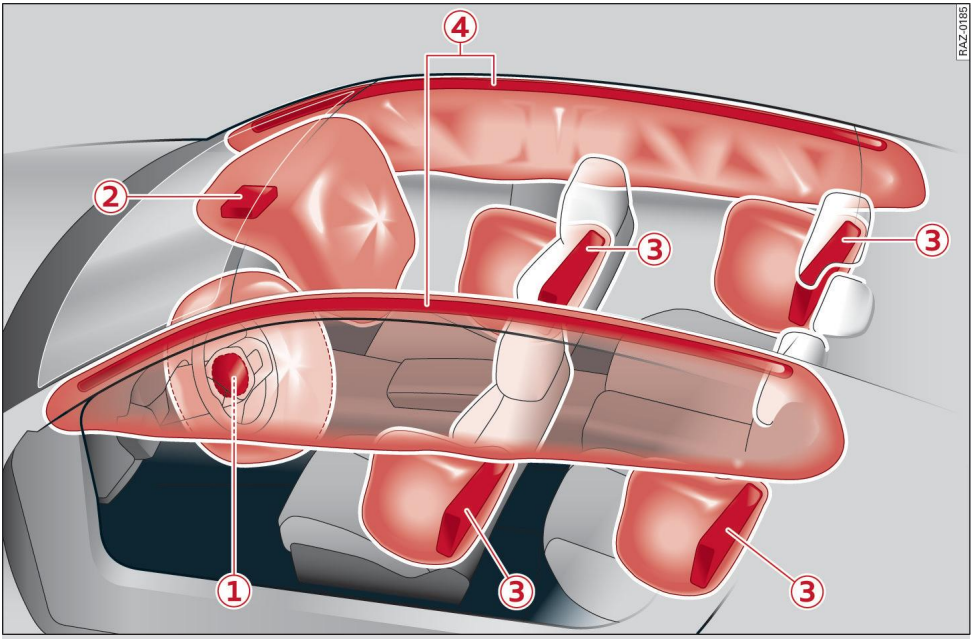



**Fig. 63** Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

① Driver's airbag
② Front passenger's airbag
③ Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
④ Head-protection airbags

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the ▶

possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the ignition is on.

## Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag




**Fig. 64** Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag




**Fig. 65** Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇨ *page 85*. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- ▸ Take out the emergency key ⇨ *page 45*.
- ▸ To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, turn the emergency key to the (OFF) position in the key-operated switch ⇨ *Fig. 64*. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF will light up and remain lit.
- ▸ The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the emergency key to the (ON) position. The indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON will light up briefly.

**WARNING**

– A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check while driving that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF remains lit at all times.

– Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! In this case, while driving, always check that PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not lit.

# Child restraint systems

## General information




**Fig. 66** Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. ▸

**WARNING**

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

– Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
– Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
– Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
– Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
– Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
– Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
– If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
– Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
– The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇨ *page 75*. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
– Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
– No anchorages are provided in the vehicle for child seats which need to be secured additionally with restraint systems such as a lower tether. Do not secure any additional restraint systems to the front seats, for example to the backrest or seat rail.
– NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
  – Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
  – Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇨ *page 83*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
– If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front ▶

passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury!
– Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

– The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

## The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

Audi recommends child restraint systems from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

### Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇨ *table on page 86*, ⇨ *table on page 87*.

### In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables ⇨ *table on page 86* and ⇨ *table on page 87* to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems
– Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
– Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag*: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇨ *page 83*.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems
– Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. ▶

**Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX**

| Child restraint system | ISOFIX size category | Rear seats | | Front passenger's seat*[a] | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Outer | Centre | Front passenger's airbag on | Front passenger's airbag off* |
| **Category 0**: Up to 10 kg | E/R1 | IL | X | X | IL |
| **Category 0+**: Up to 13 kg | E/R1 | IL | X | X | IL |
| | D/R2 | | | | |
| | C/R3 | | | | |
| **Category 1**: 9 to 18 kg | D/R2 | IL | X | X | IL |
| | C/R3 | | | | |
| | B/F2 | IL, IUF | X | X | IL |
| | B1/F2x | | | | |
| | A/F3 | | | | |
| **Category 2**: 15 to 25 kg | - | IL | X | IL | IL |
| **Category 3**: 22 to 36 kg | - | IL | X | IL | IL |
| **i-Size child restraint system** | F2x/R2/B2 | i-U | X | X | X |

[a] If you fit a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the height and longitudinal position of the seat and the angle of the backrest as necessary.

– **ISOFIX size category**: The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
– **IL**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
– **IUF**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
– **i-U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
– **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system. ▶

**Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt**

| Child restraint system | Rear seats | | Front passenger's seat[a)] | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Outer | Centre[1)] | Front passenger's air-bag on | Front passenger's air-bag off* |
| **Category 0**<br>Up to 10 kg | U, L | U | X | U |
| **Category 0+**<br>Up to 13 kg | U, L | U | X | U |
| **Category 1**<br>9 to 18 kg | U, L | U | X | U |
| **Category 2**<br>15 to 25 kg | U, L | U | U | U |
| **Category 3**<br>22 to 36 kg | U, L | U | U | U |

a) If you secure a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat with the seat belt, move the front passenger's seat to the highest position, and adjust the longitudinal position of the seat and the angle of the backrest as necessary.

– **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
– **L**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
– **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
– 1): Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

**Note**

– Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
– For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

## Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages

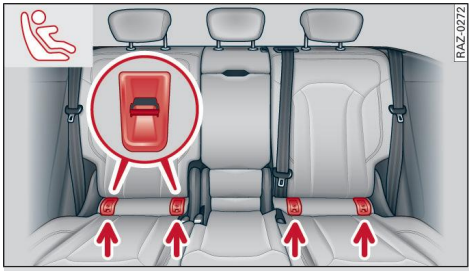



**Fig. 67** Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 83*.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system, according to the table ⇨ *table on page 86*.

▸ Applies to vehicles with rear seat bench with forward/rearward adjustment: Move the rear seat all the way back.
▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 53*.
▸ Remove the covers from the two ISOFIX anchorages.

- ▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▸ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the seat ⇨ *page 88*.

**WARNING**

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

– The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

**Note**

The ISOFIX anchorages are designed for a maximum total weight of 33 kg (weight of child and child restraint system). If the total weight is higher, the child restraint system must be attached to the vehicle using the seat belt.

## Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 83*.

- ▸ Applies to vehicles with rear seat bench with forward/rearward adjustment: Move the rear seat all the way back.
- ▸ Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 53*.
- ▸ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- ▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.
- ▸ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇨ *page 88*, if possible.

**WARNING**

– NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

– To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

## Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage

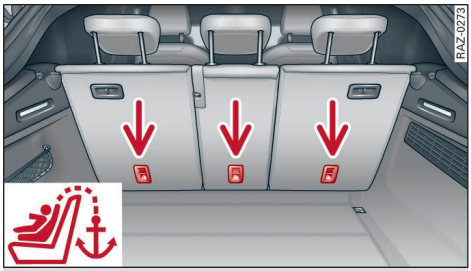



**Fig. 68** Rear backrest: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap

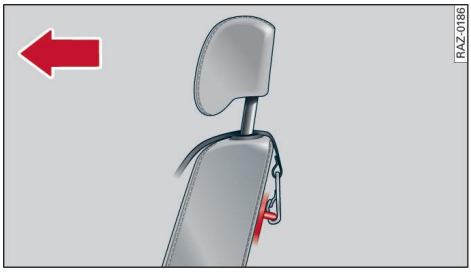



**Fig. 69** Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 83*.

The top tether anchorages are intended for use as an additional point for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap. The anchorages may be fitted in the following locations in the vehicle:

- ▸ Behind the outer seats on the rear bench seat.
- ▸ Behind the centre seat on the rear bench seat.[1)]

Make sure that the combined weight of the child seat and child is not over the maximum permissible weight of 33 kg.

- ▸ Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- ▸ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- ▸ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇨ *Fig. 69*. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- ▸ Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- ▸ If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.

**WARNING**

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

1) Depending on country

# Storage and convenience

## Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray

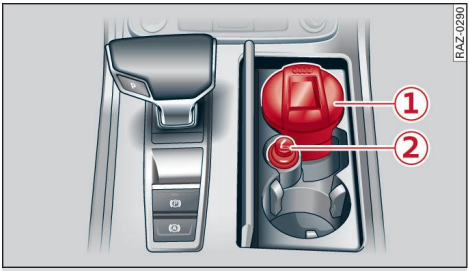



**Fig. 70** Front centre console: Ashtray and cigarette lighter

The ashtray (1) may be located beneath a lid. To open it, tap the edge of the lid.

- ▸ Open the ashtray (1).
- ▸ To empty the ashtray, lift it out of its holder.
- ▸ Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- ▸ Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.

**WARNING**

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

## Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with cigarette lighter

The cigarette lighter (2) ⇨ *page 90, Fig. 70* may be located beneath a lid. To open it, tap the edge of the lid.

- ▸ Press the button on the cigarette lighter in.
- ▸ When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.

**WARNING**

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

## Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).

### 12-volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12-volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12-volt sockets are marked with the symbol or 12V. They are located in the front centre console, in the rear cabin* and in the luggage compartment side trim*.

### USB inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB inputs

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. Depending on the vehicle model, USB inputs may be indicated by one of the following symbols: , or CHARGE ONLY.

**WARNING**

- – Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- – Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

**CAUTION**

- – Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- – To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- – Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- – To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources. ▶

**Note**

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor*⇨ *page 353* supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a short period of time while the compressor* is in use.

## Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders




**Fig. 71** Front centre console: Cup holder

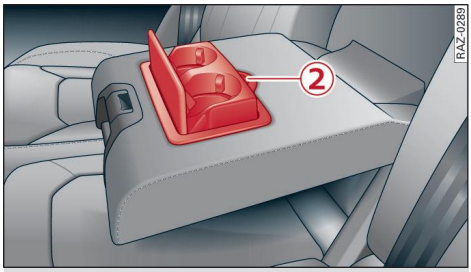



**Fig. 72** Rear centre armrest*: Cup holder

### Cup holders in front centre console

The cup holder ① may be located beneath a lid.

▸ To open the cup holder, tap the edge of the lid.

### Cup holder in rear centre armrest*

▸ Fold down the centre armrest*.
▸ To open the cup holder, lightly press the button ②.
▸ To close the cup holder, fold the cover back until it engages.

**WARNING**

– Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
– Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

**CAUTION**

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

## Storage compartments

### Further storage compartments

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

**WARNING**

– To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
– The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags. ▶

– Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

# Luggage compartment

## General information

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Close the luggage compartment cover before starting the journey if the vehicle load permits this.
- ▸ Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.

**WARNING**

– Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the vehicle occupants in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
– Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
– If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
– Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
– The stretch net* is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!
– Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇨ *page 378*.
– Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
– Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇨ *page 76*.
– Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
– The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
– Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
– Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.
– If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
– The retaining hooks* should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

▶

**CAUTION**

– Lower the rear head restraints ⇨ *page 76* before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
– When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are not trapped – risk of damage!
– Remove all items from the rear bench seat before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
– If you need to adjust the front seats when the rear backrest is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
– Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
– Applies to vehicles with luggage compartment cover: To prevent any damage, let the luggage compartment cover retract slowly.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: Never exceed the maximum permissible load for the luggage compartment floor that is specified on the sticker; otherwise the high-voltage battery underneath it could be damaged. The sticker can be found on the inside of the vehicle body on the left-hand side when the bonnet is open.

**Note**

– The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying ⇨ *page 338*.
– Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

## Manual luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with manual luggage compartment cover

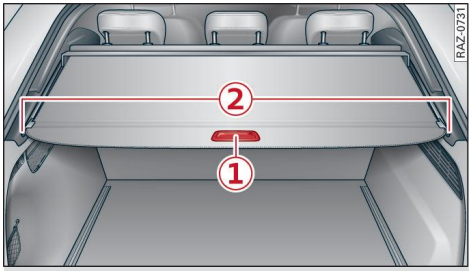



**Fig. 73** Luggage compartment: Cover extended (manual)




**Fig. 74** Luggage compartment: Removing luggage compartment cover

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

▸ To extend the luggage compartment cover, grip the cover by the handle ① and pull it towards the rear of the vehicle until you hear it engage in the guide rails ②.
▸ To retract the luggage compartment cover, lift it slightly and allow it to roll forwards slowly; make sure it does not retract too quickly.
▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, pull both levers ③ firmly in the direction of the arrow and lift out the cover.
▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, hook it into the side trim mountings on both sides.
▸ Press the cover down until it engages.

## Electric luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with electric luggage compartment cover

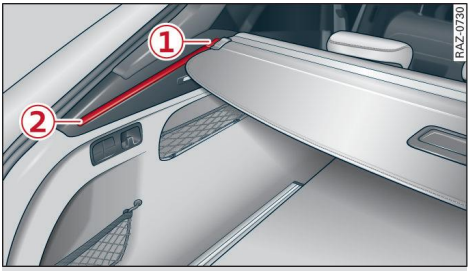



**Fig. 75** Luggage compartment: Cover retracted (electric)

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

When you operate the boot lid, an electric motor moves the luggage compartment cover into position ① or ②.

- ▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, pull the levers ③ ⇨ *page 93, Fig. 74* firmly in the direction of the arrow and lift out the cover.
- ▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, hook it into the side trim mountings on both sides.
- ▸ Press the cover down until it engages.

## Lowering the rear of the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The rear of the vehicle can be lowered to facilitate loading.

The ↓/↑ buttons for lowering the rear of the vehicle are located in the side trim on the left of the luggage compartment.

Important: All doors on the vehicle must be closed and the air suspension must not be set to trailer mode.

- ▸ Open the boot lid.
- ▸ To lower the rear of the vehicle, press the ↓ button.
- ▸ To raise the rear of the vehicle again, press the ↑ button.

The LED in the button lights up while the vehicle is being lowered. Once the loading height has been reached, the LED remains lit as long as the rear of the vehicle is in the lowered position. The LED goes out again when the vehicle is raised to its original position.

The rear of the vehicle is automatically raised when you select a different mode or drive off.

**CAUTION**

- – Do not leave the vehicle parked with the rear lowered in the loading position.
- – Please also observe the information on ground clearance ⇨ *page 133*.

**Note**

- – The vehicle will not be lowered if there is insufficient pressure in the air suspension accumulator when the ignition is switched off. In this case the LED will flash three times.
- – If necessary, the pressure in the air suspension accumulator will be restored when the vehicle is driven at a speed of above 40 km/h.

## Folding the outer backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest

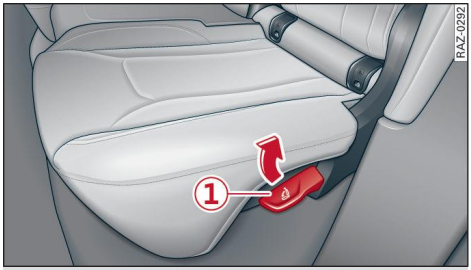



**Fig. 76** Rear seat bench: Release lever

The backrests can be folded down separately or together.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

- ▸ Move the rear seat bench backwards if necessary ⇨ *page 74*.
- ▸ To fold down the backrest, pull the release lever ① in the direction indicated (arrow).
- ▸ Fold down the backrest until it engages.
- ▸ To fold the backrest back up, pull the release lever ① again in the direction indicated (arrow).

▶

▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

## Folding the centre backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding centre backrest

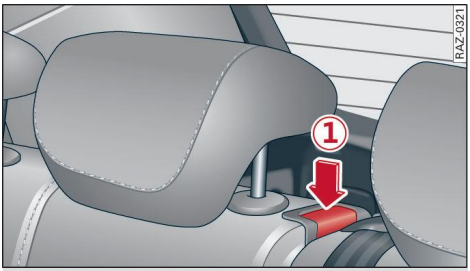



**Fig. 77** Centre backrest: Release button

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

▸ Press down the release button ①. The red marking will become visible. Fold down the backrest.
▸ Move the backrest back into its upright position until it engages and the red marking is no longer visible.

## Load guard

Applies to: vehicles with load guard

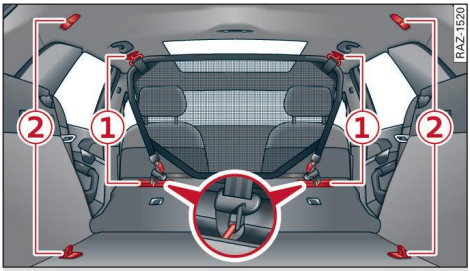



**Fig. 78** Backrest folded down: Load guard

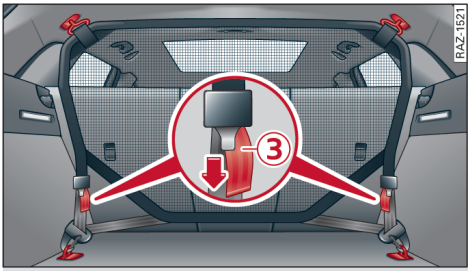



**Fig. 79** Luggage compartment: Load guard

The load guard prevents objects in the luggage compartment from being thrown forward into the passenger compartment. You can attach the load guard behind the front or rear seats. Use the retainers ① or ② to do so.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

### Installing the load guard

▸ To hook the load guard into the retainers ①, the backrests must be folded down ⇨ *page 94*.
▸ Before hooking the load guard into the retainers ②, remove the luggage compartment cover ⇨ *page 93*.
▸ Secure the load guard in the top retainers first, then in the bottom retainers. Make sure that the securing belts ③ are facing towards the rear when securing.
▸ Pull the securing belts ③ tight.
▸ Fit the luggage compartment cover again if you need it.

### Removing the load guard

▸ Remove the luggage compartment cover (if fitted) ⇨ *page 93*.
▸ To unhook the load guard, loosen the securing belts ③.
▸ Proceed in the reverse order to detach the load guard from the retainers.

**Note**

– The load guard can also be secured to the adjustable fastening rings* ⇨ *page 96*.
– You must unhook the load guard again before you return the backrest to the normal upright position.

## Fastening rings and stretch net

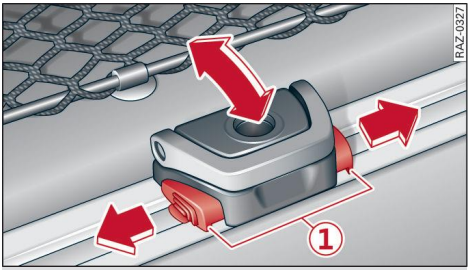



**Fig. 80** Luggage compartment: Adjustable fastening rings*

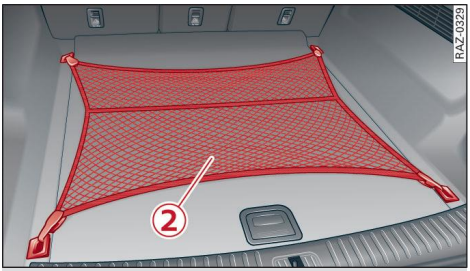



**Fig. 81** Luggage compartment: Stretch net* attached

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

### Fastening rings

There are fastening rings in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- ▸ Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

### Adjustable fastening rings

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable fastening rings

- ▸ To install the fastening ring, press the buttons ① on both sides, place the fastening ring on the rail and fasten it in place.
- ▸ To move the fastening ring, press the buttons ① on both sides and slide the ring to the desired position. It is important that the ring engages.
- ▸ To remove the fastening ring, press the buttons ① on both sides and take the fastening rings off the rail.

### Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

The stretch net ② can be used to secure light objects in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Fold up the clips on the fastening rings.
- ▸ Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

## Load retention set

Applies to: vehicles with load retention set

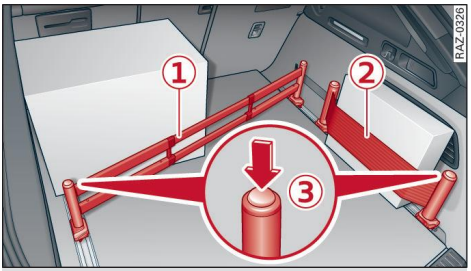



**Fig. 82** Luggage compartment: Load retention set

The telescopic bar ① and retaining strap ② prevent objects from sliding around in the luggage compartment.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

- ▸ Attach the adjustable fastening rings ⇨ *page 96*.
- ▸ Press the pushbutton ③ on the posts and place them over the fastening rings. Make sure that the posts engage properly in the fastening rings.
- ▸ Slide the fastening rings to the desired position. The rings should click into place in the rail.
- ▸ To tension the retaining strap ②, press the pushbutton ③.

**Note**

On some vehicles, you can stow the adjustable fastening rings and load retention set under the floor panel.

## Reversible floor covering

Applies to: vehicles with reversible floor covering

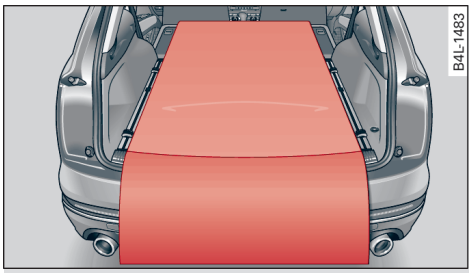



**Fig. 83** Luggage compartment: Reversible floor covering folded out lengthwise

The reversible floor covering protects the luggage compartment and the bumper against dirt and scratches. You can use either the dirt-resistant or the decorative side.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 92*.

- ▸ To protect the luggage compartment and the bumper when loading/unloading items, spread the reversible floor covering out lengthwise; this can be done with the backrest up or folded down ⇨ *Fig. 83*.
- ▸ The side trim can also be protected when the rear seats are folded down by spreading the reversible floor covering out to the sides.
- ▸ When you are finished loading/unloading, fold the end of the reversible floor covering back in and close the boot lid.
- ▸ Fold away the reversible floor covering only when it is dry.

## Floor panel

Applies to: vehicles with removable floor panel

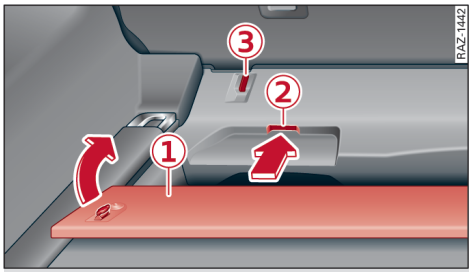



**Fig. 84** Luggage compartment: Installing floor panel

### Removing the floor panel

- ▸ Fold down the outer backrest ⇨ *page 94*.
- ▸ Reach into the gap from the side between the folded-down backrest and the floor panel and fold the front segment of the floor panel towards the rear ①.
- ▸ To remove the floor panel, pull the complete panel towards the rear of the vehicle.

### Installing the floor panel

- ▸ Fold the front segment of the floor panel ① towards the rear.
- ▸ Slide the floor panel forwards and insert the retaining tabs on the underside of the floor panel into the slots ② on both sides.
- ▸ Fold the front segment of the floor panel ① forwards and press the clips into the retainers ③.

# Roof carrier

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

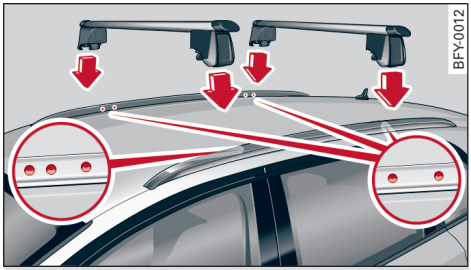



**Fig. 85** Roof railing: Attachment points

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

– The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
– Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 85*.
– You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇨ *page 378*. The ▶

roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

**WARNING**

– Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly. Audi recommends driving at a maximum speed of 130 km/h.
– Distribute the load evenly on the roof carrier system and make sure that it does not protrude over the width of the cross bars or exceed the maximum weight.
– All bolts and other connections of the roof carrier system must be checked before every journey and tightened if necessary. They should be checked again at regular intervals. Otherwise the roof carrier or additional elements can become loose and fall off – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– Any damage to the vehicle caused by the use of other types of roof carriers or incorrect installation will not be covered by the factory warranty. The roof carrier system must therefore be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.
– To avoid damage, remove the roof carrier system and any attached elements before driving into a car wash.
– Please take care that the boot lid and panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.

**For the sake of the environment**

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

## Attaching cross bars

Applies to: vehicles with factory-supplied cross bars

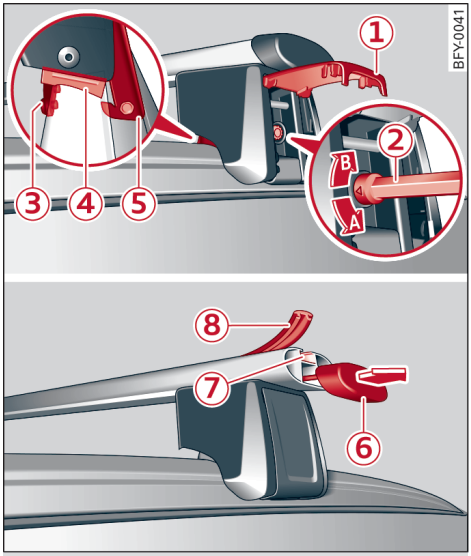



**Fig. 86** Roof railing: Attaching cross bar

The roof carrier set consists of a front and a rear cross bar, a cover profile and a torque wrench. There are two holes on the inside of each roof railing for the rear cross bar. There are three holes at the front of the left roof railing and only two holes at the front of the right roof railing ⇨ *page 97, Fig. 85*. This is intended to prevent you from interchanging the front and rear cross bars.

▸ Open the cap ① before fitting the cross bar.
▸ Using the torque wrench ②, loosen the bolt on both sides of the cross bar in the direction Ⓐ until you feel resistance. Please ensure that the arrow on the torque wrench is exactly aligned with the arrow on the bolt.
▸ Clean the rubber pads ④ and the roof railing around the attachment points. ▶

- ▸ Carefully position the cross bar on the roof railing in the area of the holes. Please ensure that the stickers are on the left side of the vehicle and that the printed arrow is pointing in the direction of travel.
- ▸ Insert the pins (3) in the holes. The claw fastener (5) must engage in the rim of the roof railing. Make sure that the rubber pads (4) are positioned flush on the roof railing.
- ▸ Use the torque wrench (2) to tighten the bolt in direction (B). Please ensure that the arrow on the torque wrench is exactly aligned with the arrow on the bolt. The tightening torque required is 6 Nm.
- ▸ Repeat these steps for the other attachment points of the cross bars.

**WARNING**

When the factory-supplied roof carrier is attached to the roof railings, a sensor system adapts the ESC to the change in the centre of gravity of the vehicle caused by any loading of the vehicle. This is not the case if other types of roof carriers are used – risk of accident!

## Attaching additional elements

Applies to: vehicles with factory-supplied cross bars

- ▸ To attach additional elements to the cross bars, pull the cap (6) ⇨ *page 98, Fig. 86* off the cross bar tube.
- ▸ Slide the elements into the T-section (7).
- ▸ Secure the elements according to the assembly instructions supplied with the elements.
- ▸ Insert the cap (6) back onto the cross bar tube.

## Inserting cover profile

Applies to: vehicles with factory-supplied cross bars

- ▸ After you have attached the additional elements, seal the open parts of the T-section (7) ⇨ *page 98, Fig. 86* using the cover profile (8). The cover profile must not be fitted under the caps (6).
- ▸ If you do not wish to use any additional elements, seal the entire T-section (7) with the cover profile (8).
- ▸ If necessary, shorten the cover profile (8) to the length of the open parts of the T-section. The caps (6) must be inserted back onto the cross bar tube.

# Heating and cooling

## Air conditioner

### Description

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

– A 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right individually
– A 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed at the front left and right and the temperature at the rear individually.
– A 4-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature, air distribution and blower speed settings for all the seats individually

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the sunroof (if fitted) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

#### Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

When the blower is switched on, the filter reduces the concentration of fine particulate matter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

**Note**

– Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating/cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
– Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
– If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

### Information on the air conditioner for the European Union

The air conditioner contains the fluorinated greenhouse gas known as R-1234yf.

Further information on the quantity of this greenhouse gas, the $CO_2$ equivalent and the global warming potential (GWP) is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.

### Controls




**Fig. 87** Centre console: Lower display and row of buttons

Adjustments can be made using the two displays, the row of buttons in the centre console and the control console in the rear cabin (depending on the equipment in your vehicle). For information on how to use the touch displays, refer to ⇨ *page 24, Touch displays*.

All of the air conditioner settings are available from the front seats; from the rear seats, only certain functions are available.

#### Lower display

The controls on the lower display are divided into two areas: ▶

In area (1), you can select AUTO to have the blowers and air distribution regulated automatically. Individual adjustments can be made here as well.

In area (2), you can switch individual air conditioner functions on/off.

### Row of buttons in centre console

Area (3) contains the MAX and REAR buttons to demist the windscreen and windows as quickly as possible. It also contains the auxiliary heating button, depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

### Upper display

The upper display can be used to have further functions displayed, to switch them on/off and to adjust settings.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C**, or:
- Press ••• on the lower display.

### Rear control console

Applies to: vehicles with rear control console

You can use the control console to operate various air conditioner functions for the rear cabin.

### Personalising

Each of the two buttons on either side of ••• in area (2) can be programmed individually to an air conditioning function from the upper display.

- Press and hold the symbol of the desired function on the upper display for at least three seconds. A menu with two slots will appear.
- Drag the symbol to the left slot to program the button to the left of •••.
- Drag the symbol to the right slot to program the button to the right of •••.

## Settings

The functions can be switched on/off by pressing the buttons or switches. When the function is switched on, a coloured bar in the button or the LED in the switch will light up. Some buttons have more than one function; the different functions can be activated by pressing the button repeatedly.

### AUTO **Automatic mode**

Automatic mode regulates the air output and distribution automatically in order to reach the set temperature as quickly as possible.

### REAR **Air conditioner for rear cabin**

Applies to: vehicles with control function for rear air conditioner

Press on REAR to enable control of the air conditioning in the rear cabin.

To exit this mode, press REAR or REAR MODE EXIT.

### SYNC **Synchronising**

When the sync function is switched on, the temperature, air distribution and blower settings on the driver's side will be applied to the rest of the vehicle. You can operate the sync function directly by making a pinch movement with two fingers on the lower display ⇨ *page 24*.

If the child lock is activated, the settings in the front will also be applied in the rear of the vehicle. To limit the use of the air conditioner in the rear of the vehicle, select: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **Operation in rear**.

### OFF **Switching off**

The air conditioner will be switched off, and the supply of air from outside the vehicle will be cut off. Pressing OFF in the front cabin will switch off the air conditioning for the front and the rear seats. Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, you can press OFF in the rear cabin to switch off the air conditioning for the rear seats. To switch the air conditioner on again, press any of the buttons on the corresponding display.

### A/C / A/C MAX / A/C ECO **Cooling mode**

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

If you activate the A/C function, cooling mode will be regulated automatically. ▶

If you activate A/C MAX, cooling mode will operate at maximum power and maximum airflow. This function should only be used for short periods of time to avoid unnecessary energy consumption. This function can cause the windows to steam up in unfavourable climatic conditions.

If you activate A/C ECO, the air conditioner will operate in efficiency mode.

**+ / – Temperature**

The temperature can be adjusted between 16 °C (+60 °F) and 28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LOW/LO** or **HIGH/HI** will appear on the display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output.

**Blower**

You can adjust the blower speed manually using ﹀ / ﹿ. You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press AUTO for automatic control of the blower speed.

**Air distribution**

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows.

You can direct the flow of air manually to selected vents using / ⇨ / . The air distribution can be regulated automatically by pressing AUTO or by deactivating all three arrows. Selecting will direct the air to the windscreen.

Applies to vehicles with 4-zone automatic air conditioner: The air distribution can be controlled on the rear control console by pressing repeatedly until the appropriate arrow appears.

**Defrosting**

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the vents below the windscreen. The windscreen heating may be switched on automatically at low outside temperatures, depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle. Depending on the outside temperature, you may be able to switch the windscreen heating on manually by pressing the MAX button. The LED in the button flashes when the function is switched on manually. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. A/C cooling mode is automatically switched on depending on the ambient temperature.

**REAR Rear window heating**

The rear window heating operates only when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the REAR button for at least three seconds. It will then remain on until the ignition is switched off.

**/ AUTO Air recirculation mode**

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ ⚠.

To switch air recirculation mode on/off manually, press .

Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, pressing AUTO will regulate the air circulation automatically if air pollution is detected.

**Seat heating**

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels. Press once to activate the highest level. Press repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat heating is switched off.

**Seat ventilation**

Applies to: vehicles with seat ventilation

The intensity of the seat ventilation can be adjusted in several levels. Press once to activate the highest level. Press repeatedly to lower the intensity by one level each time. When the button is not lit, the seat ventilation is switched off. ▶

### Child lock

Applies to: vehicles with rear control console

When is lit on the rear control console, the child lock is active and operation is disabled ⇨ *page 53*.

### Ioniser

Applies to: vehicles with ioniser

The ioniser can make the air inside the vehicle feel fresher. Both side vents must be open.

### Perfume

Applies to: vehicles with perfume function

The perfume function creates a pleasant aroma inside the vehicle by diffusing a fragrance via the vents on either side of the dashboard. The fragrance may not be diffused right away, particularly at very low or very high temperatures. The settings for the perfume feature can be adjusted ⇨ *page 104*.

### Residual heat

The residual heat in the engine coolant is used to heat the interior. To use this function, press the button for longer than two seconds with the ignition switched off. The function will be switched off after about 15 minutes.

**WARNING**

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of $CO_2$ can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation / automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: The vehicle has functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: An alternating magnetic field is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

**CAUTION**

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.

**For the sake of the environment**

Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with perfume function:
Use the perfume function in moderation; be considerate of the well-being of passengers and pets travelling with you. The combination with other fragrances or smells can cause passengers to feel unwell. Reduce the intensity of the perfume or switch the function off if anyone in the vehicle feels unwell. Use only fragrances approved for use by Audi.

## Adjusting the vents

You can open and close the vents using the thumbwheels. The lever in the centre of the vents can be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

## Further settings

Further settings can be adjusted.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > ⚙.

### Perfume

Applies to: vehicles with perfume function

You can select the perfume and check its fill level via **Perfume selection**.

You can adjust the strength of the fragrance by selecting **Perfume intensity**.

### Footwell temperature

Applies to: vehicles with footwell heating

You can adjust the temperature for the front seats.

### Automatic supplementary heater

Applies to: vehicles with supplementary heater

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater. The supplementary heater is regulated automatically when this function is switched on.

**WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with supplementary heater

When the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater is in operation, hot exhaust gases are emitted from the exhaust outlet under the car.

**For the sake of the environment**

Applies to: vehicles with supplementary heater

Switching off the automatic supplementary heater saves energy.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with supplementary heater

At low outside temperatures, water vapour may form in the engine compartment when the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater is in operation. This is no cause for concern.

## Air quality display

Applies to: vehicles with air quality display

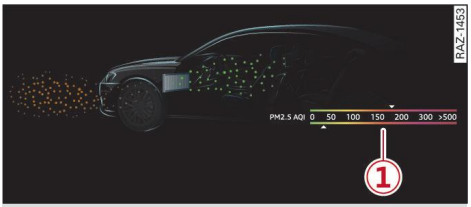



**Fig. 88** Upper display: Air quality display

You can have air quality information displayed.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > **Air quality**.

### Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

Applies to vehicles without particulate sensor

The effectiveness of the filter is displayed as a graphic. The graphic illustrates the number of polluting particles inside the vehicle compared to the surrounding area.

### Particulate display

Applies to: vehicles with particulate sensor

A sensor determines the particulate level (PM2.5) outside and inside the vehicle. The values measured are displayed as an air quality index (AQI) on a colour scale (1). A value in the green area indicates very high air quality.

The values shown by the system are approximations which may deviate from the real conditions. Under certain circumstances, the system may not be fully available or may not display any values for a limited period, or the measurements may be implausible.

– In extreme weather conditions
– When the vehicle is stationary
– In a car wash
– If someone is smoking or dust is stirred up inside the vehicle
– If fresh air is circulated to avoid the windows misting up ▶

**Note**

– For optimum air quality inside the vehicle, close all windows and doors and activate the A/C cooling mode, the AUTO function and the automatic recirculation.
– Applies to vehicles with particulate sensor: The air quality index only represents the particulate level (PM2.5). For technical reasons, there may be variations between the values measured in the vehicle and the values measured by other instrumentation systems.

# Steering wheel heating

## Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

▸ Press the button to switch the steering wheel heating on/off.

You can also operate the steering wheel heating using the controls on the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 36*.

# Auxiliary heating/ ventilation

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the settings for the auxiliary heating/ventilation can be controlled via:

– MMI
– Button in row of switches
– Remote control

### Conditions for operation

– There is enough fuel in the tank.
– The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

**WARNING**

– The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!
– Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
– Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the exhaust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

**Note**

– The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
– The auxiliary heating/ventilation system heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner control console.
– If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
– At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.

## Switching on/off in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 105*.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **CAR** > **A/C** > . Or:

Press and hold the button in the row of switches for at least three seconds.

### Immediate start

You can set the operating time and switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately by selecting . ▶

When a function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button.

### Timer programming

You can program up to two timers for the departure time; only one timer can be activated at any one time.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary heating will continue to run for approx. ten minutes after being switched off.

- ▸ Select a timer via >.
- ▸ Set the date and select **Next**.
- ▸ Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
- ▸ Use ⊂⊃ to activate the timer.

### Heat level

- ▸ To have the system defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows, select **Defrost**.
- ▸ If you want the system to defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows and also warm up the vehicle, select **Warm up**.

### Switching on/off using the button in the row of switches

- ▸ To switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately, press the button in the row of buttons.

When the LED in the button flashes, the auxiliary heating is being pre-heated. The vehicle interior is not yet being heated. When the LED in the button is lit continuously, the auxiliary heating/ventilation is active.

If the symbol in the button is lit, a timer is programmed.

**Note**

– To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 306*.
– The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been programmed. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

## Switching on/off using the remote control

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control




**Fig. 89** Remote control: Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 105*.

The range of the remote control is approx. 400 metres; however this can be greatly reduced by obstacles.

You can achieve the best range by holding the remote control with the aerial ① pointing vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

### Switching the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off

- ▸ To switch on, press and hold the button ②.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched on when the LED ③ lights up in green for approx. two seconds.

- ▸ To switch off, press and hold the OFF button ④.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched off when the LED lights up in red for approx. two seconds.

### LED in remote control

The LED ③ provides status information each time you press a button:

– If the LED flashes steadily in red or green for approx. four seconds, the signal was not received. Move closer to the vehicle. ▶

– If the LED lights up in orange for approx. two seconds, and then lights up or flashes in red or green, the remote control battery charge is low.
– If the LED flashes irregularly in green for approx. five seconds, the auxiliary heating is disabled. The fuel level or vehicle battery charge is too low or a system fault has occurred in the auxiliary heating.
– If the remote control LED flashes rapidly in orange for approx. six seconds after you press a button, the remote control battery needs to be replaced. The same applies if the LED does not light up at all.

### Changing the remote control battery

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control

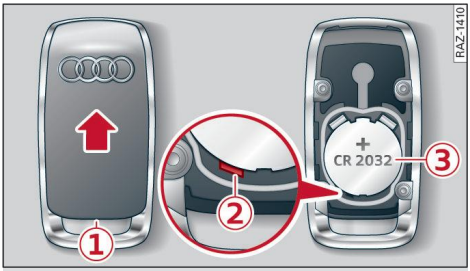



**Fig. 90** Remote control: Changing battery

▸ Insert a screwdriver or similar in the slot on the side ①.
▸ Prise the battery cover off upwards.
▸ Slide the battery cover slightly in the direction of the arrow and detach it.
▸ Insert a screwdriver or similar tool in the slot ②. Do not touch any other areas with the tool.
▸ Carefully pry out the battery.
▸ Insert a new battery of the same type ③.
▸ Put the battery cover back on and slide it in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

**WARNING**

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
– Keep the remote control out of the reach of children.
– Keep new and used batteries away from children.
– If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the remote control and keep it away from children.
– Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available**

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## Auxiliary air conditioner

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

The auxiliary air conditioner heats or cools the vehicle interior. The vehicle switches the auxiliary air conditioning on, depending on the temperature last selected on the air conditioner console. The function can be used when the drive system is switched off.

You can control the auxiliary air conditioner via the MMI or via the myAudi app.

Important: The high-voltage battery must be sufficiently charged. ▶

**Note**

– If the auxiliary air conditioning is active, the charging status of the high-voltage battery may decrease even when it is being charged.
– If the auxiliary air conditioning is on, it is not switched off automatically when the vehicle is started or stopped.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > .

### Immediate start

You can switch the auxiliary air conditioner on/off immediately via the button. When the function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button and the time remaining will be displayed.

After an immediate start, the auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for a maximum of 30 minutes. When the vehicle is being charged using a sufficiently high charging capacity, the auxiliary air conditioning can run for up to 60 minutes.

### Timer programming

You can set and activate up to two timers for the departure time.

▸ Select a timer.
▸ Set the date and select **Next**.
▸ Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
▸ Use to activate the timer.
▸ If desired, set the second timer.

The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary air conditioner will continue to run for approx. ten minutes after the departure time is reached.

### After the ignition is switched off

After the ignition is switched off, information on active timers is shown on the upper display. You can press the button to start the programmed air conditioner immediately or press > to open the auxiliary air conditioner menu.

**Note**

– To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇨ *page 306*.
– The auxiliary air conditioning can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been set.
– You can control the air conditioning in the vehicle interior when charging the high-voltage battery via the charging timers ⇨ *page 147*. The performance of the air conditioner depends on the power rating of the mains connection.

## Further settings

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > > .

### A/C when unlocking

When this function is activated, the air conditioner is switched on for five minutes after the vehicle is unlocked.

### Convenience aux. A/C

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner

You can select whether certain convenience functions, such as the seat heating (if fitted), are to be activated with the auxiliary air conditioner. You can select the corresponding zones.

### Glass heating

Applies to: vehicles with convenience auxiliary air conditioner and glass heating

You can select whether the rear window and mirrors are also to be heated when the auxiliary air conditioner is on.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary air conditioning

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle: ▶

**The auxiliary air conditioning is currently unavailable due to a fault.**

If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## Fluids in the air conditioner

### Refrigerant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet.

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel. |
|  | Type of refrigerant |
|  | Type of lubricant |
|  | Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops) |
|  | Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel. |
|  | Flammable refrigerant |
|  | Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled. |

### Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

**WARNING**

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

– Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
– The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
– The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

**Note**

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used when repairing the evaporator of the air conditioning system.

# Driving

## Starting the vehicle

### Description

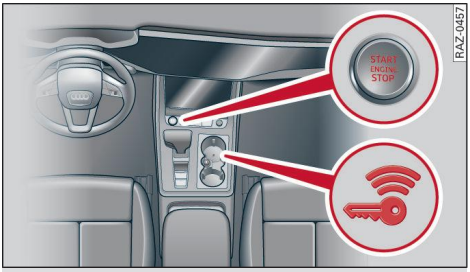



**Fig. 91** Centre console: Starting the engine

Important: The key must be in the vehicle. When using the Audi connect key*, the mobile device or activated Audi connect key card must be in the charging box ⇨ *page 245*.

#### Starting the engine

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine should start.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system should start. The combustion engine only starts when required. A glance at the power meter reveals whether or not the electric drive system is switched on ⇨ *page 20*.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal until the engine starts.

#### Switching off the engine

- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The electric drive system and the combustion engine will switch off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine in transmission position P and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

#### Switching off the engine in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency* while the vehicle is still moving.

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

#### Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on/off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

#### Automatic ignition off

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Requirements:

– Conventional power unit: The start/stop system has switched off the engine.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: You have driven the vehicle. The combustion engine is not running.
– You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
– The ignition must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

– Driver's door has been opened.
– Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
– Brake pedal is not pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off after 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle from the outside.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning! ▸

– Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary and transmission position P has been selected. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
– Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*.

**CAUTION**

– Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
– If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

**Note**

– Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.
– The full performance is not available until the engine is warm. Certain powertrain components may need to be warmed up depending on the type of engine. During this warming up phase, is shown.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Power unit start system: fault. Please contact workshop**

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Power unit start system: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?**

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle with the engine running. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

**Remote control key and smartphone not detected. Are key and smartphone still in vehicle?**

The vehicle key and smartphone were removed from the vehicle while the engine was running. If the vehicle key and smartphone are not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

**Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual**

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol ⇨ *page 110, Fig. 91*.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**Hold back of key against marked area or put smartphone in charging box**

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the symbol ⇨ *page 110, Fig. 91* or use the Audi connect key. ▶

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Driving the vehicle

## Driving away, stopping, parking

### Driving away from a standstill

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select transmission position D or R.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- ▸ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

### Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Select transmission position P.
- ▸ When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- ▸ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Always apply the parking brake before selecting transmission position P. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism when the vehicle is on a slope.

**WARNING**

- – Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
- – Never leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running – risk of accident!
- – If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always make sure that position P is selected when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- – Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
- – Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- – If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

**CAUTION**

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the gearbox to overheat – risk of damage!

## Hill hold assist

When you take your foot off the brake pedal when driving away on a slope, the braking force will be maintained for several seconds. During this period, the vehicle will not roll backwards when you set off.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

- ▸ To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

Use the hold assist ⇨ *page 126* if you want to hold the vehicle with the brakes for more than a few seconds. ▶

**WARNING**

– If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
– The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).

## Transmission positions and driving programs

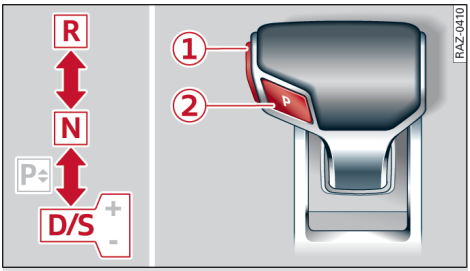



**Fig. 92** Centre console: Selector lever

The automatic gearbox changes gear according to the transmission position selected and the way the vehicle is currently being driven. When you drive at moderate speeds, the gearbox will change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy. The gearbox allows higher engine speeds for performance driving.

### Transmission positions

The transmission positions are shown next to the selector lever.

– **P** (Park): Parking lock
– **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

### Driving programs

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs, for example.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): Normal driving
– **E** (Efficiency*): Economical driving
– **S** (Sport): Performance driving

### Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

– Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
– Press and hold the release button (1) on the selector lever.
– To select the next adjacent transmission position, move the selector lever forwards or backwards to the first point of resistance.
– To skip a transmission position (e.g. to go from D to R), move the selector lever past the point of resistance in the desired direction.
– The selected transmission position will light up next to the selector lever.

### Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when N is selected.

### Transmission position P (parking lock)

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism for the gearbox.

– Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
– Press the P button (2) on the selector lever.
– Transmission position P will light up next to the selector lever.

If you switch off the engine when transmission position D or R is selected, transmission position P will be engaged automatically. If you switch off the engine in transmission position N, transmission position P will be selected automatically after approx. 30 minutes. ▶

The engine must be running if you wish to move from P to another transmission position.

If you cannot move out of transmission position P (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you may need to release the parking lock manually ⇨ *page 116*.

### Selecting a driving program

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*, the driving program S or E respectively will be activated. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off.

It may not be possible to select S in Audi drive select* mode **offroad**.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Not all plug-in hybrid modes are possible in driving program S. When they are operated, the driving program or the plug-in hybrid mode are automatically adjusted if they cannot be combined.

**WARNING**

- Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed next to the selector lever.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*.
- In all transmission positions except P and N the vehicle must always be held with the footbrake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep”.
- Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- Never select transmission position R when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.

**Note**

- You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.
- Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

## Manual gear selection




**Fig. 93** Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever




**Fig. 94** Steering wheel: Paddle levers*

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode.

### Gear selection with selector lever

You can switch to manual gear selection mode either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- ▸ To switch to manual gear selection mode, move the selector lever toward the passenger’s side ⇨ *Fig. 93*. M will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ To change up: Press the selector lever forwards ⊕.

- To change down: Pull the selector lever towards the rear ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, move the selector lever toward the driver's side.

### Gear selection with paddle levers

Applies to: vehicles with paddle levers

- To change up: Press the paddle lever ⊕ ⇨ *Fig. 94*.
- To change down: Press the paddle lever ⊖.
- To shift into the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, hold the paddle lever ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, hold the paddle lever ⊕ for longer or pull the selector lever towards the rear.

The gearbox will revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period. To switch to manual gear selection mode permanently, move the selector lever toward the passenger's side.

**Note**

– The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.
– The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.
– Applies to RS model: The letter M may be displayed in red in the instrument cluster in certain situations (this is an engine-dependent feature). In this case, a high-performance variant of the manual mode is activated. The gearbox does **not** automatically shift up into the next gear shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached. Remember to shift to the next gear in good time.

## Accelerator

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed.

### Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.

Applies to vehicles with boost function: In driving programs D and S, the electric motor may cut in briefly when the accelerator pedal is pressed heavily. The availability of this function depends, among other things, on the charge level of the high-voltage battery and the temperature of the drive components.

**WARNING**

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

## Launch control

Applies to: vehicles with launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

### Important

– The engine must be warm.
– The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
– The start/stop system* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 122*.
– The hold assist* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 126*.
– The ESC must be restricted ⇨ *page 136*.
– Driving program S must be selected ⇨ *page 114* and Audi drive select* must be set to **dynamic** mode ⇨ *page 131*.

### Using the launch control

– Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
– Keeping the brake pedal pressed, simultaneously press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot.
– When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake.
– Applies to RS model: Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following driver message may appear: **Launch control programme: activated**. When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake. On some equipment versions, the red flashing shift light ▶

display ⇨ *page 21* will indicate the best time to release the brake.

When you are finished with the launch control, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.

**WARNING**

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.
– Do not use the launch control when the vehicle is in towing mode as this could result in damage to the vehicle, trailer and load.

**Note**

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

## Manual release of parking lock

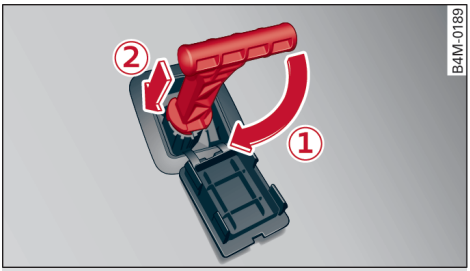



**Fig. 95** Footwell: Manual release of parking lock

The manual release mechanism is located under the floor mat on the driver's side. Please observe the important safety warnings on towing vehicles away ⇨ *page 362*.

### Releasing the parking lock manually

▸ Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 112*.
▸ Insert the screwdriver (provided in the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 353*) in one of the two slots and prise out the cover.
▸ Insert the box spanner (from the vehicle toolkit) into the opening.
▸ Turn the box spanner clockwise as far as the stop ① and then push it downwards ② until it engages.
▸ Leave the box spanner inserted.

### Reactivation of parking lock

▸ Take hold of the box spanner with both hands and pull it out carefully upwards.
▸ Replace the cover.

**WARNING**

– The parking lock must only be released manually in order to recover/manoeuvre the vehicle.
– The parking lock must only be released manually when the vehicle is secured so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 112*. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
– Only use the manual release mechanism when the vehicle is on level ground or a slight gradient.
– You must not drive the vehicle if the parking brake has been released manually – risk of accident!

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Gearbox: fault. Safely stop vehicle**

Do not drive on. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 112*. Seek professional assistance.

**Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle** ▶

Do not drive on. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 112*. Seek professional assistance.

**Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style**

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

**Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving. See owner's manual**

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving (functions limited). Please contact workshop**

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving**

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until power unit off**

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. If you switch off the engine, you will not be able to engage any other transmission positions after the engine is started again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Selector lever: fault. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop**

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Selector lever: fault. Transmission mode can only be changed using both paddle levers.**

A selector lever malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving but the selector lever is out of operation. The transmission positions can only be selected by simultaneously pulling both paddle levers briefly while the vehicle is stationary. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**P button: fault. Auto P when power unit switched off. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred on the P button on the selector lever. Transmission position P will be selected automatically when you switch off the engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake**

– The parking lock has been released manually ⇨ *page 116*. Or:
– It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*.

**Move selector lever into automatic position**

The gearbox is no longer in tiptronic mode. Please switch back to automatic mode using the selector lever ⇨ *page 114*.

# Engine

## Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased. ▶

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

## Conventional and mild hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive

Vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Vehicles with mild hybrid drive are equipped with additional battery technology.

### Coasting

Applies to: vehicles with coasting function

Coasting can be used to save fuel. When the vehicle is coasting, the combustion engine is disengaged and the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. Coasting mode may be activated between 55 km/h and 160 km/h when you take your foot off the accelerator.

Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, you may be able to switch coasting mode on/off under **Intelligent coasting** in the **Efficiency assist** menu ⇨ *page 190*.

The combustion engine may be switched off automatically on vehicles with mild hybrid drive when coasting is activated.

**WARNING**

When coasting is activated, there is no longer an engine braking effect and the vehicle does not slow down as quickly as usual or may even pick up speed if you are driving down a slope – risk of accident!

**Note**

– You can cancel coasting by applying the accelerator or brakes. Slight corrective brake applications are also possible without cancelling coasting.
– Coasting is not possible in all driving programs.
– Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, coasting may only be possible when the cruise control system is active.

## Plug-in hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

On plug-in hybrid vehicles, you can choose between electric and combustion engine drive modes or a combination of both ⇨ *page 119*, ⇨ *page 115*

### Coasting

Just like conventional drive vehicles, the combustion engine can be disengaged on plug-in hybrid vehicles to save fuel. In this mode, which is similar to coasting, the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. However, the electric part of the drive system remains engaged and is able to recuperate energy if the conditions permit. Coasting mode may be activated when you take your foot off the accelerator.

**Note**

Coasting is not possible in all driving programs.

## Recuperation

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

A recuperation feature allows the vehicle to recover energy. A large amount of the kinetic energy is thereby converted into electrical energy and stored in the battery of the hybrid drive system. The recuperation process causes the vehicle to decelerate in addition to the engine braking effect. The recuperation process may be activated in transmission position D when you press the brake pedal or take your foot off the accelerator.

Because the recuperation feature is used to slow the vehicle down when you press the brake pedal, the brakes are only used in addition as necessary. This means that, by adopting a moderate driving style, it is possible to brake the vehicle almost down to a standstill using the recuperation function. ▶

### Recuperation settings

Under **Intelligent coasting** in the **Efficiency assist** menu, you can set whether the recuperation is controlled predictively*, i.e. in anticipation of the route ahead ⇨ *page 190*.

**WARNING**

In certain situations, the recuperation function can brake the vehicle in anticipation of the route or traffic ahead; however the recuperation braking effect is limited. Always be ready to apply the brakes – risk of accident!

**Note**

When the ESC is restricted or switched off, the automatic recuperation is unavailable and there will be no braking effect.

## Plug-in hybrid mode

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

### Switching to and from plug-in hybrid mode

The EV button is located in the function bar on the lower display.

▸ Press EV to switch between electric driving and hybrid driving.

### Hybrid driving

If the EV button is not lit, the vehicle is in hybrid mode. The vehicle can be powered by the combustion engine or the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met ⇨ *page 119, Conditions for electric driving*.

Depending on the engine, you can choose between different hybrid modes:

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **e-tron mode**.

**Auto Hybrid** – The electric motor and combustion engine work together efficiently. This mode is particularly suitable for long journeys.

**Battery Hold** – The vehicle is powered predominantly by the combustion engine in order to preserve the charge level of the high-voltage battery as much as possible.

**Battery Charge** – The vehicle is powered by the combustion engine in order to charge the high-voltage battery. This results in a higher fuel consumption. The high-voltage battery is not charged when driving in urban areas. This mode cannot be selected if the high-voltage battery is charged sufficiently.

When is displayed, the navigation system's route guidance is active and the vehicle uses the route data to determine which type of drive to use. The vehicle is able to achieve the most efficient driving mode by calculating which sections of the route are best driven on electric power. Electric power is given priority on sections which it anticipates will be covered at low speed, such as towns or congested traffic areas.

### Electric driving

The EV button lights up in green when the vehicle is in EV mode. The vehicle can be powered by the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met ⇨ *page 119, Conditions for electric driving*.

You can specify whether the journey should always begin in electric mode:

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **e-tron mode** > **Always start in EV mode (electric driving)**.

### Conditions for electric driving

– The charge level and temperature of the high-voltage battery must be sufficient.
– Driving program S must not be selected.
– The road speed must be below 140 km/h.
– The accelerator pedal must not be pressed too heavily.

### Indicator lamps

The following indicator lamps may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle: ▸

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | EV mode is switched on and active. You are driving purely on electric power. |
| | EV mode is switched on but is temporarily in stand-by mode. Electric driving will be activated as soon as the conditions have been met. |
| | EV mode is not available because the conditions for electric driving have not been met. |
| | The combustion engine is running. |
| | Hybrid mode **Battery Hold** is active. |
| | Hybrid mode **Auto Hybrid** is active. |
| | Hybrid mode **Auto Hybrid** is active. Navigation data are being taken into consideration. |
| | Hybrid mode **Battery Charge** is active. |

**Note**

– It is still possible for the charge level of the high-voltage battery to drop in **Battery Charge** and **Battery Hold** mode, depending on how the vehicle is driven.
– Navigation data are not taken into consideration if the map material is out of date.
– EV mode may be deactivated if you select a navigation destination outside the electric range.

## Energy flow display

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

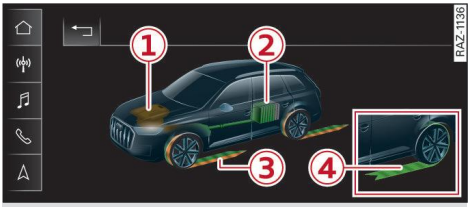



**Fig. 96** MMI: Energy flow display

You can display the current energy distribution in the vehicle.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Vehicle information**.
▸ If necessary, scroll to the **Energy flow display**.

① Combustion engine
  – Orange: Engine on
  – Grey: Engine off
② High-voltage battery
  – Green: Charge level
  – Grey: Drive system not switched on
③ Movement arrow
  – Green: Electric driving
  – Orange: Driving with combustion engine
  – Green/orange: Driving with boost function
④ Movement arrow
  – Green: Recuperation

**Note**

The energy flow can also be displayed in the vehicle functions tab in the instrument cluster.

## Range monitor

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

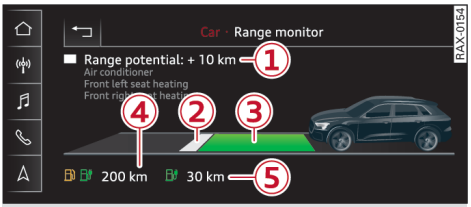



**Fig. 97** Range monitor

You can display the estimated vehicle range.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Vehicle information**.
▸ If necessary, scroll to the **Range monitor** display.

① Range potential (value)
② Range potential (diagram)
③ Total range (diagram)
④ Total range (value)
⑤ Electrical range (value)

**Range potential:** This value indicates the distance which you can cover in addition by ▶

switching off certain convenience functions. Convenience functions with high energy consumption are listed in the display.

**Note**

– The range can also be displayed in the on-board computer in the instrument cluster.
– The range shown depends on the previous consumption values and a forecast. These may be affected e.g. if convenience functions are switched on.

## Statistics

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

### Statistics on the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with e-tron statistics on MMI

You can display statistics on the distance driven under electric power and using fuel. The values are supplied by the on-board computer's short-term and long-term memories.

▸ On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Car details**.
▸ If necessary, scroll to the **e-tron short term statistics** or **e-tron long term statistics** display.

### Statistics in the myAudi app[1)]

If the e-tron statistics on the MMI are not available for your vehicle, you can see the percentage driven with electric power in the myAudi app in some countries.

**Note**

The values shown on the MMI are intended as a guide and may differ from the actual values.

## Vehicle sound

Electric motors are much quieter than combustion engines. To make the vehicle more audible when driving under electric power, an artificial vehicle sound is produced on models for some countries. The vehicle sound is faded out at higher speeds.

**WARNING**

Other road users may not hear an electric vehicle when it is moving. This applies in particular in areas with traffic calming measures, when manoeuvring or reversing – risk of accident!

## Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the power unit, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

– Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*.
– Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating*).
– Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Avoid driving at high speeds.
– Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
– Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
– Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
– Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
– Do not use winter tyres in summer.
– Make use of the start/stop system.
– Make use of the engine braking effect.
– Avoid short trips.

**Note**

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

## Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with a smart energy management system to control the distribution ▶

[1)] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available.

of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

**Note**

– If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
– If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle**

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The brake servo and the power steering system could stop working. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨*page 112*. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

**Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The power output is limited. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**Vehicle sound: fault. Vehicle inaudible to pedestrians. Please contact workshop**

A vehicle sound fault has occurred. Drive extremely carefully, as other road users may not be able to hear the vehicle under electric power. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

### Further indicator lamps

If lights up, the driving performance is restricted as the combustion engine may not be available, for example. Please note any further messages in the instrument cluster.

# Start/stop system

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce $CO_2$ emissions. In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights.

If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

### Switching the start/stop system off and on

The A OFF button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The button lights up when the function is switched off.

▸ Press A OFF to switch the function on/off.

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

### Basic conditions

– The driver's door and bonnet must be closed.
– Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
– The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
– The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.

**CAUTION**

Always switch off the start/stop system ⇨*page 122* before driving through water. ▶

**Note**

– In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still **coasting**. A direct transition from coasting mode* to a stop phase is thus possible ⇨ *page 118*, ⇨ *page 118*.
– If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

## Switching off/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

▸ Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp Ⓐ will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
▸ The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold assist* is switched on, the engine will only restart when you press the accelerator pedal.

**Note**

– Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
– If you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
– If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase and then get back in, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
– You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

## Automatic engine start/stop

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switched off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:

– Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
– Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
– Engine temperature
– Driver assist systems
– Driving style

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Drive system: please start vehicle manually**

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The START ENGINE STOP button must be used to start the engine.

**Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Brakes

## General information

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

**Noises**

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient ▶

conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

### Braking effect

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice and snow
– Salted roads
– Dirty brake pads

### Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Use transmission position N to do so, to prevent the recuperation function from being used for braking.

### Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Because recuperation is also used for braking, new brake pads take 800 km to bed in.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

### Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent braking performance.

When new, ceramic brake discs can take much longer to bed in than normal brake discs. In addition, noises may occur, particularly at low speeds, due to the properties of the material. Ceramic brake discs absorb more moisture in extremely wet weather. This can cause a temporary reduction in braking performance in comparison to dry brakes. You can compensate for this by applying greater pressure to the brake.

### Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

– you apply the accelerator, or
– the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.

**⚠ WARNING**

– When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
– All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
– Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).
– If a braking manoeuvre is initiated by the vehicle, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal – risk of injury!

▶

**CAUTION**

– Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
– Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇨ *page 128*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.

**Note**

– If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
– Please also observe the information on brake fluid ⇨ *page 329*.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle**

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If and also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety information ⇨ ⚠.

**Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop**

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

**Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the brake servo. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Brake servo will be deactivated shortly. See owner's manual**

The brake servo remains active for a short time after the ignition is switched off. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇨ *page 112*.

**Further indicator lamps**

– The brakes have been used intensively while driving downhill for an extended period. Follow the instructions in the driver message to use the engine braking effect and take the load off the brakes.

**WARNING**

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

# Electromechanical parking brake

## Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

The Ⓟ button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the parking brake is engaged. You can release the parking brake manually or automatically when you drive off.

### Applying and releasing the parking brake

- Applying: Pull the Ⓟ button.
- When Ⓟ appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Releasing: With the ignition switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button.

If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should select transmission ▶

position P or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

### Releasing the parking brake automatically when driving off

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the driver's seat belt must be buckled and the indicator lamp Ⓟ must be on.

▸ Press the accelerator to drive off.

**WARNING**

– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
– If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
– If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨*page 112*. Seek professional assistance.

**Note**

– The vehicle may roll backwards on steep inclines when moving off, especially when towing a trailer or caravan. To prevent this from happening, pull the Ⓟ button and hold it while you press the accelerator. Once enough power has been built up at the wheels to ensure that the vehicle will not roll back, release the button to drive off.
– The parking brake will be applied automatically if you leave your vehicle while transmission position D or R is selected.
– Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern.
– The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.

## Hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

If the vehicle is regularly stationary, for example, at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-start traffic, this system can help you to move off easily.

### Switching the hold assist on/off

The Ⓐ button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the system is switched on.

▸ To switch the hold assist on/off, press the Ⓐ button.

### Driving off with the hold assist

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running or capable of starting automatically and transmission position D must be selected.

▸ With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.
▸ When Ⓟ appears, the hold assist is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
▸ Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, the hold assist may transfer the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake.

The hold assist is switched off when the vehicle is being manoeuvred. Press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle. The system is switched on again as soon as you drive faster than approx. 10 km/h in transmission position D.

**WARNING**

– The hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold assist function.
– Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to ▸

prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.

**Note**

When the hold assist function is switched on, the system stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

## Emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- Pull and hold the Ⓟ button while the vehicle is moving.
- A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- If you press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.

**WARNING**

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual**

**Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake**

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the ignition off and on again.

If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*. Seek professional assistance.

**Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the car on a gradient. Select transmission position P.

**Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep**

The braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

**Parking brake is applied**

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.

**Please take over.**

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

# Special driving situations

## Performance driving

Applies to: RS model

The vehicle, in particular the power unit, gearbox, tyres, brakes and suspension, is subjected to heavy loads during performance driving (such as on a racing circuit). When used in this way, additional service and inspection work is required and it may be necessary to replace components earlier than usual.

Your vehicle has been developed and approved for use on public roads. It is therefore only possible to drive the vehicle on a racing circuit for a limited mileage.

Please contact a qualified workshop. Have the workshop check the suitability of your vehicle for use on a racing circuit and make sure you are familiar with the current regulations. The following are among the special considerations that apply: ▶

– The boiling point of the brake fluid must be within the specified tolerance range.
– New brake pads take time to bed in ⇨ *page 123*.
– The tyres, brake system, brake pads and brake discs must be in good condition.

### On the racing circuit

– Do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed until the engine is warm. The engine oil should be brought up to a temperature of at least 70 °C.
– Check the tyre pressures when the tyres are warm and adjust them if necessary.

Use the following functions as required:

– Audi drive select* **dynamic** mode ⇨ *page 131*
– Launch control ⇨ *page 115*
– Restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 137*

### After driving on a racing circuit

– Before you park the vehicle, you should allow the engine and brakes to cool down to the normal operating temperature by adopting a more moderate driving style.
– Check the brake pads using a suitable method. Heavily inclined wear can only be discerned by means of a visual check. This is not fully possible from the outside.
– Check the tyre pressures when the tyres are cold and adjust them if necessary.

**WARNING**

– A dynamic driving style will result in increased wear, especially on the tyres and components of the drive system and suspension.
– Driving a vehicle at its limits requires that particular care be taken with regard to the condition and handling of the vehicle, the driving situation and the dangers involved – risk of accident!
– Always ensure that the vehicle is in perfect condition.

**Note**

Wear caused by heavy loads does not constitute a defect under the terms of the warranty.

## Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
– When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
– When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S ⇨ *page 114*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
– Try not to stay on the brakes; apply them periodically.
– If necessary, use the hold assist ⇨ *page 126*.
– If necessary, use the downhill assist ⇨ *page 130*.

### Tilt angle display

Applies to: vehicles with tilt angle display

You can display the transverse and longitudinal tilt angle relative to the horizon.

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Vehicle information**.
– If necessary, scroll to the **Tilt angle display**.

The transverse tilt angle of your vehicle should never exceed the yellow zone on the scale. There is a risk that the vehicle may overturn when, or even before, the arrows enter the red zone.

The steering angle, altitude, compass direction and coordinates of the vehicle's current position are displayed in addition to the current tilt angle. You are also provided with information on the maximum transverse and longitudinal tilt angles ▶

achieved during the current trip. The values are reset when you switch off the ignition.

Please note that the accuracy of the display depends on the driving situation.

**WARNING**

– Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
– Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
– Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.
– Applies to vehicles with tilt angle display: Do not rely exclusively on the tilt angle display when assessing the driving situation.

## Driving off-road

Your car is not an off-road vehicle. Please therefore note the following if you drive the vehicle on unsurfaced tracks or off-road:

– Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
– Take the ground clearance of your vehicle into account and do not drive the bottom of your vehicle directly over raised obstacles. Instead, drive the wheels on one side of the car up and across the top of the obstacle to prevent damage to the underbody.
– When driving over sand or soft mud, maintain a moderate speed. The vehicle will be less likely to get stuck if you avoid stopping.

Use the following functions as required:

– Audi drive select* **offroad** mode ⇨ *page 131*
– Downhill assist function* ⇨ *page 130*
– Tilt angle display* ⇨ *page 128*
– Raise the vehicle ⇨ *page 132*
– Restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 137*

**WARNING**

When driving off-road you are advised to avoid tracks or terrain which are not suited to the design of the car and your own driving skills and experience.

**For the sake of the environment**

Take care not to damage the environment and respect natural surroundings. Keep to the marked tracks and routes.

**Note**

Wash your vehicle after driving it off-road. Dirt and stones falling from the car can be a hazard to other road users.

## Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

– Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
– Deactivate the start/stop system.
– Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by oncoming traffic.
– Do not stop the car in water.
– Do not drive in reverse.
– Do not switch off the engine.

**WARNING**

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

**CAUTION**

Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

**Note**

Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water.

## Downhill assist function

Applies to: vehicles with downhill assist function

The button is located in the function bar on the lower display. It lights up when the system is switched on.

The downhill assist function can help you to drive down steep gradients by applying the brakes automatically on all four wheels to maintain a constant speed. You can use the accelerator and brake pedals to control the speed. How the regulating function operates depends on the gradient and road speed.

- To switch on: Press .
- To switch off: Press again.

### When is the regulating function active?

The regulating function is active shortly after you drive off and up to a speed of approx. 30 km/h on gradients of approx. 6 – 60 %. When these conditions are met, the regulating function is active and the indicator lamp lights up.

### Standby mode

If one of the conditions for the regulating function has not been met, the system is in standby mode. The indicator lamp may light up. The system can revert to active regulation as soon as the conditions have been met again.

**WARNING**

– Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill assist function.
– Always adjust the speed to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
– The system cannot keep your vehicle's speed constant under all circumstances when you are driving down a hill, e.g. if the road is slippery – risk of accident!

**Note**

If you set Audi drive select* to **offroad** mode, the downhill assist function will be switched on.

# Handling dynamics

## Audi drive select

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Audi drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the set-up of individual systems to suit your personal driving style.

### Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The drive select button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▸ Press the left or right arrow button repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the MMI. Or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, briefly take your foot off the accelerator after changing the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

**offroad** – assists the driver on unsurfaced tracks. The air suspension* raises the vehicle to the second highest level. The function of the ESC is restricted and the downhill assist function* is activated. The mode is cancelled again when you switch off the ignition.

**allroad** – provides a balanced vehicle set-up. The air suspension* raises the vehicle to the second highest level.

**efficiency** – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps you to adopt an economical driving style. The start stop system is activated and driving program E is selected.

**comfort** – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

**auto** – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride.

**dynamic** – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving. Driving program S is selected.

**individual** – allows the vehicle set-up to be adjusted to your personal preferences. Press to configure the mode ⇨ *page 131, Individual settings*.

**Note**

– When the ignition is switched on, certain systems (such as the drive system) are reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to use its settings in full.
– Audi recommends **auto** mode for everyday use.

### Selecting an RS mode

Applies to: RS model

On RS models, two RS modes which can be configured separately are available instead of **individual** mode. The mode is cancelled again when you switch off the ignition.

#### Selecting the mode

- ▸ Press the RS button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch between the RS modes and the most recently selected Audi drive select mode. Or:
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.

#### Configuring a mode

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.
- ▸ Press ⇨ *page 131, Individual settings* to configure the corresponding RS mode.

### Individual settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

#### Drive system

The response of the drive system to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or ▸

balanced, and gear changes take place at higher or lower engine speeds.

Depending on the selected setting, the sports differential* ⇨ *page 135* varies the distribution of power on the rear axle from dynamic to moderate.

On RS models, the sport differential is configured using a separate menu.

### Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. A lighter steering response is suitable on long motorway trips or for relaxed driving on winding roads, for example.

### Suspension

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface.

Depending on the setting, the air suspension* adjusts the vehicle's ground clearance and the active roll stabilisation* cancels out vehicle body movements at different levels of intensity.

### Engine sound

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected setting and ranges from subdued to dynamic. If you use the automatic settings, the engine sound depends on which driving program is selected.

### quattro with sport differential

Applies to: RS model

Depending on the selected setting, the sports differential* ⇨ *page 135* varies the distribution of power on the rear axle from dynamic to moderate.

### ESC

Applies to: RS model

ESC sport mode can be activated. Please also refer to the important notes on driving with restricted ESC ⇨ *page 137*.

# Suspension

## Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

## Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

The air suspension is an electronically controlled shock absorber and vehicle level regulating system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The system compensates for differences in vehicle load. In addition, the ride height is adjusted in stages depending on the vehicle's speed in order to reduce air resistance at high speeds and to increase ground clearance at low speeds. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

### Displaying the ride height

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.

The current ride height is indicated by solid segments on the display. The more segments that are filled out, the higher the ground clearance. The current segment flashes while the suspension is being raised or lowered. The target level is highlighted in colour.

### Raising the vehicle

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Audi drive select**.
▸ Press **Raise** to set the highest ride height and thereby the maximum ground clearance.
▸ Press **Lower** to lower the vehicle again.

The Audi drive select* mode may be changed when the vehicle is raised.

The vehicle is lowered at speeds of approx. 30 km/h and above. This function may only be used for short periods of time when increased ▶

ground clearance is required and is not suitable for permanent use while driving.

**CAUTION**

– Please also observe the information on ground clearance ⇨ *page 133*.
– When transporting the vehicle by lorry, train, boat, plane, etc., it must only be strapped down on the tyres. It is not permissible to secure the vehicle by its axles, struts or towline anchorages, since the pressure in the air suspension can change during transport. Under certain circumstances there is a risk that the vehicle may not be properly secured.

## Active roll stabilisation

Applies to: vehicles with active roll stabilisation

The active roll stabilisation system combines an electromagnetically controlled damping system with the air suspension. It is designed to counteract body roll in corners and high speed evasive manoeuvres. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

## Ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

– Changes in temperature
– Changes in vehicle loading
– Changing the Audi drive select* mode
– Raising/lowering the vehicle via the air suspension*
– Lowering the rear of the vehicle*

**WARNING**

Take special care that no-one can be injured if the ride height is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.

**CAUTION**

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Air suspension: fault. You can continue driving slowly at max. XXX**

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. Do not drive faster than the speed given in the driver message.

**Air suspension: fault. You can continue driving slowly. Speed limited to max. XXX**

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. The maximum speed has been limited.

**Air suspension: fault. Safely stop vehicle. Steering and ground clearance restricted**

A malfunction has occurred. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*. Avoid making steering movements, as the ground clearance of the vehicle may be so low that a steering input could damage the wheels and wheel housing.

**Active roll stabilisation: fault. Restricted stability. See owner's manual**

There is currently a high load on the vehicle electrical system or the active roll stabilisation. The active roll stabilisation functions have therefore been switched off temporarily. The vehicle's stability is restricted. You can continue driving carefully.

If the indicator lamp does not disappear, even after you have waited a long time and switched the ignition off and on again, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Otherwise the vehicle could be damaged if there are any undulations in the road. ▶

**Suspension: fault. You can continue driving**

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

**Air suspension: vehicle too low. Ground clearance limited**

The vehicle's ground clearance is very low. Wait until the air suspension has restored the ground clearance to a normal level. If the indicator lamp does not disappear, even after a long waiting period, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Air suspension: fault. Please contact workshop**

A malfunction has occurred. The vehicle's stability may be restricted and the ground clearance may be low. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

# Steering

## Description

The electromechanical steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

### Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

### All-wheel steering

Applies to: vehicles with all-wheel steering

The ability to steer the rear wheels in addition to the front wheels enhances the dynamic performance and vehicle handling. At low speeds, the turning circle is made smaller by steering the rear wheels in the opposite direction to the front wheels. At high speeds, the vehicle handling and stability are improved by steering the rear wheels in the same direction as the front wheels.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

**Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle. Note distance to side**

The rear wheel steering may have failed. The vehicle may require more road clearance at the side and the turning circle may be much larger. Reduce your speed without delay and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible with adequate side clearance. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

**Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 112*. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

**Steering: fault. You can continue driving**

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart the engine, and in this case you must not continue driving.

**Steering: fault. Adapt driving style. Turning circle larger**

The rear wheel steering may have failed. The vehicle will have a larger turning circle and the handling in corners will be the same as on vehicles without rear wheel steering. Drive carefully to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. ▶

**Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!

**Note**

– If a fault occurs, the steering wheel may be off centre when driving in a straight line.
– You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp or lights up only briefly.

# Four-wheel drive (quattro)

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇨ *page 136*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
– The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. Therefore, do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!
– On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to "aquaplane" and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed, as with a front-wheel drive car. Therefore, do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

## Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

The sport differential varies the distribution of power between the driven wheels on the rear axle according to the prevailing conditions. A high level of agility and acceleration is therefore achieved during cornering, while the vehicle responds well to steering input. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Sport differential: fault. Please contact workshop**

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Sport differential: overheating. Please adapt driving style**

The vehicle has been driven hard, causing the differential temperature to rise significantly. You should avoid performance driving until the temperature drops to the normal level and the indicator lamp goes out.

**WARNING**

If a fault or malfunction occurs in the sport differential, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop. Professional maintenance and the correct oil are important for your safety.

# Electronic stabilisation control

## Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer, wheelspin on the driven wheels or any danger of the vehicle tipping over.

The system stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The stabilisation functions integrated in the ESC system include the following:

### Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes.

You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

### Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available, increasing the vehicle's stability.

### Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

### Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

### Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.
- Increasing the load the vehicle is carrying – particularly its roof load – raises the vehicle's centre of gravity and therefore also increases the risk of the vehicle tipping over. Adapt your driving style to suit the conditions and avoid performing any dynamic manoeuvres – risk of accident!

**Note**

- The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- The systems can make noises when they intervene.

## Operation

The OFF button ( OFF on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever. The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on.

### Restricting the ESC

In certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the stabilisation functions of the ESC so that the wheels can spin – for example, when rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it, or when driving with snow chains fitted. The ESC can also be restricted if reduced stabilisation input is desired during performance driving.

– To restrict the ESC, press the OFF button briefly. The indicator lamp will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

One of the following ESC modes will be selected, depending on which Audi drive select mode is chosen:

– **sport** – This mode is designed for driving on even surfaces. It is used in all Audi drive select modes with the exception of **offroad**.
– **offroad** – This mode is suitable for driving on unsurfaced tracks and is designed for use on uneven terrain or loose surfaces. If you set Audi drive select to **offroad** mode, the **offroad** mode for the ESC will be selected automatically.

### Switching off the ESC

For more active control of the vehicle with no input from the ESC stabilisation functions, the ESC system can be switched off completely.

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps and ESC OFF will light up.
– To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.

**WARNING**

– If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads. If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load and is being used for performance driving, it may not be possible to prevent it from tipping over – risk of accident!
– Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.

**Note**

– If you set Audi drive select* to **offroad** mode, the ESC will be restricted.
– Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.
– If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual**

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

### Further indicator lamps

If flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening. Noises may be heard while this is happening. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently, the ESC system has been switched ▶

off for system reasons. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

# High-voltage system

## General information

### Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

All work on the high-voltage system must be carried out solely by qualified high-voltage technicians and authorised workshops according to Audi's regulations.

The high-voltage system includes a high-voltage battery, power electronics, electric motor, a high-voltage air conditioner compressor, a high-voltage heater, charging system, charging socket and orange high-voltage cables.

The high-voltage battery is located under the luggage compartment floor and does not require any maintenance to be performed by you.

**WARNING**

The voltage of the high-voltage system is lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. A warning sticker is attached to the different parts of the high-voltage system. This is intended to warn you of the high voltage.

- Even when the ignition is switched off, potentially lethal voltages still exist in the high-voltage system.
- Do not touch any contacts on the vehicle charging socket, e.g. when cleaning the charging unit. If you wish to clean the charging unit, only use a dry cloth and no other tools such as a screwdriver or brush.
- Never perform work on the orange-coloured high-voltage cables or the other high-voltage components yourself. Work on the high-voltage system may only be performed by authorised workshops that have been approved for this type of work.
- The orange-coloured high-voltage cables must never be damaged, modified, removed or disconnected from the high-voltage system.
- Never use cutting, forming or sharp-edged tools or heat sources in the vicinity of high-voltage components and high-voltage cables.
- Any gases escaping from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Do not expose yourself to any fluids escaping from the high-voltage battery; avoid all contact with these fluids.
- The electrolyte fluid in the high-voltage battery is corrosive. If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the service team that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.

**CAUTION**

The high-voltage system can be damaged if the underside of your vehicle makes heavy contact with the ground. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle checked.

### What to do in hazardous situations

#### General rules

Hazardous situations may occur if a driver message is shown or if you can smell smoke or gas. In the event of a hazardous situation, you should behave as follows:

- Do not inhale the fumes.
- Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area and remain in an area which is safe from all traffic (e.g. behind a roadside crash barrier).
- Inform the emergency services.
- Do not attempt to extinguish any fires yourself.
- Do not try to move the vehicle.

#### Driver messages

**HV battery: risk of fire! Safely stop vehicle immediately and evacuate. Emergency services!** ▶

If this driver message appears, there is a risk of fire due to a severe fault in the high-voltage battery. You should behave as follows:

– Stop the vehicle without delay, paying attention to the traffic situation.
– You should use a safe place in the open, keeping a safe distance from buildings, other vehicles, overhanging roofs, carports or other structures.
– Switch the hazard warning lights on, if possible.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Switch off the ignition.
– To assist the emergency services, leave the vehicle key in a visible location in the vehicle, e.g. in the centre console.
– Get out of the vehicle immediately and make sure that no other persons or animals remain in the vehicle.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area and remain in an area which is safe from all traffic (e.g. behind a roadside crash barrier).
– Continue to follow the general rules ⇨*page 139*.

The acoustic warning inside the vehicle can only be deactivated by a qualified workshop.

### Protective functions in the event of a fault

In the event of a serious fault in the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may trigger additional protective functions (e.g. the hazard warning lights may be switched on or the horn may sound after the ignition is switched off).

**WARNING**

If there is a risk of fire in high-voltage battery cells, toxic gases may escape or high-voltage components may be live. Risk of severe injuries, burns or a fatal electric shock.

– Get out of the vehicle and evacuate all persons and animals.
– Ensure that you and all other occupants have left the danger area.

## Proper use of the high-voltage battery

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

A plug-in hybrid vehicle is equipped with an electric and a conventional drive system. The electric drive system is powered by a high-voltage battery (also known as a hybrid battery or traction battery) and supports the combustion engine according to the situation. The way in which it is used has an effect on the service life of the high-voltage battery. Please therefore observe the following information on careful use of the high-voltage battery:

▸ Ensure a good balance between use of the electric drive system and use of the conventional drive system. If only the electric drive system is used to power the vehicle for extended periods, the high-voltage battery will wear more quickly.
▸ Avoid discharging the high-voltage battery quickly as a result of repeated abrupt acceleration when the vehicle is being powered solely by the electric motor or when using the boost function.
▸ Do not use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This could cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

# Charging the high-voltage battery

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The following options are available for charging the high-voltage battery:

| Charging method | Charging cable |
|---|---|
| Charging at a domestic or industrial AC power outlet | Audi e-tron compact charging system ⇨ *page 150* |
| Charging at a public charging station (with AC power) | Factory-supplied charging cable ⇨ *page 149* or charging cable at charging station |

When using alternating current to charge the high-voltage battery, Audi recommends connecting to an industrial power outlet, charging station or wallbox. The efficiency will be higher and the charging time much lower compared with charging at a domestic power outlet.

You should only charge the vehicle at a domestic power outlet with the Audi e-tron compact charging system if an industrial AC power outlet or a public AC charging station is not available.

The driving range of a high-voltage battery diminishes over time as the battery ages. The ageing process can be accelerated and the available range reduced even more if the high-voltage battery is frequently charged to its maximum capacity.

### Charging time

The amount of time required to charge the vehicle can vary depending on the following:

– Type of power outlet used (domestic or industrial).
– The country's grid voltage, current rating and number of phases available.
– Domestic connection.
– Charging capacity setting on Audi charging system operating unit.
– Fluctuations in mains supply.
– Ambient temperature surrounding the vehicle.
– Temperature of high-voltage battery and Audi charging system operating unit.
– Air conditioner settings for interior temperature.
– Electrical capacity of charging connector.
– Ignition switched on/off.

## Important safety notes

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**WARNING**

Improper battery charging, (e.g. failure to observe generally applicable safety precautions, the use of unsuitable or damaged outlets and charging cables, or charging at unsuitable electrical installations) can result in short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions, fire and serious burns – risk of fatal injury!

– Do not charge the vehicle at a power outlet or electrical installation if it shows signs of damage or improper installation.
– Never use charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
– Never make modifications or repairs to electrical components and in particular to the high-voltage system.
– Never charge the vehicle in potentially explosive atmospheres. The components of the charging equipment can produce sparks and ignite flammable or explosive vapours. To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, please ensure that the operating unit of the Audi e-tron charging system is at least 50 cm above the ground during charging.
– Never use an extension cable, a cable reel, a multiple outlet strip or adapter (e.g. a travel adapter or time switch) with the charging equipment. ▶

– Do not touch the contacts on the vehicle charging socket and charging equipment.
– Do not insert any objects in the vehicle charging socket or charging equipment.
– Always protect power outlets and plug connections against water, humidity and other fluids.
– Use only the factory-supplied charging equipment provided with your vehicle or the charging cable at the charging station.

**WARNING**

Applies to: Audi charging systems

Improperly installed power sockets can result in electric shock or fire when the high-voltage battery is charged via the vehicle charging socket.

– The home power outlet for Audi charging systems must be installed and commissioned by a qualified electrician. The electrician is responsible for full compliance with existing regulations and standards.
– Make sure that the domestic power outlet is earthed and protected from water.
– If Audi charging systems do not operate as described in the operating instructions, they must not be used. Please contact a qualified workshop.
– Audi charging systems are designed for use in private and semi-public areas (e.g. on private land or company car parks). In some countries (e.g. Italy and New Zealand), mode 2 charging (which includes charging with the Audi charging system) is prohibited in public areas. In some countries and regions (e.g. Abu Dhabi, Israel, Singapore and India), it is prohibited to charge vehicles at domestic power outlets. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.
– Audi charging systems should be used in properly earthed power grids. Operation in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) is only possible using Audi charging systems with deactivated protective earth conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 151*.
– The electrical installation can be loaded to maximum capacity when the high-voltage battery is charged via the domestic/industrial power outlet. Audi recommends that the electrical installations used for charging be checked regularly by an electrician.
– Whenever possible, disconnect Audi charging systems from the charging infrastructure during thunderstorms.
– Never immerse Audi charging systems or the connectors in water.
– Only clean Audi charging systems when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the power grid and from the vehicle. Use a dry cloth for cleaning.
– Audi charging systems are only suitable for use with Audi vehicles. These charging systems are not approved for use with vehicles manufactured by other companies.

**CAUTION**

– The high-voltage battery can be damaged if it is allowed to discharge completely. Charge the high-voltage battery within 2 months when the remaining electrical range shows 0 km. Charge the high-voltage battery immediately if the remaining electrical range shows 0 km and the vehicle will not be used for an indeterminate period. Even if the vehicle is not used, the charge level of the high-voltage battery will drop naturally over time. Before parking the vehicle, charge the high-voltage battery to around 80 % (penultimate charging bar) to avoid deep discharge when the vehicle is out of service for a long time (over one year).
– Please ensure that you always carry suitable charging equipment for the country in which you are travelling. For more information, contact a qualified workshop.

**Note**

– Only charging stations which meet the following standards (minimum requirement) and the standards applicable in your country can be used to charge the vehicle:
  – GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
  – IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
  – SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)

▶

– If the charging station has a domestic or industrial connection, you can use your Audi charging system.

**Note**

Applies to: Audi charging systems

– For uninterrupted charging, Audi recommends only charging the vehicle at power outlets which are connected via a separately fused power circuit.
– Audi recommends keeping Audi charging systems in the clip wall mount* during operation. If this is not possible, always place Audi charging systems on a firm, stable surface when charging ⇨ ⚠.
– To prevent overheating during use, do not expose Audi charging systems to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the operating unit overheats, the charging cycle is automatically interrupted until the temperature drops again to within the normal range.

## Charging infrastructure labelling[1)]

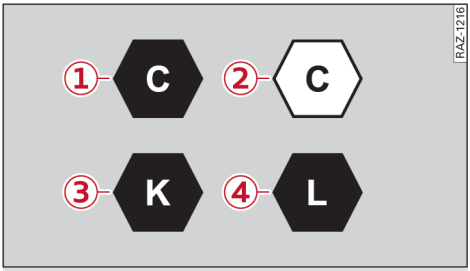



**Fig. 98** Labels used on charging infrastructure

| | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ① | Vehicle: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector |
| ② | Charging station: label for alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector |
| ③ | Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 50 V to 500 V |
| ④ | Vehicle: label for direct current (DC) and CCS connector with a voltage of 200 V to 920 V |

Please observe the safety notes and warnings ⇨ *page 141*.

### Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure

The DIN EN 17186 labels indicate whether the local power supply is suitable for the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. They can be found on the vehicle's charging socket, on the components of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, mains socket) and on the charging cable. The labels are designed to help you find the appropriate charging station for your vehicle. They refer to standardised charging systems that conform to the DIN EN 62196 standard.

**WARNING**

Charging at electrical installations that have not been checked can cause damage and serious injury.
– If there is no label or if you are unfamiliar with the charging infrastructure, contact an electrician before using the infrastructure.

1) May vary in different countries.

## Charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive




**Fig. 99** Rear left side of vehicle: Opening high-voltage charging flap

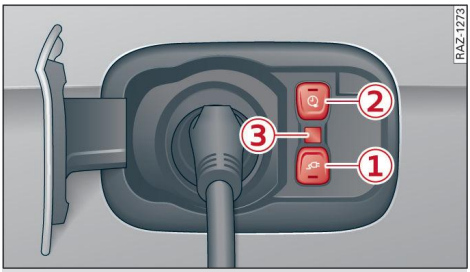



**Fig. 100** Charging unit: Charging socket and buttons/ charging indicator

### Connecting the charging cable

The sequence of the following steps may vary when you charge your vehicle at a charging station. Follow the instructions and operating tips provided by the charging station manufacturer.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected, the parking brake must be applied and vehicle status must be not ready.

– Set the desired charging mode so that the vehicle is charged immediately or at a later time ⇨*page 146*.
– Take the charging cable out of the vehicle if necessary ⇨*page 148, Transport*.
– Remove the protective caps on the charging cable if necessary.
– Connect the charging cable to the power supply first or take it out of the charging station.
– Unwind the charging cable completely.
– Unlock the vehicle to release the charging flap.
– To open the charging flap, press the right side of the flap ⇨*Fig. 99*.
– Take the cap off the vehicle charging socket and place it on the retainer on the charging flap.
– Plug the charging connector into the vehicle charging socket and push it in for 5 seconds to secure it in the charging socket.
– Check whether the charging mode ③ shown is the one you wish to use for the charging cycle ⇨*page 145*. You can switch between charging modes during the charging cycle if necessary. To do so, press the corresponding button ① or ② ⇨*page 147*.

### While the vehicle is being charged

The charging indicator on the charging unit ③ pulsates in green during the charging cycle. pulsates in the instrument cluster. For the meaning of the colours on the charging indicator please refer to ⇨*page 145*.

The charging connector is locked during charging and cannot be removed.

The current charge level and range of the high-voltage battery is displayed in the instrument cluster when you open the driver's door with the vehicle's ignition switched off. The charging time remaining is also shown if the vehicle is currently being charged.

### Ending the charging cycle

You can interrupt and terminate the charging cycle at any time.

– Unlock the vehicle and press the button ①/② on which the LED is lit.
– Unplug the charging connector. If the charging connector is not unplugged within 30 seconds, it will be locked again automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed if appropriate.
– Refit the cap on the charging socket.
– Close the charging flap.
– Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply if necessary or secure it to the charging station again.
– Put available protective caps back onto the charging cable.
– If you are transporting the charging cable in the vehicle, stow it safely ⇨*page 148*. ▶

If it is not possible to disconnect the charging connector from the vehicle, you will need to release it manually ⇨ *page 146*.

If it is not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please authenticate yourself at the charging station again and attempt to unplug the connector. If it is still not possible to unplug the charging connector from the charging station, please contact the operator of the charging station.

**WARNING**

– Do not unplug the charging cable from the charging socket or the vehicle charging socket while the vehicle is being charged. Terminate the charging cycle before you unplug the charging cable from the socket – risk of damage to the connector contacts due to spark generation.
– If the charging unit is damaged, you must not use it to charge the vehicle – risk of injury!
– If the charging unit is damaged, or if the charging flap cannot be closed or is missing, drive immediately to a workshop and have this rectified – risk of injury!

**CAUTION**

The charging flap and the electronic components behind it can be damaged if you drive with the charging unit open. Before you start a journey after charging, please check that the charging flap is properly closed.

**Note**

– If you hear a noise when plugging in the charging connector, this may be because the parking brake is being applied.
– Use a small brush and a solvent-free de-icer spray to remove ice and snow from the charging unit.
– There may be some interference in the vehicle's onboard systems, e.g. radio reception, while the vehicle is being charged.

## Charging indicator

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

An LED on the charging unit (3) ⇨ *page 144, Fig. 100* indicates the charging status. The LED indicator logic is described in the following table.

| LED on charging unit | | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| off | | Vehicle charging system in standby mode. A timer may be active but charging has not yet started. |
| | | Charging cycle has been interrupted. |
| green | pulsating | The high-voltage battery is being charged. |
| | flashing | Timer is active but charging has not yet started. |
| | lit | High-voltage battery charge cycle finished. |
| yellow | lit | When using the Audi charging system, please ensure that the mains plug is plugged into the power outlet ⇨ *page 150*. Charging cable connected but no mains power detected. Have the power supply or mains checked. Check the LED indicators on the operating unit when using the Audi charging system ⇨ *table on page 151*. Seek professional assistance if necessary. |
| | flashing | The vehicle is not secured against rolling away. Check that transmission position P is selected and that the parking brake is applied. If the LED continues to flash, seek professional assistance. |

| LED on charging unit | | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| red | lit | Charging connector may not be properly locked in vehicle charging socket. Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly. Unplug the charging connector, plug it into the charging socket again and press it gently upwards for 5 seconds. Alternatively, try using a different charging station. If the LED remains lit, there is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system or power source. Seek professional assistance if necessary. |
| | | The outside temperature is too low or too high. |

**Note**

The operating status of the LED is also shown in the instrument cluster display.

## Manual release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

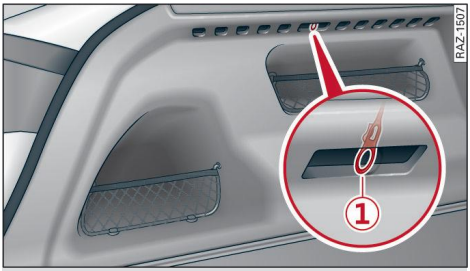



**Fig. 101** Luggage compartment, left side: Manual release for charging connector

### Releasing the charging flap manually

- If you cannot open the charging flap, seek professional assistance.
- Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

### Releasing the charging connector manually

If you cannot remove the charging connector from the vehicle charging socket, a fault may have occurred. The vehicle charging connector will have to be released manually.

Important: Transmission position P must be selected and the vehicle must be unlocked.

- Finish the charging cycle ⇨ *page 144*.
- Open the boot lid.
- Carefully pull the yellow ring (1) ⇨ *Fig. 101* ⇨ (!).
- Unplug the charging connector.
- Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the manual release procedure, there is still a malfunction. At temperatures below freezing, the charging connector may be frozen. In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

**CAUTION**

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

If the indicator lamp or lights up, the range is low or very low. Charge the high-voltage battery.

# Charging settings

## Selecting a charging mode

You can select whether your vehicle should be charged immediately or with a time delay.

### Immediate charging mode

The charging cycle begins immediately when the charging connector is plugged in and when the charging station is activated (if applicable).

- Press the button (1) on the charging unit ⇨ *page 144, Fig. 100*, or:
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **Charging** > . ▶

When immediate charging mode is active, a coloured bar will appear in the button on the MMI and the LED in the button on the charging unit will light up.

### Timer charging mode

The charging cycle begins with a time delay based on a previously configured and activated timer ⇨ *page 147*.

- Press the button (2) on the charging unit ⇨ *page 144, Fig. 100*, or:
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **Charging** > .

When timer charging mode is active, **Timer charging mode** will appear on the MMI and the LED in the button on the charging unit will light up.

## Timers

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

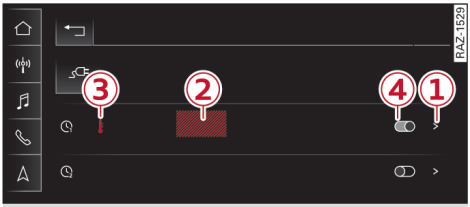



**Fig. 102** Upper display: Timers

### Available settings

You can specify the time by which you wish your vehicle to be fully charged. Once a timer is switched on, it is triggered either regularly or once at the times set.

With a timer, you can adjust the following settings:

- Departure time (time by which your vehicle should be fully charged).
- Air conditioning at departure time.
- Preferred charging time (e.g. to use a cost-effective electricity tariff).

### Configuring and switching on the timer

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Charging & efficiency** > **Charging**.
- To configure a timer, select > (1) in the line for the desired timer.
- If the timer is to be triggered only once, select **Individual timer**. If the timer is to be triggered regularly, select **Repeat timer**.
- If required, enter a preferred charging time, for instance if you wish to use a cost-effective electricity tariff.
- To activate the air conditioning additionally, select . When the air conditioning is activated, (3) is shown in the timer selection.
- Select **Next** and follow the instructions in the menu.
- To switch on the timer, select (4).
- If you want timers which are switched on to be active for the next charging cycle, timer charging mode must be active ⇨ *page 147*.

If the departure time set on the timer (2) is too soon, the battery may not be sufficiently charged.

**Note**

On some charging stations it is not possible to use the charging timer.

# Charging equipment

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The following charging cables may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power
– Audi e-tron compact charging system

### Notes on using the charging equipment

Please note the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment:

– Protect the equipment so that it cannot be run over, dropped, pulled, bent or crushed.
– Do not immerse the charging equipment in water; keep it protected against snow or ice.
– When you unplug the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply, pull only the connectors, not the cable.

– Put the protective caps back on after using the charging cable.
– Only use the Audi charging system in a power grid with a mains frequency of 50 Hz/60 Hz.
– Use and store the Audi charging system only when the relative humidity is between 5 % and 95 % (non-condensing).
– The Audi charging system is protected against dust and water jets (IP55).

The warnings attached to the charging equipment may vary in different countries:

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | Use and store the Audi charging system at temperatures between -30 °C and +50 °C. |
|  | Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 4000 m above mean sea level. |
|  | Use and store the Audi charging system at altitudes of max. 5000 m above mean sea level. |
|  | The Audi charging system is equipped with an unswitched protective earth conductor. |
|  | The Audi charging system is equipped with a switched protective earth conductor. |
|  | Do not use the Audi charging system in unearthed power networks (e.g. IT networks). Only use the Audi charging system in earthed power networks. |
|  | Surfaces can become very hot if exposed to direct sunlight. |
|  | |
|  | |
|  | Improper use may result in electric shocks. |
|  | |
|  | |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | Please refer to the associated operating instructions and read the safety instructions. |
|  | |
|  | Please follow the waste disposal rules. |
|  | Do not use extension cables or cable reels. |
|  | Do not use travel adapters. |
|  | Do not use multiple outlet power sockets. |
|  | Do not use charging cables if the connector leads or electronics have been damaged. |

### Purpose of use for Audi charging systems

Charging device for charging mode 2 for charging Audi vehicles with a high-voltage battery which comply with the generally applicable standards and regulations for electric vehicles.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

## Transport

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

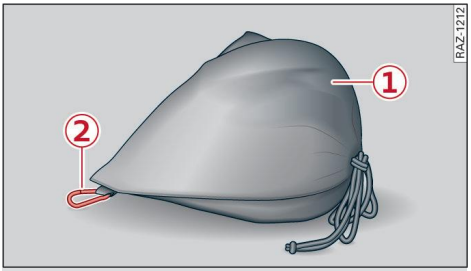



**Fig. 103** Transport bag

Always stow the charging equipment safely in the luggage compartment prior to transport.

▸ Open the boot lid ⇨ *page 49*.
▸ Put the charging equipment in the transport bag ① and tie a knot in the bag to close it.

▸ Attach the hook (2) to one of the fastening rings in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 96*.
▸ Close the boot lid.

**WARNING**

Unsecured, improperly secured or incorrectly positioned vehicle charging equipment can become dislodged and injure the vehicle occupants during braking or turning manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

– Stow the charging equipment only in the transport bag and secure the bag in the luggage compartment.
– The charging equipment must NOT be transported without the transport bag or in the passenger compartment.

**CAUTION**

Always lift or carry the Audi charging system as a unit and never by the cables.

## Charging cable (mode 3) for public charging stations with AC power

Applies to: vehicles with charging cable for public charging stations with AC power

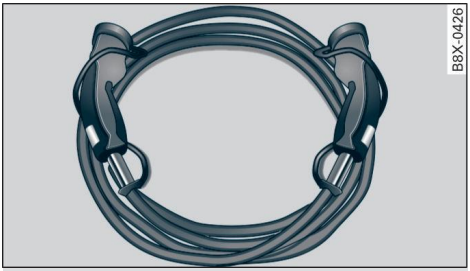



**Fig. 104** Charging cable for public charging stations with AC power (example)

You can use this charging cable to charge your vehicle at public charging stations with AC power if they do not have an integrated charging cable. Please note the procedure for charging ⇨ *page 144*.

**CAUTION**

Do not use the charging cable as an extension cable for the Audi charging system. This will cause a charging cycle malfunction.

**Note**

– Charging with the charging cable may not be possible at charging stations which have a higher current rating than the cable rating. Please note the information and notices at the charging station.
– Many of the electrical installations in Norway are designed based on different technical rules than those commonly used in Europe. You must only use a charging cable with a cross-section of 5 x 6 mm². Please note the specifications on the charging cable. Before embarking on a trip to Norway, check whether the charging cable on your vehicle is suitable for these types of charging station.

## Audi e-tron compact charging system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi e-tron compact charging system

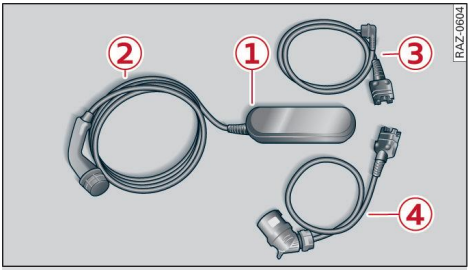



**Fig. 105** Audi e-tron compact charging system: Components (example)

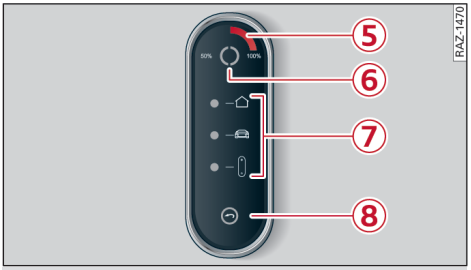



**Fig. 106** Audi e-tron compact charging system: Operating unit

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 141, Important safety notes*.

You can use the Audi e-tron compact charging system to charge the vehicle at a domestic or industrial power outlet. The following accessories may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

① Operating unit

② Vehicle cable with vehicle charging connector

③ Mains cable with mains plug for domestic power outlets

④ Mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets

The vehicle cable is permanently connected to the operating unit. The mains cable is plugged into the top end of the operating unit and can be changed ⇨*page 156*.

### Overview of operating unit

| | |
|---|---|
| ⑤[a] | Safety warning: Only set the charging capacity to 100 % if the charging infrastructure has been checked by a qualified electrician; otherwise the charging infrastructure may be damaged e.g. by scorching ⇨*page 141, Important safety notes*. |
| ⑥ | ON/OFF button, charging capacity and LED |
| ⑦ | Status LED: |
| | Power grid/domestic connection |
| | Vehicle |
| | Control console |
| ⑧ | Reset |

a) Depending on country

### Charging

Please note the correct procedure for charging ⇨*page 144*.

Important: The correct mains plug must be fitted ⇨*page 156*.

– Connect the mains plug to the power outlet.
– Plug the vehicle charging connector into the vehicle charging socket.
– The charging cycle starts automatically.
– After the charging cycle, unlock the vehicle and unplug the vehicle charging connector from the vehicle charging socket.

### Limiting the charging capacity

You can limit the charging capacity and therefore also the charging current used. You can specify whether you want to charge at reduced (50 %) or full (100 %) capacity. Full charging capacity (100 %) achieves the shortest charging time; it should only be selected if the electrical installation has been checked by a qualified electrician. Reduced charging capacity (50 %) can reduce the load on the electrical installation and prevent it from overheating or becoming overloaded, for ▶

example if several items of electrical equipment are connected to the same circuit.

Depending on the charging system, note the following characteristics with regard to limiting the charging capacity:

– When using a domestic power outlet, the most recent setting is always stored and is called up again for the next charging cycle.
– Applies to charging system with 3.6 kW, 7.2 kW or 11 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the most recent setting is always called up.
– Applies to charging system with 9.6 kW: When using an industrial power outlet, the charging capacity limitation is reset to 50 % when there is no longer any mains supply to the charging system (e.g. due to the mains plug being unplugged).

Before each charging cycle, you should check whether the last charging capacity setting is desired for the current charging cycle.

– To adjust the charging capacity limitation, press the button (6) ⇨ *Fig. 106* for at least two seconds.

The status LEDs ⌂, 🚗 and ▯ will flash once in green when the charging capacity limitation has been successfully adjusted. The setting (50 % or 100 %) will be displayed on the left or right of the button.

### Activating/deactivating protective earth (PE) conductor monitoring

Please read the safety information on PE conductor monitoring ⇨ ⚠.

If the PE conductor monitoring has interrupted the charging cycle and the LED on the operating unit (6) ⇨ *Fig. 106* and the two status LEDs ⌂ and 🚗 are lit in red, you should deactivate PE conductor monitoring as follows:

– To deactivate PE conductor monitoring, press buttons (6) and (8) ⇨ *Fig. 106* simultaneously for six seconds. The status LED ▯ will flash in white while you are doing so. Release the buttons again for one second.
– Press both buttons and again for six seconds. Deactivation will take place automatically after a brief interval. The LED on the operating unit (6) will pulsate in green and the two status LEDs ⌂ and 🚗 will light up in yellow.
– To activate PE conductor monitoring, press and hold buttons and until the status LEDs 🚗 and ▯ go out. The reset will occur automatically after a brief interval.

### Status and fault indicators on the operating unit

| LEDs | Meaning | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Lit in green<br>⌂ Off<br>🚗 Off<br>▯ Off<br>Off | The charging unit is ready to charge but not yet charging. | Start the charging cycle ⇨ *page 144*. |
| Pulsating in green<br>⌂ Off<br>🚗 Off<br>▯ Off<br>Off | The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring activated. | |

| LEDs | Meaning | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Pulsating in green<br>Lit in yellow<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off | The mains plug has overheated. Possible cause: the multi-phase socket has been connected to a single-phase system. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power. | The fault will be cleared automatically once the mains plug has cooled down. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the connector has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Pulsating in green<br>Lit in yellow<br>Lit in yellow<br>Off<br>Off | The vehicle is being charged with PE conductor monitoring deactivated. | For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: No remedial measures required, the vehicle will be charged in the correct way for the power grid.<br>For earthed networks only: Activate PE conductor monitoring ⇨ *page 151*. |
| Pulsating in green<br>Off<br>Off<br>Lit in yellow<br>Off | The operating unit has overheated. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power. | The fault will be cleared automatically once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. The vehicle will be charged with reduced power until the operating unit has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in yellow<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off | The charger is connected to the vehicle. The high-voltage battery is charged and the charging cycle was completed successfully, or the vehicle does not need to be charged. | |
| Lit in red<br>Lit in yellow<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off | The mains plug has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the mains plug has cooled down. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Lit in yellow<br>Off | The operating unit has overheated. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the operating unit has cooled down. Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |

| LEDs | Meaning | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Lit in red<br>Flashing in yellow<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off | The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is restricted. Possible cause: low voltage or poor mains frequency. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the power grid/domestic connection has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Flashing in yellow<br>Off<br>Off | A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | The fault will be cleared automatically and the charging cycle will be resumed once the vehicle charging system has stabilised. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Flashing in yellow<br>Off | The mains or vehicle cable is defective. Possible cause: mismatch in coding resistance of mains or vehicle cable. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Have the mains or vehicle cable replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off | A fault has occurred in the vehicle charging system. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Stop the vehicle charging cycle and remove the vehicle cable from the vehicle charging socket. Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. Restart the charging cycle ⇨ *page 144*. If the fault persists, you should have the vehicle checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red<br>Flashing in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off | There has been a voltage surge in the charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Lit in red<br>Off | A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Flashing in red<br>Off | A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit (self-test failed). The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |

| LEDs | Meaning | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Off<br>Off | The charging infrastructure of the power grid/domestic connection is inadequate: the protective earth conductor is disconnected or not installed. The PE conductor monitoring system has interrupted the charging cycle. | For unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks) only: If necessary, charge the vehicle with protective earth conductor monitoring deactivated ⇨ *page 151*.<br>For earthed networks only: Have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. Do not use the power grid/domestic connection until the fault has been rectified. |
| Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Off | The indicator lamp on the reset button is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Flashing in red | The operating unit has detected a fault in the electric current. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Press the ⊖ button for at least 2 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Lit in red<br>Flashing in red<br>Flashing in red<br>Flashing in red<br>Off | The charging infrastructure is wired incorrectly. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Disconnect the charging unit from the mains. Have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red<br>Lit in red | A technical fault has occurred in the operating unit. Possible cause: Software error or load relay circuit error. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Disconnect the charging unit from the mains and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the fault persists, you should have the operating unit checked by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership and have the power grid/domestic connection checked by an electrician. |
| Flashing in red<br>Off<br>Off<br>Lit in red<br>Off | A serious fault has occurred in the operating unit. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |

| LEDs | Meaning | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Off | The indicator lamp in the on/off button of the operating unit is defective. The charging cycle has been interrupted. | Have the operating unit replaced by a qualified workshop or Audi dealership. |
| Lit in red | | |
| Lit in red | | |
| Lit in red | | |
| Lit in red | | |

### Technical data

The power output of the charging system may differ from the charging capacity of your vehicle. Specific factors such as fluctuations in the mains voltage may also reduce the power output of the charging system ⇨ *page 141*.

The technical data of the charging system depend on the type designation. You can find this information on the label on the back of the operating unit.

| | Type designation | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **MCB36E1 A MCB36J1 A** | **MCB72E1 A MCB72E2 A MCB72S1 A MCB72T1 C** | **MCB96J1 A MCB96U1 B** | **MCB11E3 A** |
| Max. power output | 3.6 kW | 7.2 kW | 9.6 kW | 11 kW |
| Rated current | 16 A 1-phase | 16 A 2-phase: MCB72E2 A | 40 A 1-phase | 16 A 3-phase |
| | | 32 A 1-phase: MCB72E1 A, MCB72S1 A, MCB72T1 C | | |
| Rated voltage | 100 V – 240 V | 100 V – 240 V / 400 V: MCB72E2 A | 120 V / 240 V: MCB96U1 B | 100 V – 240 V / 400 V |
| | | 100 V – 240 V: MCB72E1 A, MCB72S1 A, MCB72T1 C | 200 V: MCB96J1 A | |
| Mains frequency | 50 Hz/60 Hz | 50 Hz/60 Hz | 50 Hz/60 Hz | 50 Hz/60 Hz |
| Overvoltage category (IEC 60664) | II | II | II | II |
| Rated short-time withstand current (EN 61439-1) | <10 kA eff. | <10 kA eff. | <10 kA eff. | <10 kA eff. |
| Mains plug types | CEE 230 V/16 A, 1p; CEE 230 V/32 A, 1p; CEE 400 V/16 A, 3p; CEE 400 V/32 A, 3p; NEMA 6-30; NEMA 6-50; NEMA 14-30; NEMA 14-50; NEMA 5-15; YP-41; TYPE B; TYPE E/F; TYPE G; TYPE I; TYPE J; TYPE K; TYPE L; TYPE M; TYPE N | | | |
| Integrated residual current device | AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA | AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA | AC: 20 mA; DC: 56 mA | AC: 30 mA; DC: 6 mA |

| | Type designation | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **MCB36E1 A MCB36J1 A** | **MCB72E1 A MCB72E2 A MCB72S1 A MCB72T1 C** | **MCB96J1 A MCB96U1 B** | **MCB11E3 A** |
| Vehicle charging connector | Type 2: MCB36E1 A | Type 1: MCB72S1 A | Type 1 | Type 2 |
| | Type 1: MCB36J1 A | Type 2: MCB72E1 A, MCB72E2 A, MCB72T1 C | | |
| Protection class | I | I | I | I |
| IP degree of protection | 55 | 55 | 55 | 55 |
| Weight of operating unit | 2.4 kg – 3.5 kg | | | |
| Dimensions of operating unit (height x width x depth) | 310 mm x 105 mm x 72 mm | | | |

**WARNING**

The use of the Audi e-tron compact charging system without PE conductor monitoring activated can cause short-circuits, electric shocks, explosions and fires or burns. The Audi e-tron compact charging system should be used in earthed power grids. Deactivate PE conductor monitoring only in unearthed networks (e.g. IT networks). Activate PE conductor monitoring in earthed power networks.

**Note**

When the power supply is connected or restored, the operating unit performs a self-test routine. All the LEDs will light up in green for two seconds if the self-test routine is successful.

## Changing/attaching the cable

Applies to: vehicles with Audi charging system

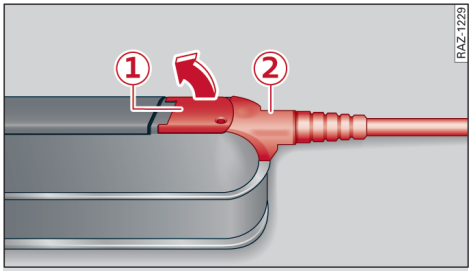



**Fig. 107** Operating unit: releasing/securing the cable

### Requirements:

- The high-voltage battery must have finished charging ⇨ *page 144*.
- The vehicle charging connector must be unplugged from the vehicle charging socket.
- The mains plug must be removed from the power outlet.

### Releasing the cable

- Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- Pull the connector ② out until the first point of resistance.
- Close the lever ① until it is resting on the connector ②.

▸ Pull the connector (2) all the way out.

### Securing the cable

▸ Lift the lever (1) slightly.
▸ Push the connector (2) into the operating unit until the first point of resistance.
▸ Lift the lever (1) all the way up.
▸ Push the connector (2) all the way into the operating unit.
▸ Close the lever (1).

**WARNING**

– Please note the warnings for charging ⇨ ⚠ *in Charging on page 145*.
– Always remove the mains cable from the power outlet before changing a cable.
– Change the cable in dry environments only.
– The Audi charging system must always be used complete with the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable. In some countries, the total length of the mains cable, operating unit and vehicle cable are limited, e.g. to 7.5 m in Israel. Audi recommends that you only use cables approved by Audi.

**Note**

– The mains cable with mains plug for industrial power outlets and the operating unit of the Audi charging system are specially matched. Changing the mains cable to a different type of connector can reduce the charging capacity of the entire system. Factors influencing the charging capacity here are the limited power transmission (electrical capacity) per phase and the number of phases available.
– To reduce the risk of the charging system and cable being stolen, you can secure the lever on the charging cable with a screw. Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with more detailed information.

## Clip wall mount

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and clip wall mount

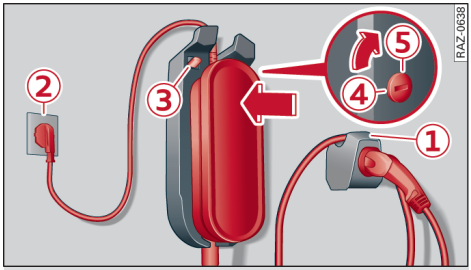



**Fig. 108** Clip wall mount: Hooking in Audi charging system

### Hooking in the Audi charging system

▸ Hook the operating unit into the retainers on the clip wall mount, first at the bottom, then at the top.
▸ Press the operating unit back in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 108* so that it engages.
▸ Wind the length of cable you do not need around the charging connector mounting (1) when you are not charging the high-voltage battery.
▸ Plug the mains cable into the power outlet (2).
▸ After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector into the charging connector mounting (1).

### Unlocking/locking the Audi charging system

▸ Use the enclosed key to unlock/lock the Audi charging system as required (locked: (4), unlocked: (5)).

### Removing the Audi charging system

▸ Unplug the mains cable connector from the power outlet (2).
▸ Unwind the cable from the vehicle charging connector (1).
▸ To release the operating unit from the holder, press the locking mechanism (3) upwards.

**WARNING**

Please observe the safety information in the fitting instructions for the clip wall mount.

# Towing a trailer

## Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

### General information

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer ⇨ *page 164* / ⇨ *page 166*.

**WARNING**

– Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
– Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

**Note**

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not block the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

### Points to check before towing

#### Trailer weight

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇨ *page 378*.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can correspondingly climb steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The actual trailer weight is the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

#### Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on ⇨ *page 378*. ▶

### Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible:

– Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
– Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
– Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
– Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.

### Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

### Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. Reduce your speed if the trailer starts to sway even slightly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Conventional power unit: Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Reduce your speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 118* to take the load off the brakes ⇨ ⚠.

### Exterior lighting

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

### Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear. Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

### Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

### Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 19*, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

### Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for "full load" conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇨ *page 338*. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

### Driver assist systems

The alignment of the sensors/cameras may be altered when a trailer/rear carrier system is hitched up or unhitched.

To ensure that the driver assist systems are fully functional, you should switch the ignition off and ▶

on after you hitch up or unhitch a trailer/rear carrier system.

### Overrun brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

**WARNING**

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

**CAUTION**

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

**Note**

- Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
- Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

## Air suspension

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

Important: All doors on the vehicle must be closed. **comfort** mode must be selected in Audi drive select ⇨ *page 131* before you hitch up the trailer ⇨ (!).

### Setting trailer mode

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Air suspension: trailer**.
- ▸ You should deactivate towing mode again when the trailer is unhitched.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the air suspension is automatically set to trailer mode when you plug the trailer connector into the socket.

If you use rear carrier systems which are mounted directly on the ball joint of the towing bracket, you can also switch trailer mode off manually.

If you have to drive on a rough surface, you can raise the vehicle again after hitching up the trailer and ensuring the draw bar weight is correct. To do so, select **offroad** or **allroad** mode in Audi drive select ⇨ *page 131* or select **Raise** to set the maximum ground clearance ⇨ *page 132*.

**CAUTION**

- If you have hitched up a trailer, never switch off trailer mode while the vehicle is moving as the restrictions on the ride height regulating system would then no longer be present.
- The vehicle's handling may change if you are driving with a trailer on loose surfaces with the vehicle raised. Adjust your speed accordingly.
- If you have raised the vehicle manually, note that the vehicle lowers itself automatically above a certain speed.
- Make sure you adhere to the draw bar weight required for your vehicle ⇨ *page 158*. Before hitching up the trailer, select **comfort** mode in Audi drive select. This will ensure that the draw bar weight and the height of the vehicle are coordinated.

**Note**

When lowering the vehicle manually you also should not lower it past the level set in **comfort** mode in Audi drive select.

# Swivelling towing bracket

## Extending / retracting towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket




**Fig. 109** Luggage compartment: Button

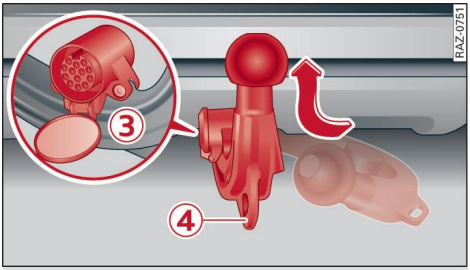



**Fig. 110** Rear bumper: Connecting socket and eye for breakaway cable

### Extending towing bracket

- Apply the parking brake.
- Open the boot lid.
- Briefly press the button ① ⇨ ⚠. The towing bracket will move to the operating position.
- Wait for a moment until the LED in the button lights up and check that it stays on permanently. The ball joint has now reached the operating position.
- Please read the information on the air suspension ⇨ *page 160*. Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- Plug the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system into the trailer socket ③. Use an adapter if necessary.
- When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the breakaway cable into the eye ④ on the towing bracket.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

### Retracting towing bracket

- Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the eye ④.
- Unplug the electrical connector between the vehicle and the trailer/rear carrier system ⇨ ⚠.
- Remove any adapters from the trailer socket ⇨ (!).
- Unhitch the trailer or the rear carrier system.
- Briefly press the button ②. The towing bracket will swivel back to the retracted position.
- Wait for a moment until the LED in the button lights up and check that it stays on permanently. The ball joint has now reached the retracted position.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

The button ①/② is not active when the vehicle is in motion or if the boot lid is closed.

A **safety cut-out** stops the swivelling motion immediately if there is resistance. If this happens, the LED in the button will flash.

Remove the object that caused the safety cut-out to trigger. Then press the button briefly until the towing bracket reaches its final position (operating position or retracted position).

### Meaning of the LED in the button ①/②

– When the LED is **flashing**, the towing bracket is between the two end positions.
– When the LED is permanently **lit**, the towing bracket is in its final position (operating position or retracted position).

**⚠ WARNING**

– Make sure that no people, animals or objects of any kind are in the path of the towing bracket.
– If the towing bracket is not correctly engaged or the LED is flashing, the towing bracket is not in its end position. It must NOT be used – risk of accident and injury!

– Never press the button ①/② if a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket – risk of accident!
– Never attempt to interfere with the movement of the towing bracket, for example with tools, while it is swivelling. This can cause damage, in which case the trailer can no longer be towed safely.
– Only use the towing bracket when it has swivelled out fully and engaged securely.
– You should have the towing bracket checked by a qualified dealership if any faults occur in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself.

**CAUTION**

– Do NOT hold a high-pressure cleaner directly at the seal of the towing bracket or the trailer socket. This may cause damage to the seal, with the result that moisture can enter and damage the system.
– The swivelling unit, accessories and parts of the vehicle could be damaged if you press the button ①/② while a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the towing bracket.
– If you have plugged an adapter into the trailer socket, this could damage the bumper and trailer socket when the towing bracket is retracted. Remove the adapter before retracting the towing bracket.

**Note**

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

**Note**

– The eye ④ on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the breakaway cable of the trailer.
– Malfunctions may occur when extending and retracting the towing bracket in very cold weather. If this should happen, press and hold the button until the towing bracket reaches its final position (the operating position or fully retracted position). In such cases, it is often sufficient to leave the vehicle in a warmer room (e.g. garage).
– Any noises which may be heard when the button is pressed are quite normal and no cause for concern.

## Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

### Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

### Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system ⇨ *page 163* – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

### Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean the ball coupling before using a trailer without a stabiliser and apply multi-purpose grease to it. Repeat this application regularly if you tow a trailer frequently.

### Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

## Trailer stabilisation system[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

Important: The trailer connector must be plugged into the vehicle socket.

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇨ *page 136* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇨ *page 158* and ⇨ *page 162* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

**WARNING**

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case, apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
- Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. Should you need to drive with this combination, drive particularly slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.
- If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
- If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

**Note**

The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

## Rear carrier systems

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

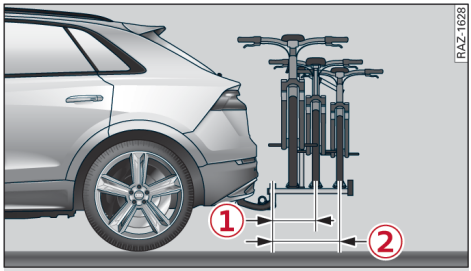



**Fig. 111** Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

### Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ ▶

[1)] Not available on vehicles for some markets.

from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. The maximum draw bar weight and the maximum axle weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

### Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data. You can then find the carrying load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows:

| Maximum draw bar weight (kg) | Maximum carrying load (kg) | Number of bicycles |
|---|---|---|
| 50 – 74 | 50 | 2 |
| 75 upwards | 75 | 3 |

### Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

| Maximum carrying load (kg) | Maximum overhang (mm) |
|---|---|
| 50 – 74 | 500 |
| 75 | 700 |

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm ①. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm ②.

**WARNING**

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Please check towing bracket**

A malfunction has occurred. If the message appears while the vehicle is moving, stop at the next opportunity. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again. If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

## Installation dimensions and retrofitting

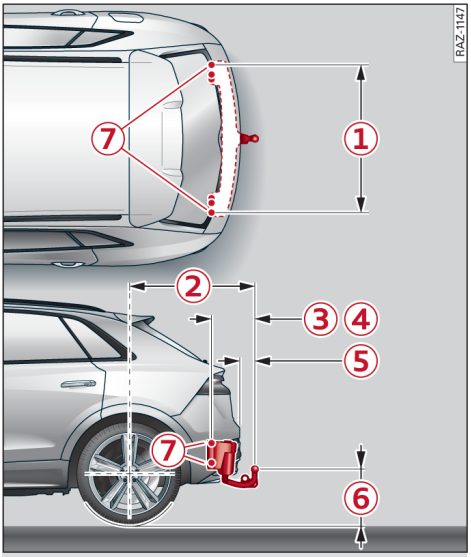



**Fig. 112** Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points ⑦.

| Installation dimensions (mm) | |
|---|---|
| ① 1122 | ④ 338 |
| ② Q8 SUV, SQ8 SUV: 1108<br>② RS Q8 SUV: 1107 | ⑤ 65 (min.) |
| ③ 338 | ⑥ 350 – 420 |

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the ▶

centre of the ball on the towing bracket (2) are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.

The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket (6) applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Qualified workshops are familiar with the method of installation and any modifications which may be required for the cooling system.

**WARNING**

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

**CAUTION**

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

# Towing bracket with square tube

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

Use only a towing bracket with removable ball coupling bracket and ball coupling. The towing bracket must be officially approved for use with the vehicle and trailer and for the maximum gross weight of the trailer being towed. It must be securely attached to the chassis of the vehicle.

Never attach a towing bracket to the bumper. When fitted, the towing bracket must not impair the effect of the bumper in any way. Never make modifications to the exhaust or brake systems.

Check regularly that the towing bracket is secure. Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

**WARNING**

Never install a weight distribution or load-balancing towing bracket/hitch on the vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket could fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle – risk of accident!

## Using the towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

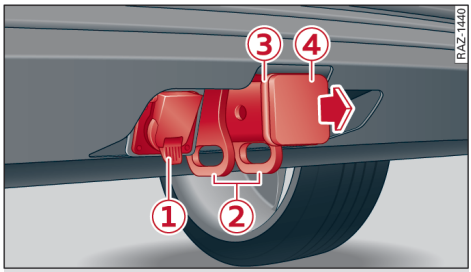



**Fig. 113** Rear bumper: Towing bracket

The towing bracket on your vehicle comprises the tube (3), the trailer socket[1)] (1) or trailer socket holder, two loops (2) for the safety chains and the tube cover (4). ▶

[1)] Depending on country

The tube ③ is suitable for attaching a removable ball coupling bracket with ball coupling, e.g. for towing a trailer ⇨ ⚠.

- ▸ To use the towing bracket, pull the cover ④ off the tube ③ in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ Check that the tube ③ is free of dirt and clean if necessary.
- ▸ Connect the trailer to the socket[1)] ① and use the loops ② to attach the safety chains.
- ▸ To protect the tube ③ from dirt after use, seal it with the cover ④.

**⚠ WARNING**

– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the ball coupling bracket.
– A ball coupling bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk. The ball coupling bracket must be properly secured in the tube ③. This same applies to any other attachments secured in the tube.
– Use only ball coupling brackets/ball couplings which are approved for use with your vehicle and trailer.
– To prevent the risk of injury, always remove the ball coupling bracket when a trailer is not attached.
– It is essential to remove any dirt from the towing bracket, as it may otherwise be impossible to attach the ball coupling bracket securely in the tube – risk of accident!

**Note**

– A ball coupling/ball coupling bracket is not supplied with the towing bracket. These are available from specialist retailers.
– The loops on the towing bracket are intended only for securing the safety chains of the trailer.

## Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

### Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

### Safety chains

Ensure that the safety chains are correctly attached before towing a trailer. There should be sufficient slack in the chains to allow the trailer to be towed around corners, but the chains must not touch the road.

**⚠ WARNING**

If the trailer is equipped with electric brakes, these brakes cannot be controlled by the vehicle's onboard monitoring system – risk of accident!

## Retrofitting

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will be experienced in retrofitting towing brackets and will be familiar with the corresponding technical requirements.

**⚠ WARNING**

– If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
– A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
– For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

▶

1) Depending on country

**CAUTION**

– If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

# Trailer assist

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with trailer assist

The trailer assist helps you to reverse and park the vehicle when a trailer is hitched up. The reversing camera detects the trailer angle. The system automatically learns the properties of the trailer while driving.

The trailer assist automatically steers the trailer in the desired direction when reversing. You operate the accelerator and brake pedal. The system is inactive when driving forwards and you must steer manually. When reversing, the trailer assist limits the speed to between approx. 3 and 8 km/h, depending on the situation. The speed cannot be increased even by pressing the accelerator further.

### Before every trip

– Please make sure that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle, as the trailer assist will otherwise not be active.
– Whenever necessary, clean the reversing camera either manually, or by operating the rear window washer ⇨ *page 66*, or by selecting the cleaning function on the MMI ⇨ *page 223*. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care ⇨ *page 347*.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The technology in the trailer assist cannot defy the laws of physics and works only within the limits imposed by the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the trailer assist function tempt you into taking any safety risks – this can cause accidents. The trailer assist cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
– Unintended vehicle manoeuvres can cause serious injuries.
– Always adjust your driving style to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions.
– The trailer assist does not take the vehicle surroundings into account and does not detect obstacles. It is the driver's responsibility to judge whether the trailer can be manoeuvred safely.
– Always watch the area surrounding the vehicle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear.
– Do not allow the MMI display to distract you from watching the traffic.
– The steering wheel turns by itself when you use the trailer assist. Do not reach into the path of the steering wheel – risk of injury!
– The trailer assist only controls the steering movements. As the driver you are always responsible for braking and for operating the accelerator and watching the traffic.

**CAUTION**

– The trailer assist cannot plan the movements necessary to manoeuvre the trailer. It merely steers the trailer in the desired direction.
– Always watch the trailer as it is moving and be ready to stop the manoeuvre if necessary to avoid damage. Even if the trailer assist is used correctly, in rare cases the trailer may still steer at an angle which deviates from the specified setting.
– Hitch up the trailer as straight as possible. If the angle between the trailer and vehicle is too large, there is a risk that the vehicle will collide with the trailer.
– The distance from the trailer coupling to the trailer axle must be between approximately 1 metre (min.) and 5 metres (max.). For multi-axle trailers, this distance is measured from the centre of the axles.

▶

**Note**

– Audi recommends that you practise manoeuvring with the trailer assist in a quiet location (car park or low traffic area) in order to become familiar with the system and its functions.
– The trailer assist cannot be used for trailers with steering axles.
– The trailer assist may be unavailable for a short period after the ignition is switched on.
– The trailer assist is not available if the trailer brake lights are defective.
– For technical reasons, trailers with LED rear lights may not always be detected by the trailer assist.
– The trailer assist may not be available on gradients of 12 % or steeper.
– The trailer assist cannot be used if a rear carrier (e.g. bicycle rack) is attached.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with trailer assist

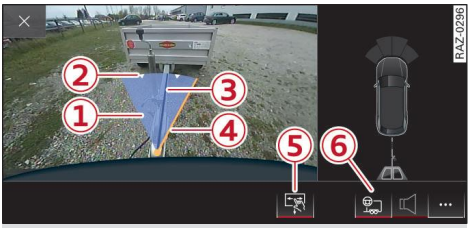



**Fig. 114** Upper display: Operating trailer assist

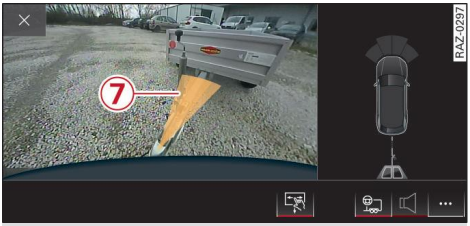



**Fig. 115** Upper display: Initialising trailer

It is only possible to switch the trailer assist on/off when the vehicle is stationary or driving forwards at no more than 10 km/h.

When you switch on the system, the upper display shows the picture from the reversing camera with a blue sector ① and a blue indicator ③. The blue indicator shows the current orientation of the trailer; the blue sector indicates the possible adjustment range of the articulation angle. When reverse gear is engaged, the current articulation angle setting is indicated by an orange indicator ④.

### Operating the trailer assist

▸ Press the button ⑥.
▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
▸ Engage reverse gear.
▸ Press the button ⑤ if you want to switch the controls from the lower display to the upper display.
▸ Drag your finger to the left or right across the upper display to adjust the trailer's direction of travel within the possible setting range.
▸ Double tap the upper display to reduce the articulation angle to zero and drive straight ahead with the trailer. If the blue indicator ③ is within the white markings ②, the trailer's direction of travel can be maintained. If the indicator is outside the markings, the trailer will not drive straight ahead again until a certain distance has been travelled. In this case, it may be necessary to correct the orientation.
▸ Watch the road. Do not move off until the traffic situation allows you do so safely ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 167*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 167*.
▸ You can use the upper display to change the desired trailer orientation at any time while the vehicle is moving.
▸ Press ⑥ to switch off the trailer assist.

### Initialising the trailer

If the trailer was hitched up with a large articulation angle or if automatic initialisation has not yet been performed, it will be necessary for the system to initialise the trailer. When the vehicle is reversing, this process is indicated by an orange semi-circle, which narrows into a smaller ▶

sector (7) as soon as the trailer starts moving. In addition, the MMI display shows the message **Drive carefully and operate brakes yourself to initialise trailer.**

It is also necessary to initialise the trailer if the blue indicator (3) does not point towards the trailer correctly during use.

To do this, the vehicle must be driven forwards for a short distance to reduce the articulation angle. During the initialisation procedure, the system is available with limited functionality.

### Selecting the view

▸ Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Press the corresponding button to switch between the standard and panoramic views ⇨ *page 225*. The other views are not available while the trailer assist is active.

### Automatic safety brake

The trailer assist can initiate an automatic safety brake application in certain situations. In this case, the parking brake will be applied. The parking brake will be released automatically when you drive forwards. To drive in reverse, you must first release the parking brake manually and deactivate the system using the button (6). The trailer assist can initiate a safety brake application in the following situations:

– If the driver intervenes in the steering
– If the steering angle is too large
– If a malfunction is detected
– If a rear carrier is attached

**Note**

– The driver cannot override the safety brake application.
– If you try to continue reversing by releasing the parking brake manually after the first safety brake application, the brakes will be applied again.
– The trailer assist will be deactivated if you drive forwards faster than 10 km/h.
– The initialisation process can take longer, depending on outside conditions such as poor light conditions, etc.
– Please monitor the trailer orientation on the upper display throughout the entire manoeuvring procedure.
– Make sure that the blue indicator is correctly aligned with the trailer orientation. It may not be possible to detect the correct steering angle in poor visibility or on heavily structured surfaces.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with trailer assist

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Trailer assist: currently unavailable**

Check whether the reversing camera needs to be cleaned. Try switching the ignition off and on again.

**Trailer assist: cancelled. Vehicle has been braked. Steering input detected. Continue steering vehicle!**

The trailer assist has been deactivated because the driver has intervened in the steering. To continue using the trailer assist, press (6) again ⇨ *page 168, Fig. 114*.

**Trailer assist: cancelled. Vehicle has been braked. Please take over steering.**

The trailer assist has been deactivated, e.g. because the ESC has been switched off.

**Trailer assist: vehicle has been braked. Straighten towing mechanism by driving forwards**

The trailer assist has initiated a safety brake application to prevent a collision between the trailer and the vehicle. Drive forwards.

**Trailer assist: cancelled. No trailer detected**

**Trailer assist: cancelled. No trailer detected. Please take over steering.**

**Trailer assist: cancelled. Vehicle has been braked. No trailer detected. Please take over steering.** ▸

The trailer assist cannot be used. This may be because the trailer has been detected as a rear carrier or the reversing camera is dirty. Check that the electrical connector on the trailer is plugged into the socket on the vehicle and that the reversing camera is clean.

**Trailer assist: vehicle has been braked. Not stopped long enough**

The brakes will be applied if you drive off too quickly after activating the trailer assist.

**Trailer assist: fault. Please brake immediately and take over steering.**

The trailer assist can no longer apply the brakes.

# Driver assist systems

## General information

### Safety precautions

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– As the driver, you always have full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
– Only use the assist systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– The assist systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 172*.

**Note**

– Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
– Always check the current settings of the assist systems before setting off. The settings might have been changed by switching off the ignition or altered by someone else.

### System limits

Please note the system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– The assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
– It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
– The corrective steering/braking input from the assist systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

**Note**

– The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assist systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
– Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unpaved or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
– The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at roundabouts, at toll gates or in city traffic.
– The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
– In towing mode, some assist systems may be restricted or unavailable, or may not ▶

4M6012720AE

react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇨ *page 158*.
– The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assist systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
– Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assist systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

## General driver messages

**Driver assist systems: currently restricted. The systems affected will be updated regularly in the message memory**

If this message appears, one or more driver assist systems are restricted or unavailable. To display further information, select the ⚠ tab (driver messages) in the instrument cluster. Please note the information and adapt your driving style accordingly.

# Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

## Areas covered by sensors and cameras

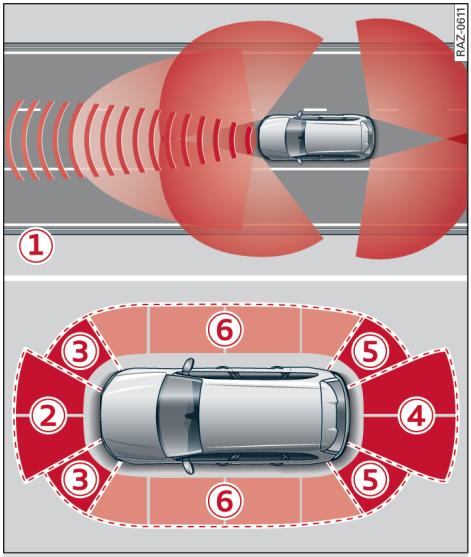



**Fig. 116** Areas covered by sensors

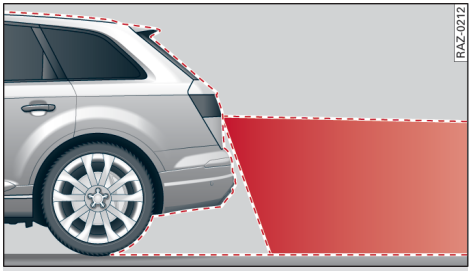



**Fig. 117** Area covered by reversing camera

The assist systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assist systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop. ▶

### Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the entire area surrounding the vehicle can be detected ⇨ *Fig. 116* ①.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

### Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, ultrasonic sensors may be used to depict various areas on the MMI ⇨ *Fig. 116*.

The range of the areas displayed depends on the position of the ultrasonic sensors:

② Approx. 1.20 metres
③ Approx. 0.90 metres
④ Approx. 1.60 metres
⑤ Approx. 0.90 metres
⑥ Approx. 0.90 metres

The side area ⑥ is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

### Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ⇨ *Fig. 117*. Only this area is shown on the upper display ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
– Sensors may be subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the supporting systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.

**CAUTION**

– Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
– In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
  – Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
  – Low obstacles
  – Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
  – Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars
  – Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics

**Note**

– Exterior mirrors with surround view cameras must always be fully folded out to work properly. Make sure that the mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
– The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered or painted as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Accessories, stickers, decals, paint etc. must not be applied to the sensors and must be kept completely outside the sensors' and cameras' range of vision.
– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of ▶

the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.
– Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
– External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
– The areas covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 116* and cameras ⇨ *Fig. 117* are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

## Positions of sensors and cameras

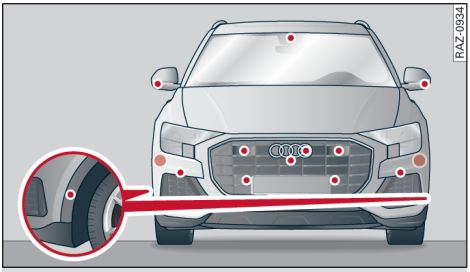



**Fig. 118** Front area: Sensors and cameras

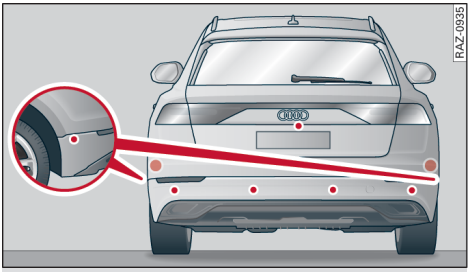



**Fig. 119** Rear area: Sensors and cameras

### Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:
– Laser scanner at the front in the radiator grille ⇨ ⚠
– Camera behind the windscreen
– Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
– Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
– Night vision camera at the front in the radiator grille
– Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle
– Radar sensors at the front corners of the vehicle
– Radar sensor at the front in the radiator grille

### Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:
– Reversing camera in the boot lid
– Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
– Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle

**⚠ WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with laser scanner

– The surface of the laser scanner can heat up during operation (risk of burns).
– The laser scanner contains class 1 lasers according to IEC 60825-1:2014. There is no danger when they are used as intended. The laser module must NOT be opened nor any covers removed. This can cause permanent damage to eyesight.
– All repairs to the laser module must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory; otherwise you might lose the type approval for your vehicle. Improper repairs can impair the effectiveness of the system and cause damage to the eyes.

**Note**

– The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.
– Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

# Driver assist menu

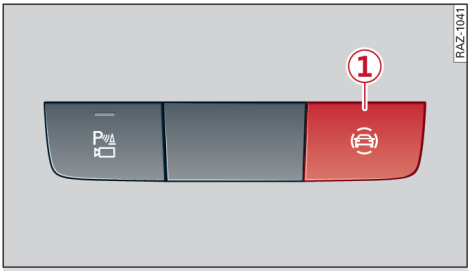



**Fig. 120** Centre console: Button for driver assist systems

You can switch various assist functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Driver assist** menu.

### Calling up the Driver assist menu

- Press the button (1), or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Driver assist**.

### Adjusting individual system settings

- To adjust the individual settings of a system, press in the **Driver assist** menu and select the desired system.
- Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to adjust the individual settings of the systems directly in the **Driver assist** menu.

### Switching systems on/off

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, this is done via the **profile selection** or the **standard display**.

Vehicles with profile selection

- Select the **Maximum** profile to switch on all available systems.
- Select the **Basic** profile to switch on only the basic systems or **All off** to switch them all off [1].
- To switch individual systems on/off, first select the **Individual** profile. To switch individual systems on/off in the **Individual** profile, press and then next to the appropriate system.

Applies to: vehicles with standard display

- Press next to the desired system to switch it on/off.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with profile selection

– You can select profiles by pressing on their name or by pressing the button (1) repeatedly until the profile is activated.
– Press on the upper display to call up a list of the systems contained in a particular profile.

# Parking aid menu

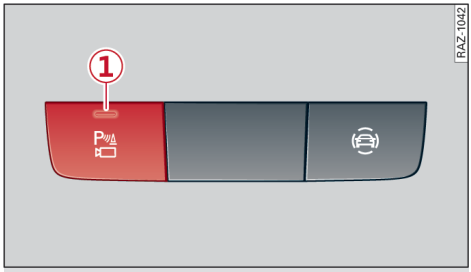



**Fig. 121** Centre console: Button for parking aid

You can switch various parking functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Parking aid** menu.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Parking aid**, or
- Press the button (1) in the centre console and press on the upper display with the parking aid activated.

Press to switch the desired systems on/off or press to adjust the individual settings. ▶

[1] Depends on equipment

### Available settings

The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle. Some of the settings can only be called up via ··· and only under certain conditions.

– **Rear volume** ⇨ *page 220*
– **Automatic activation** ⇨ *page 220*
– **Front/rear volume** ⇨ *page 221*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 221*
– **Clean reversing camera** ⇨ *page 223*
– **Trailer view** ⇨ *page 224*
– **View** ⇨ *page 226*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 228*
– **Manoeuvre assist** ⇨ *page 242*

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

# Driver information

## Speed warning

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the MMI.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning function indicates this with a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored maximum speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, for example.

**Note**

– Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the relevant country-specific speed limit regulations.
– On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function also warns you when you reach a factory-set warning threshold. This warning threshold cannot be changed or switched off.

### Setting speed limit warning

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

You can set the warning threshold individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Speed warning** – To set the speed warning threshold.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Manually set speed limit (XX) exceeded**

The set speed has been exceeded.

## Camera-based traffic sign recognition

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

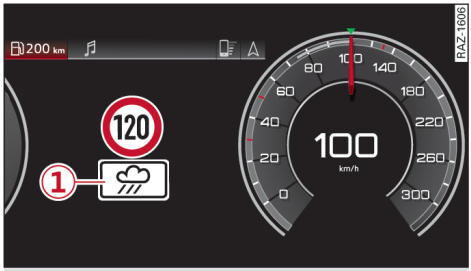



**Fig. 122** Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster and on the head-up display*. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed. By interpreting the data, the system is able to display the speed limit even on roads without speed limit signs. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed simultaneously in the instrument cluster depending on the vehicle equipment. The status line shows the speed limit which currently applies. You can choose not to show the information on the head-up display* ⇨ *page 33*.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions ①, these are displayed under the following conditions: ▶

| | |
|---|---|
| | A temporary speed limit for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating. |
| | A speed limit for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights are switched on. |
| | A speed limit applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster. |
| | The vehicle is towing a trailer and the **Automatic trailer recognition** option is activated on the MMI. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayed[a]. |

[a] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

### Restrictions

The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries. It is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
– In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
– At high vehicle speeds.
– If the camera's range of vision ⇨ *page 172* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇨ *page 346*
– If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
– If traffic signs deviate from their standard appearance.
– If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
– If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
– If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
– If the system detects a speed sticker on a slow-moving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.

**Note**

– The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.
– The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if **50** is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

### Calling up the traffic sign recognition

The vehicle has a driver assist display which may or may not show the surroundings depending on the vehicle's equipment:

▸ Without surroundings shown: On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.
▸ With surroundings shown: On the instrument cluster, select the tab.

### Setting the traffic sign-based speed warning

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

#### Traffic sign-based speed warning

You can switch the visual and acoustic speed warnings on/off. Depending on the country, speed warnings are either reset to the default setting or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted. ▶

**Traffic sign-based warning threshold** – You can set a warning threshold. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will flash briefly. A warning tone also sounds briefly. Depending on the country, the value set is either stored after a restart or reset to the default setting if a warning threshold of 5 km/h or 10 km/h was previously selected.

**Warning tone if a speed is exceeded** – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic warning which is issued when a specific speed is exceeded. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the ✳ button on the multi-function steering wheel. Depending on the country, the setting is either reset to the default or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

**Tone when speed limit changes** – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic tone which is issued when a speed limit changes. The most recent setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

**Deactivate if speed is being regulated** – You can activate/deactivate the visual and acoustic warning when driver assist systems which regulate the speed are active. The setting is reset to the default when the vehicle is restarted.

### Settings related to towing a trailer[1)]

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Speed warning** – You can adjust the following settings in the **Trailer** menu:

**Displaying signs for trailers**

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

**Setting the maximum speed for a trailer**

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. If you do not enter a value or enter a value greater than the legal speed limit, the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the camera-based traffic sign recognition are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the front camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the front camera ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. See owner's manual**

This driver message appears if the navigation system lacks data, for example on newly-built roads. The limited functionality may temporarily cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

**No traffic sign recognised**

No relevant navigation data are available in the area, and no speed limit has been detected.

[1)] Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

# Traffic light information

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

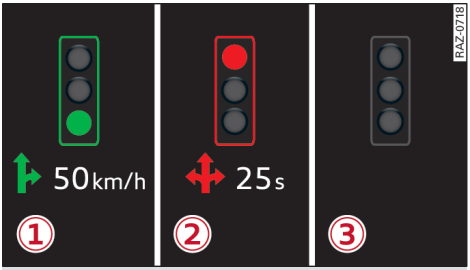



**Fig. 123** Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to reach the next traffic light on green (1), or how long you will be waiting at the next light if it is still red (2). The traffic light information is shown in the instrument cluster and head-up display* as soon as traffic light data is available. A grey traffic light symbol (3) may be displayed if the vehicle is in an area with traffic light information but no traffic light signal is being received.

### General information

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

– If the maximum speed limit is exceeded
– If the speed falls below a certain threshold
– If the next traffic light is less than 30 metres away
– If the anticipated waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds
– If no traffic light data are available
– If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle
– If traffic lights are under construction or are being serviced
– In the event of warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
– If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* malfunctions or is unavailable
– If the data connection is interrupted
– If the transmission of data is deactivated in the privacy settings
– If the licence has expired

In these cases, it may not be possible to select the menu item and it may be greyed out

**WARNING**

– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings and the distance to other vehicles, even when you are using the traffic light information. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
– It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. Never allow the information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks.
– Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.
– The traffic light information system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the recommended speed in the display.
– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– At the time of publication, the traffic light information function is available only in a small number of selected towns and cities.
– The availability of the traffic light information is limited.
– The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, the data in the display may be implausible or incorrect, or the data may not be shown at all.
– Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic ▶

light information display may change abruptly.
– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings ⇨ *page 306*.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

### Switching the traffic light information on/off

You can switch the traffic light information on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

### Calling up the traffic light information

The vehicle has a driver assist display which may or may not show the surroundings depending on the vehicle's equipment:

▸ Without surroundings shown: On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.
▸ With surroundings shown: On the instrument cluster, select the tab.

**Note**

If a different tab or function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information is displayed in the instrument cluster status line.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Fault. See owner's manual**

The system configuration may be missing due to a network fault. Restart the system by switching the ignition off and locking the vehicle. Wait a few minutes until the vehicle has shut down completely and then switch the ignition on again.

**Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

The system is currently out of operation. Check whether any of the following items apply and rectify the cause as necessary:

– The traffic light information is deactivated.
– Data transmission is deactivated.
– The vehicle does not have traffic sign recognition.
– There is no valid licence.
– No traffic light data are available at the current location.

# Fatigue warning

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

Within the system limits, the fatigue warning informs the driver whether they need to take a break.

Once the vehicle is moving, the fatigue warning analyses the driving behaviour in order to estimate whether the driver is fatigued. The result is compared continuously with the current driving behaviour.

If the comparison suggests that the driver is fatigued, the system will recommend a break via a display in the instrument cluster at speeds of 65 km/h and above. If severe fatigue is detected, a tone will also sound.

### System limits

The system may misinterpret the driving behaviour in certain driving situations, such as the following:

– At speeds of below approx. 60 km/h
– At speeds of above approx. 130 km/h
– On twisty roads
– On poor road surfaces
– When driving through roadworks
– In poor weather
– During performance driving
– When your attention is distracted
– If the vehicle is towing a heavy or long trailer
– When lane guidance* is activated ▶

– If you are falling asleep or into a microsleep

### Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

– When you switch off the ignition
– When you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door
– When the vehicle has been stationary for a certain length of time

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Never drive when you are tired – risk of accident! On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.

**Note**

In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

### Switching the fatigue warning on/off

You can switch the fatigue warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the fatigue warning is switched off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Sensitivity** – You can adjust the sensitivity of the fatigue warning to **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the fatigue warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Fatigue warning: please take a break!**

The system has identified a severe level of fatigue. Take a break.

 **Fatigue warning: rest recommended**

The system has identified a low level of fatigue. Take a break when possible.

# Distraction warning

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

The distraction warning warns you when the system identifies that you are distracted from the road.

The system registers when you perform tasks while driving that distract you from the road, such as adjusting the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors.

When this is the case, the system warns you with a display in the instrument cluster starting at low speeds. If a high level of distraction is detected, a tone will sound to remind you to concentrate on the road.

### System limits

In some cases, the system may be limited or not function at all:

– At speeds of below approx. 10 km/h
– If the driver is severely distracted by external factors (such as the traffic situation) ▶

– If the driver is severely distracted by operating devices which are not connected to the vehicle (e.g. mobile devices)
– If the driver is severely distracted by the infotainment system

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

### Switching the distraction warning on/off

You can switch the distraction warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the distraction warning is switched off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Sensitivity** – You can adjust the sensitivity of the distraction warning to **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with distraction warning

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the distraction warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Distraction detected. Please direct your attention to the road.**

The system has identified a high level of distraction.

**Distraction detected. Please direct your attention to the road.**

The system has identified a low level of distraction.

# Lap timer

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can use the lap timer to record and evaluate lap times. The lap timer can be operated using the multi-function steering wheel ⇨ *page 18*.

### Calling up the lap timer

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Lap times**.

Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

**WARNING**

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the lap timer functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!

**Note**

You can call up information from the onboard computer while the stopwatch of the lap timer is running.

## Lap times

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Important: Call up the lap timer first ⇨ *page 183*.

### Recording lap times

▸ To start the lap timer manually, select **Start lap 1** from the menu.
▸ To start the lap timer automatically when you drive off, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** from the menu.
▸ To time another lap after completing a lap, select **New lap** from the menu. The next lap time starts running immediately. ▶

When you finish a lap, the lap time is compared with the best lap and the difference is indicated by a – or +.

### Interrupting the lap timer (pause) and displaying split times

- To pause the lap timer, select **Pause** from the menu.
- To start the lap timer again, select **Resume** from the menu.
- To display a split time, select **Split time** from the menu. The split time appears in the instrument cluster for approximately ten seconds. The current lap time continues running in the meantime.

### Cancelling lap times

The timing of the current lap is cancelled. The lap time is deleted and is not included in the statistics.

- Select **Cancel lap** from the menu.

### Resetting the lap timer

- Select **Reset lap times** from the menu.

**Note**

– Up to 99 lap times can be recorded.
– If you interrupt the lap timer to take a break, you can resume recording later on, even if you switched off the ignition in the meantime.
– Recorded lap times cannot be deleted individually from the overall results.
– The data recorded in the lap timer remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

## Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

### Displaying the lap statistics

The number of laps so far, the fastest lap +, the slowest lap – and the average time (avg.) can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Lap statistics**.
- To show the individual lap times, scroll the left thumbwheel up/down.
- To return to the lap time already started, select: button > **Lap times**.

### Resetting the lap statistics

Important: The lap statistics menu must be displayed.

- To reset the lap statistics, press the left thumbwheel until the message **No lap times have been recorded yet.** appears.

**Note**

The lap times for the last 30 laps are shown in the lap statistics. The fastest and slowest lap times from up to 99 timed laps are also shown.

# Acceleration measurement

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with acceleration measurement

The acceleration measurement function allows you to time how long it takes you to reach a certain speed or cover a certain distance. For the best measurement results, Audi recommends switching off or restricting the ESC. Please note that the ambient conditions and tyre characteristics affect the result of the measurement.

### Calling up the acceleration measurement

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Acceler. measurement**.

**WARNING**

Please direct your full attention to the road at all times. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. You should therefore use the acceleration measurement functions on closed racetracks only – risk of accident!

**Note**

The acceleration measurement functions were calibrated with the largest summer tyre/rim combinations available from the ▶

factory. The measurement accuracy can be affected if other tyre/rim combinations are used.

### Using the acceleration measurement

Applies to: vehicles with acceleration measurement

Important: The acceleration measurement must have been called up.

- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired speed or distance.
- ▸ Wait briefly until the symbol appears next to the time measurement in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ To start the measurement, accelerate the vehicle. The measurement ends automatically as soon as you have reached the speed or distance selected.

## Night vision assist

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The night vision assist uses an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle after dark (subject to certain system limitations). The system can display objects up to about 300 metres away from the camera.

The system detects pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals by sensing a difference in temperature to their surroundings. If the difference is too small, pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals can no longer be detected. The pedestrian, cyclist and wild animal highlighting feature is therefore deactivated during the day or at outside temperatures at or above approx. 25 °C.

The thermal image from the camera is displayed in the instrument cluster. Warmer areas generally appear lighter, while cooler areas appear darker.

The camera for the night vision assist system is located in the vehicle's radiator grille ⇨ *page 174*. Please ensure that the night vision camera is kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which would impair the function of the night vision assist. Please observe the notes on cleaning and care ⇨ *page 346*.

**WARNING**

- – Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- – The night vision assist can only detect pedestrians, cyclists or wild animals when they are within the infrared camera's range of vision.
- – Pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals cannot be detected/highlighted by the night vision assist if
  - – they are not standing upright (e.g. if they are sitting or lying on the ground) and/or
  - – the silhouette on the display is incomplete or interrupted, e.g. because the pedestrian is partially obscured by a parked vehicle or the wild animal is partially concealed by high grass.
- – Never attempt to avoid animals if this would put yourself or other road users at risk.

**Note**

- – Even though the system can evaluate the shape of any object it detects, as well as the heat it is radiating, there are limits to the system performance. False warnings cannot be ruled out completely.
- – For technical reasons, the display image is frozen for fractions of a second at certain intervals.

### Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

You can switch the night vision assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▸ The lights must be set to AUTO for the night vision assist system to be automatically activated in low lighting conditions.
- ▸ To activate the night vision assist immediately, switch the dipped headlights on manually. To ▶

do so, press on ① on the light switch module ⇨ *page 59, Fig. 35* and select ≣D.

When the function is activated, the tab appears in the instrument cluster.

▸ Select the tab on the instrument cluster.

**Note**

When the night vision assist tab is selected in the instrument cluster and the dipped headlights are switched off, the thermal image will remain displayed until you switch to a different tab.

## Highlighting and warning feature

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist




**Fig. 124** Instrument cluster: Pedestrian highlighting and warning feature

### Pedestrian, cyclist and wild animal detection with highlighting feature

The night vision assist can distinguish pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals within a range of about 10 to 90 metres in front of the vehicle, subject to certain system limitations. If a cyclist is bent forwards, they may not be highlighted continuously. The animal detection feature is not activated in built-up areas. Only large wild animals, such as deer, are detected by the system. When the headlights are on after dark and the system successfully detects an object (within the system limitations), it will display the object in a yellow box ①.

### Pedestrian, cyclist and wild animal warnings

The system limitations vary according to the road speed and steering angle. The pedestrian, cyclist and wild animal warning function urges you to take extra care.

The system will alert you if pedestrians, cyclists or wild animals are detected within a critical area in front of your vehicle.

– Pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals are highlighted in red in the instrument cluster and marked with a warning symbol ② The warning symbol is shown for pedestrians and cyclists. The warning symbol ② is shown for wild animals.
– If the head-up display* is switched on, the warning symbol or will be displayed.
– A tone will sound when a warning is issued.
– If the thermal image from the night vision assist is hidden by another display (e.g. on-board computer), the red warning symbol or will appear if a pedestrian/cyclist or wild animal warning occurs.

If the system for detecting pedestrians, cyclists and wild animals is unavailable, the tab will display the symbol.

### Spotlight*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian or cyclist detected in the warning zone, the headlights can illuminate the pedestrian/cyclist with the spotlight function.

This takes place at speeds above approx. 60 km/h. It does not take place in towns with street lighting or if the system detects that another vehicle would be dazzled by the spotlight. The spotlight is not directed at wild animals. The spotlight* is controlled by the main beam assist* ⇨ *page 60*.

## Contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Important: The night vision assist must be switched on and the tab must be displayed.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Driver assist** > (⚙) > **Night vision assist**.
▸ Adjust the slider to set the desired level of contrast.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Night vision assist: currently unavailable. See owner's manual**

The function of the system is temporarily impaired; the system will be deactivated. If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

# Driver assistance

## Speed regulation systems

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The **cruise control system** helps you to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The **speed limiter** helps you to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

**WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking as well as to controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

**CAUTION**

- Conventional power unit: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 118*. This will reduce the load on the brakes.

### Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

#### Indicator lamps

– The cruise control system is switched on and is actively controlling the set speed.

LIM – The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the road speed to the threshold set.

LIM (flashing) – The set cruising speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

### Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

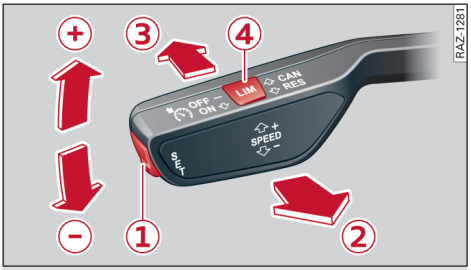



**Fig. 125** Control lever: Switching the system on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Pull the control lever towards you to position ② to switch the system on. ▶

▸ To switch between the cruise control system/ adaptive cruise assist* and the speed limiter, press button (4) on the control lever.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.

**Note**

The preset cruising speed remains stored when you switch between the systems.

## Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance while the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: The system must be switched on.

▸ To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the control lever towards (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 188, Fig. 125*.
▸ To activate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position (2) while the vehicle is moving.
▸ To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button (1) on the control lever.

## Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Important: The system must be switched on.

▸ To increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards to position (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 188, Fig. 125*.
▸ To increase or reduce the preset speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards to position (+)/(-) .
▸ To increase or reduce the preset speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards to position (+)/(-) and hold it there.

## Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

### Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

▸ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
▸ To revert to the preset speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time.

### Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

▸ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The stored preset speed is reactivated as soon as your speed drops below the preset speed.

### Deactivating

▸ To deactivate the preset speed, push the control lever to position (3) (click stop not engaged) ⇨ *page 188, Fig. 125*, or
▸ Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

**WARNING**

– Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
– Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather ▶

conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.

### Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can switch off the cruise control systems if you will not be using them for a longer period of time.

▸ Press the control lever to position ③ (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇨ *page 188, Fig. 125*.

The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

If  or LIM is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

## Efficiency assist

### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The efficiency assist can help you to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the overrun mode with recuperation and coasting phases, depending on the situation.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
– The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.
– Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.

### Efficiency assist menu

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

You can switch the efficiency assist on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Efficiency assist** menu. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **(Charging & efficiency)** > **Efficiency assist**.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

### Event symbols

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The following symbols may appear depending on the equipment fitted. The efficiency assist displays each symbol to indicate the event to which it is currently reacting.

Certain symbols only appear when **Predictive messages** are switched on. Certain symbols only appear when **Predictive control** is switched on and the adaptive cruise assist* is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance. ▸

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
|  | **Slow down** (predictive messages only) |
|  | **Speed limit** ahead (example) |
|  | **Speed limit no longer applies** |
|  | **Corner** or **Exit** ahead |
|  | **Intersection** ahead |
|  | **Roundabout** ahead |
|  | **Gradient** (predictive messages only) |
|  | **Vehicle ahead** (predictive messages only) |
|  | (predictive control only) When the warning/indicator lamp lights up in green and red, this indicates a difference between the speed limit and the set speed. |

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

## Predictive messages

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The  symbol appears in the instrument cluster display as soon as the efficiency assist recommends that you take your foot off the accelerator. Event symbols indicate which event the function is reacting to ⇨ *page 190, Event symbols*.

### Important

– The cruise control system* or the adaptive cruise assist* must not be regulating the speed.
– The speed must be at least 30 km/h.
– The remaining route must be long enough for the system to react to the event.

### Switching predictive messages on/off

You can switch the predictive messages on/off in the **Efficiency assist** menu ⇨ *page 190*.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the efficiency assist. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

**Note**

– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– If a route has been entered in the navigation system*, that route will be used as reference for the tips given. If no route has been entered, the system uses an assumed route plan to predict the situation ahead.
– The type of information displayed can vary depending on the transmission position and on the driving mode currently selected in Audi drive select*. No messages are shown in driving program S.
– More messages are shown in the Audi drive select **efficiency*** mode.

## Economy tips

Applies to: vehicles with economy tips

Economy tips are shown briefly on the instrument cluster display in certain situations where fuel economy is affected. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel. ▶

Important: **efficiency** mode must be selected in Audi drive select.

### Hiding economy tips

▸ Press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel. Economy tips that have been cleared from the display will not appear again until the next time you switch on the ignition.

### Switching economy tips on/off

▸ You can switch the economy tips on/off in the **Efficiency assist** menu ⇨ *page 190*.

**Note**

The economy tips are not always displayed in every conceivable situation, but are deliberately spaced out over time.

# Adaptive cruise assist

## How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The **adaptive cruise control** assists you by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control can accelerate and brake within certain system limitations. When there is no traffic in front, the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system by maintaining a constant speed. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise control accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

Within certain system limits, the additional **lane guidance** function helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane. You can select whether the adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇨ *page 196, Switching lane guidance on/off*.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The **predictive control** system can adjust the speed in response to events ⇨ *page 198, Predictive control*.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

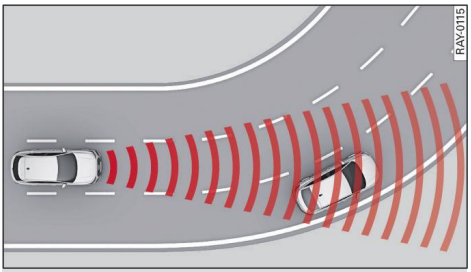



**Fig. 126** Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

– When driving into a bend ⇨ *Fig. 126* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
– The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision ⇨ *page 172, Fig. 116*.
– In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist may no longer be recognised, and ▶

the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.
– The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
– The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
– The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
– Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
– The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

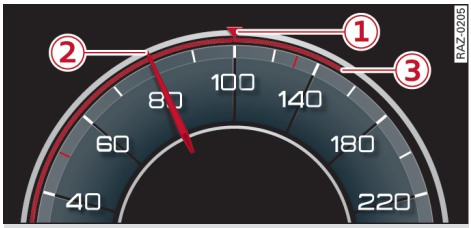



**Fig. 127** Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

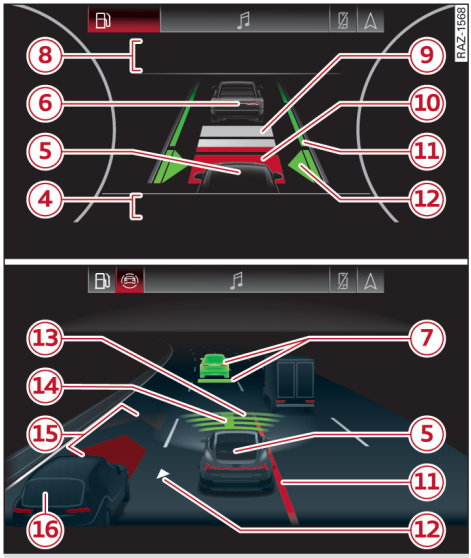



**Fig. 128** Instrument cluster: Driver assist display without or with surroundings shown

The driving situation and the settings are displayed in the instrument cluster ⇨ *Fig. 127*. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

### Display on speedometer

The display on the speedometer is not available in all layouts*.

① Marker for set speed
② Current speed
③ Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)

### Driver assist display

The vehicle has a driver assist display which may or may not show the surroundings depending on the vehicle's equipment:

The driver assist display without surroundings shown ⇨ *Fig. 128* (top) provides information about the status of the system. The display appears only if it was called up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 22*.

The driver assist display with surroundings shown ⇨ *Fig. 128* (bottom) also depicts vehicles that were identified in the surrounding area within the system limitations. The objects are shown in ▶

a simplified form and may differ from the actual objects. The surroundings are only shown if the tab has been selected in the instrument cluster.

④ Driver messages and settings
⑤ Own vehicle
⑥ Vehicle detected in front
⑦ Vehicle based on which system is currently regulating (highlighted)
⑧ Driver messages and settings
⑨ Specified distance set
⑩ The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
⑪ Availability of / intervention display for lane departure warning
⑫ Availability of lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist
⑬ Width of area covered by sensors
⑭ Green marking pointing towards vehicle based on which system is currently regulating
⑮ Side assist display
⑯ Vehicle detected in neighbouring lane

### Warning and indicator lamps

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set speed will be maintained.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The system is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not ready to drive off. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically ⇨ *page 203*.

– The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not ready to drive off. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

– The vehicle has been stationary for too long and is not ready to drive off. The indicator lamp and a message indicate that it is possible to reactivate the period during which the vehicle is ready to drive off ⇨ *page 203, Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist*.

– You must intervene. The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently ⇨ *page 197, Take over braking prompt* or the safe start monitor is issuing a warning ⇨ *page 203*.

– Lane guidance is active.

– Actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached ⇨ *page 198, Take over steering prompt*.

– Lane guidance is switched on but not active ⇨ *page 197, Lane guidance limitations*.

/ – Actively take over the steering immediately. No steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits ⇨ *page 198, Take over steering prompt*.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– The area covered by the sensors and the surroundings shown ⇨ *Fig. 128* are intended as a guide and are not to scale.
– Applies to vehicles with surroundings shown: Objects approaching from behind are displayed as cars, regardless of the actual object.

## Operating adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

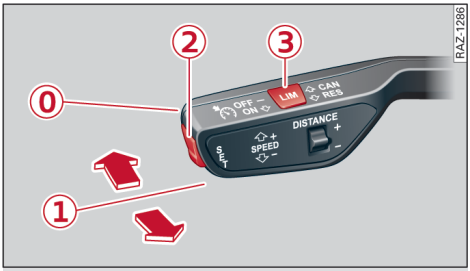



**Fig. 129** Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

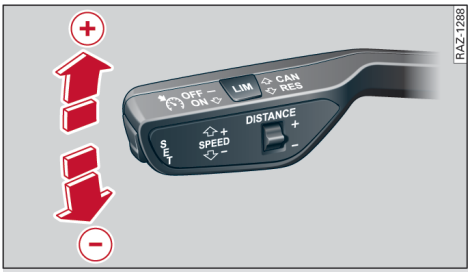



**Fig. 130** Control lever: Setting a new speed

### Switching on

- To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

### Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control:

- Press the SET button ②. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 193, Fig. 127* and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠.
- If the vehicle is stationary, you should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed.

You can set any speed between 20 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range ③[1)2)] ⇨ *page 193, Fig. 127*.

### Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp will go out.

### Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.

- To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

### Setting a new speed

- To increase or reduce the set speed in small steps, briefly push the lever one level upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖.
- To increase or reduce the set speed in larger steps, briefly push the lever two levels upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖.
- To increase or reduce the speed continuously, push the lever one or two levels upwards or downwards towards ⊕/⊖ and hold the lever until the marking on the speedometer ① ⇨ *page 193, Fig. 127* reaches the desired speed.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The predictive control system can adjust the set speed automatically in response to events ⇨ *page 198*. ▶

1) Depends on country and engine type

2) Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: The maximum available speed range is reduced in EV mode.

### Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction ⊕/⊖. To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

### Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

▸ Push the lever away from you to position ⓪ until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
– Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
– When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.
– If you press the SET button ② at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.

**Note**

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– If the speed limiter* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand. Press the LIM* button ③ to select the adaptive cruise assist.
– The speed setting is deleted for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
– The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
– The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.

## Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance

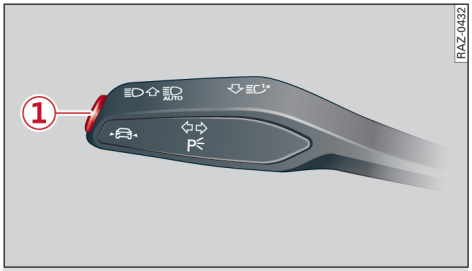



**Fig. 131** Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

In traffic jams, the lane guidance function provides additional assistance in forming a lane for emergency vehicles[1)] by guiding the vehicle as far ▶

1) Depending on country

as possible to the edge of the lane in which you are driving.

### Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

- You can switch the availability of the lane guidance on/off under **Adaptive cruise assist** in the driver assist menu ⇨ *page 175*, or
- Briefly press the button (1) on the turn signal lever.

The arrows (12) in the driver assist display ⇨ *page 193, Fig. 128* and indicator lamps ⇨ *page 194* indicate whether the lane guidance is available.

The lane guidance assists you by making steering inputs only if the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance and the availability is switched on.

### Lane guidance limitations

If lights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– The turn signal was activated.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.

### Driver messages

If is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

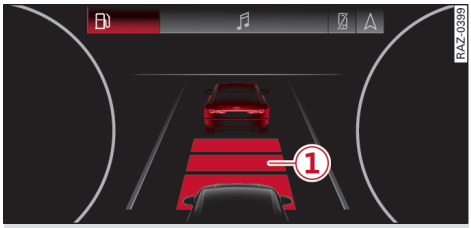
Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

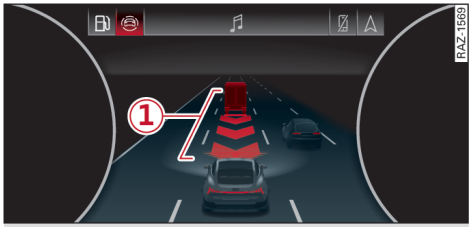
– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

## Prompts to take control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist




Applies to: driver assist display without surroundings shown
**Fig. 132** Instrument cluster: Take over braking prompt




Applies to: driver assist display with surroundings shown
**Fig. 133** Instrument cluster: Take over braking prompt

### Take over braking prompt

If the warning lamp lights up and the driver message **Distance!**[1] appears, apply the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

In such cases, the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front. ▶

[1] Depends on equipment

The graphic ① will also appear if you have called up the driver assist display on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 22* or selected the tab.

### Take over steering prompt

If the warning lamp lights up, actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the warning/indicator lamp or lights up and a corresponding message appears, actively take over the steering immediately. Insufficient steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. If you do not take over the steering, the adaptive cruise assist will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 216*.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

**Note**

– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

## Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and predictive control

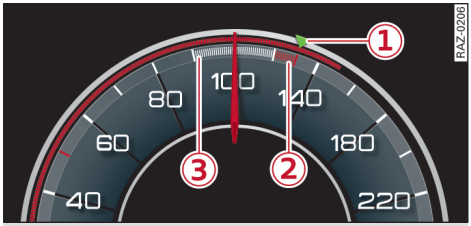



**Fig. 134** Instrument cluster: Predictive control display in speedometer

### How it works

When the predictive control is active, the efficiency assist function adapts the cruising speed setting ① for the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead. After regulation for such events is completed, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the generally applicable speed limit or the recommended speed for the road in question.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the radar sensors.

When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message [1].

Symbols indicate which events the predictive control is reacting to ⇨ *page 190, Event symbols*.

### Important

– At least one predictive control must be switched on via **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.
– The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇨ *page 195*.
– The system can only react to speed limits of 20 km/h and higher. ▶

[1] Depends on equipment

– The map material on the navigation system* must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations ⇨ *page 274*.

### Display on speedometer

The display may vary depending on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all layouts*.

① Marking indicating set speed (i.e. the cruising speed set by you or by the predictive control).
② Red band showing difference between speed limit and set speed.
③ Grey band showing planned reduction in set speed based on road layout ahead.

### Overriding the predictive control

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇨ *page 195, Fig. 130* can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise assist regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

### Setting predictive control

You can switch the predictive control on/off or adjust the individual settings under **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

**Use speed limit** – The regulation of the cruising speed according to speed limits ahead can be switched **On** or **Off**. The optional control setting **With tolerance** can also be applied. In this case, the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

**Adaptation to route ahead** – The function for adapting to the route ahead can be switched **Off** or adjusted individually from **Slow** to **Fast**. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

### Driver messages

If  and a driver message with **Predictive control** are displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the functions are unavailable.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
– The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
– The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

**Note**

– When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
– The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The marking ① is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected even when ▶

the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
– When the vehicle is coasting, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
– The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/the Audi drive select* mode selected.
– After the ignition is switched on, a speed of 130 km/h[1)] is set automatically when the vehicle is first driven onto a motorway or similar road, provided that no speed limits are detected and you have not set a different cruising speed.
– If a speed above 130 km/h[1)] has been set by the driver on motorways or similar roads, the vehicle will accelerate back up to this set speed after regulation for a specific event has been completed.
– The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
– If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.
– While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

## Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

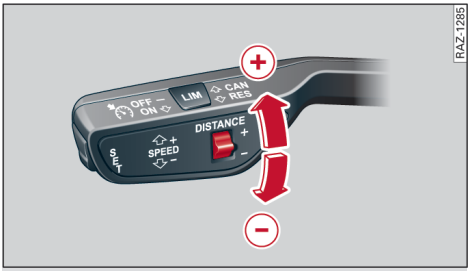



**Fig. 135** Control lever: Setting the distance

When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

▸ To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
▸ To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards ⊕/⊖.

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp .

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set:

| Symbol | Time-based distance | Distance at 100 km/h |
|---|---|---|
| | approx. 1 second | 28 m |
| | approx. 1.3 seconds | 36 m |
| | approx. 1.8 seconds (generally recommended) | 50 m |

1) Depending on country

| Symbol | Time-based distance | Distance at 100 km/h |
|---|---|---|
| | approx. 2.4 seconds | 67 m |
| | approx. 3.6 seconds | 100 m |

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– In the driver assist display, a graphic will be shown instead of the warning/indicator lamps. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.
– The acceleration style ranges from moderate to dynamic, depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting ⇨ *page 204, Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings*.
– The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

## Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

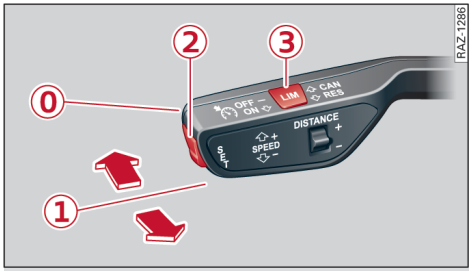



**Fig. 136** Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

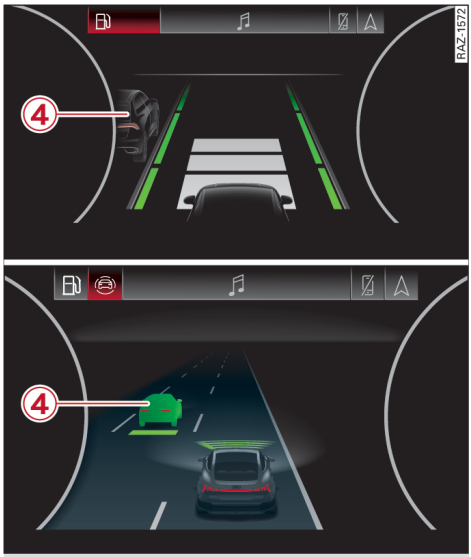



**Fig. 137** Instrument cluster: Overtake prevention without or with surroundings shown

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be activated for all additional functions.

### Overriding the regulating function

You can override the regulating function completely, e.g. to overtake another vehicle or accelerate faster. ▶

- To accelerate manually, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position[1] or press the accelerator.
- To reactivate the regulating function, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator.

If you are in the driver assist display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

### Reducing the distance[2]

If you wish to merge into another lane due to your lane ending, for example, you can reduce the distance even further for a short time. In such cases, the adaptive cruise assist may also accelerate the vehicle above the set speed if necessary.

- To reduce the distance to the vehicle in front even more temporarily, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow and hold it there.
- Release the lever to resume regular cruise control.

If you are in the driver assist display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

### Response when turn signals are on (to move into a slower lane)[2][1]

If you operate the turn signal to move into a slower lane, for example, the system's regulating function can be extended to the adjacent lane. When the function is activated, the adaptive cruise assist reduces your vehicle's speed so that you can filter into the adjacent lane behind the next vehicle more easily ⇨ ⚠.

Important: The activated system must have detected a motorway, the speed difference between the vehicles must be sufficiently small and there must be a sufficient distance between them. The traffic in which the vehicles are travelling must be flowing evenly.

- To activate the regulating function, operate the turn signal in the direction of the lane which you intend to move into.
- To stop the regulating function after a short time, switch the turn signal off again. If you press the accelerator pedal, the regulating function will be stopped immediately.

The distance to the vehicle in front in your lane will continue to be regulated within the limits of the system.

### Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

### Overtake prevention[3]

This driver message and the graphic ④ of a vehicle detected in the next lane appear when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left[3]. The graphic will only appear if you have called up the driver assist display on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 22* or selected the tab.

**WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
- The functions are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed ▶

[1] The function/equipment described was in the planning phase at the time of publication and may not be available in your vehicle.

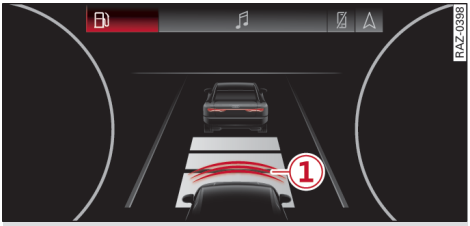
[2] Not available on vehicles for some markets.

[3] Depending on country

and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

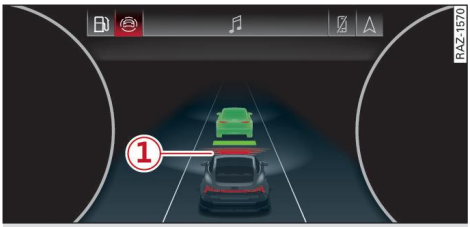
## Driving in congested traffic

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist




Applies to: driver assist display without surroundings shown

**Fig. 138** Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor




Applies to: driver assist display with surroundings shown

**Fig. 139** Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

### Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

The adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

### Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist[1)]

When a message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off is shown on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will automatically start moving ⇨ ⚠.

The system evaluates the driver's grip on the steering wheel in stop-and-go traffic. With at least one hand on the steering wheel, the driver is recognised to be ready and, in this way, can extend the period in which the vehicle is ready to drive off.

If the vehicle has been stopped for too long, the message will disappear and the vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

- ▸ You can extend or re-activate the period in which the vehicle is ready to drive off automatically for a short time by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 201, Fig. 136*.
- ▸ To set the vehicle in motion again immediately, tap the accelerator with your foot.

### Safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇨ ⚠. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if an obstacle is detected.

If you are in the driver assist display, this is also illustrated ① ⇨ *Fig. 138* along with the driver message **Warning!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

- ▸ If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– When the message indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive off[1)] is shown, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

**Note**

For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is activated only if
– the driver's seat belt is fastened,
– all the doors and the bonnet are closed, ▶

1) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

– the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

## Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the adaptive cruise assist settings individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Lane guidance** – You can select whether the lane guidance is activated together with the adaptive cruise assist.

**Driving program** – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the handling characteristics will range from **dynamic** to **moderate**, and the haptic feedback of the lane guidance will be adjusted accordingly.

**Store last distance** – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

**Note**

The Audi drive select mode **efficiency*** also affects the driving style and feel of the adaptive cruise assist. It may no longer be possible to set the **Driving program**.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist




Applies to: driver assist display with surroundings shown
**Fig. 140** Instrument cluster: Narrow section

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Narrow section**

This message appears in the driver assist display on some equipment versions when the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed to navigate a narrow section of road, e.g. in roadworks. The graphic (1) is only displayed on vehicles on which the surroundings are shown and only when the tab has been selected in the instrument cluster.

**Adaptive cruise assist: please take over.**

The adaptive cruise assist may be terminated, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. You must take control of the vehicle.

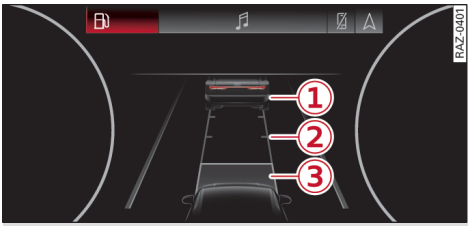
**Adaptive cruise assist: restricted. See owner's manual**

This driver message appears when the sensor vision is restricted, e.g. in adverse weather conditions or if a sensor is covered. You can still switch the adaptive cruise assist on; however certain functions, such as the narrowed road assist, will be unavailable. Some objects may be detected late or may not be detected at all in certain situations. Please take special care. It may be possible to rectify the issue by cleaning the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174*.

# Distance warning

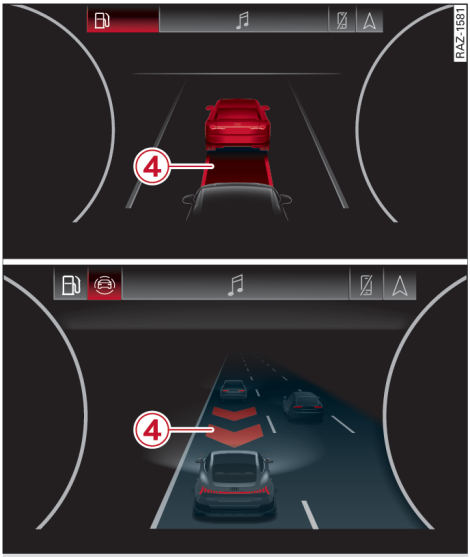
## Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning




Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and without surroundings shown

**Fig. 141** Instrument cluster showing the current distance




Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

**Fig. 142** Instrument cluster: Distance warning without or with surroundings shown

### How it works

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approximately 65 km/h when the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance. The warning lamp draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold.

### Driver assist display

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

The graphic will only appear if you have called up the driver assist display on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 22* or selected the tab.

① Driver assist display without surroundings shown: Vehicle detected in front

② Driver assist display without surroundings shown: You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 s.

③ Driver assist display without surroundings shown: Warning threshold set. The display is coloured from the bottom up, depending on the setting.

④ The actual distance is shorter than the set distance and your attention is drawn to the danger.

### Adjusting distance warning settings

You can switch the distance warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

– **Warning threshold**

### Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*. ▶

**Note**

– As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.

# Lane departure warning

## How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h[1)] and above. It is not available at very high speeds.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

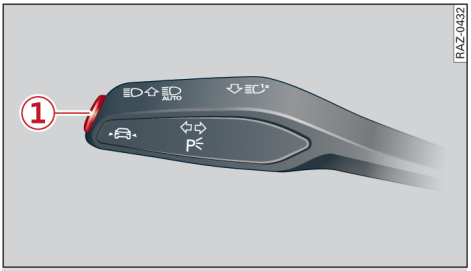
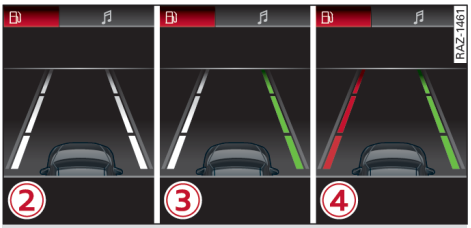



**Fig. 143** Turn signal lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance function of adaptive cruise assist*




Applies to: driver assist display without surroundings shown

**Fig. 144** Instrument cluster: Lane departure warning

### Switching the lane departure warning on/off

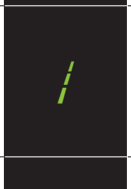
- You can switch the lane departure warning on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*, or
- Press and hold the button (1) on the turn signal lever until the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on or goes off.

### Overview of displays and warnings

Indicator lamps indicate whether the system is available and/or ready to give warnings.

The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving. ▶

1) 55 km/h in certain countries

| Driver assist[a] display | Warning and indicator lamps | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| ② White line(s) |  | The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings on the corresponding side. |
| ③ Green line(s) |  | The lane departure warning system is switched on and ready to give warnings on the corresponding side. |
| ④ Red line |  | The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation on the corresponding side. |
| - |  | Red lines on both sides: The lane guidance function of the emergency assist* is active ⇨ *page 216*. |
| - |   | The lane departure warning system is switched off[b]. A driver message is also displayed. |

a) Applies to vehicles with driver assist display with surroundings shown: Only the red lines are shown on the driver assist display.

b) The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the centre of the lane. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed. You can switch steering wheel vibration on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the lane departure warning system is not ready to give warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

– The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The bend is too tight.
– The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
– You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
– The turn signal was activated.

### Take over steering prompt

If the lane departure warning is triggered repeatedly and no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals, e.g. , to take over the steering. Actively take over the steering immediately and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be ready to warn after a short time and may only be available again later.

If you do not take over the steering, the lane departure warning will no longer be ready to give warnings and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇨ *page 216*.

### Response when turn signals are on

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, ▶

sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane.
– In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.

**Note**

– If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition[1].
– Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.
– The graphic will only appear in the driver assist display if you have called it up on the on-board computer ⇨ *page 22* or selected the tab.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning function and the lane guidance function of the adaptive cruise assist are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Audi pre sense

## Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

– The **Audi pre sense basic** system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.
– The **Audi pre sense front**[2] system can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
– The **Audi pre sense rear** system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.
– The **Audi pre sense side** system can detect an impending side collision with intersecting traffic or vehicles approaching from the side, and can activate protective functions.
– The **swerve assist** system can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action.
– The **turn assist** system can detect oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane when you are turning off and can react by applying the brakes if they are identified as critical.

## Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

– Visual and acoustic warnings.
– Activation of hazard warning lights[2].
– Reversible seat belt tensioners.
– Automatic closing of windows and panoramic glass roof. ▶

1) Varies depending on country and model
2) Not available on vehicles for some markets.

– Adjustment of the seats.
– Additional protective functions provided by the individual systems.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select* mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
– Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
  – If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
  – After the ignition is switched on while the indicator lamp is lit.
  – If the vehicle is reversing.
  – If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
  – The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
  – Applies to RS model: The system functions may not be available when an RS mode is activated in Audi drive select.

## Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers) or in the event of emergency/preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate protective functions ⇨ *page 208, Audi pre sense protective functions*.

The driver message **Audi pre sense** draws your attention to danger.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

In certain situations, Audi pre sense front can give a warning if there is a danger of a frontal collision, and can apply the brakes firmly if necessary. The system uses the camera behind the windscreen and is active at speeds above approx. 10 km/h.

### Driving situations

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:
– Pedestrians and cyclists in your lane.

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:
– A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
– You are approaching a much slower vehicle from behind.
– You are approaching a stationary vehicle.

### Advance warning

**Audi pre sense** will appear in the instrument cluster and a tone will sound to warn you of any dangers detected by the system.

### Brake jolt

In the event of an impending collision, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, your attention is drawn to the danger in the instrument cluster display. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

### Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

### Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, the system can, subject to general system limitations, apply the brakes heavily in order to reduce the impact of a potential collision. ▶

If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, **Please take control!** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The protection provided by Audi pre sense front is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
– Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
– Audi pre sense front may be restricted or unavailable in corners.
– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇨ *page 70*.
– If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual. The reaction of Audi pre sense front may be restricted or the system may be unavailable if the vehicle is towing a heavy load.

**Note**

Certain Audi pre sense front functions are deactivated while the downhill assist system is controlling the vehicle speed.

## Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear corners of the vehicle to calculate the probability of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

**Note**

– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
– The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the side assist.

## Audi pre sense side

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense side

Within certain system limits, Audi pre sense side can warn the driver in the event of an impending side collision with intersecting traffic or vehicles approaching from the side, and can activate the Audi pre sense protective functions.

The system uses additional sensors fitted at the front and rear of the vehicle and is active at speeds of up to approx. 60 km/h.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

– Audi pre sense side does not react to people, animals, or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

**Note**

– The functions of the Audi pre sense side system are restricted in towing mode.
– The Audi pre sense side functions may be deactivated if a fault develops in the intersection assist*.

## Swerve assist

Applies to: vehicles with swerve assist

The swerve assist can help you to steer around an obstacle in critical situations where you take sudden evasive action. If you take action to avoid an obstacle following an acute warning, the swerve assist will help you by braking individual wheels and applying a small amount of steering torque to correct your steering angle while you are steering actively. The swerve assist is available at speeds of between approx. 50 km/h and 150 km/h.

Depending on the country, the  symbol may appear in the instrument cluster when the swerve assist intervenes.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The swerve assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

**Note**

– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

## Turn assist

Applies to: vehicles with turn assist

When you start to take a turn-off to the left[1], the turn assist can prevent a collision with an oncoming vehicle by applying the brakes and keeping the vehicle in the lane you are in. This function is only available when you operate the turn signals and are driving at less than 10 km/h.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The turn assist does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.

**Note**

– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– You will be alerted on the instrument cluster display when the system intervenes.

## Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can switch Audi pre sense and the associated systems on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The systems can only be switched off/on when the vehicle is stationary.

If you switch Audi pre sense off, the indicator lamp  will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

**Note**

– If the system is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.
– Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system ▶

[1] In countries with left-hand traffic: A turn-off to the right

from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi pre sense system are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Stop the vehicle, switch the ignition off and clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174*.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the ignition back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

## Side assist

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

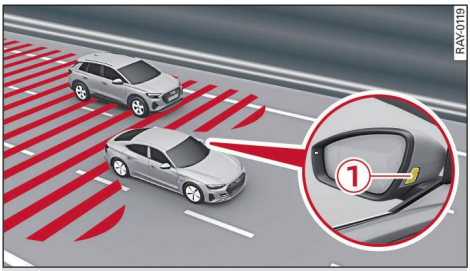



**Fig. 145** Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror




Applies to: driver assist display with surroundings shown
**Fig. 146** Instrument cluster: Side assist

#### How it works

The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic in the adjacent lanes behind your vehicle, thereby helping you when changing lane and turning off[1]. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal (1) lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

#### Driving situations

The side assist function is active at speeds above walking pace and can detect situations such as the following:

– Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
– You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
– You are turning off at a low speed[1].

#### Information mode

If you have not yet operated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical at speeds of above approx. 10 km/h.

This applies even when the vehicle is stationary if you operate the turn signal[1], so the system can be used when making a turn-off as well.

The system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by lighting up the warning signal (1) on the exterior mirror on the appropriate side.

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. ▶

[1] This function is not available in all vehicles.

### Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning ⇨ *page 206, Lane departure warning*.

### Instrument cluster display

Applies to: driver assist display with surroundings shown

In addition to the warning signal on the exterior mirror, a graphic for the side assist (information and warning level) is shown in the instrument cluster ②. The graphic ⇨ *Fig. 146* is only shown if the tab has been selected in the instrument cluster.

### System limits

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 119*. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

– When driving at the edge of your own lane
– When driving in narrow lanes
– When driving through a corner
– If there are high barriers next to the lane
– When driving through roadworks

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The warning signal may not light up in time or may not light up at all if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.

**Note**

– The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
– The systems are not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the systems may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 145* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

## Adjusting the side assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

You can switch the side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Brightness** – Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Please adjust the brightness of the warning signal for the information mode so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting.

**Note**

– The warning signals light up briefly each time the ignition is switched on to indicate that the system is activated.
– Applies to driver assist display with surroundings shown: The display will remain ▶

active in the instrument cluster if the side assist is switched off.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 119* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

## Exit warning

### Description

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

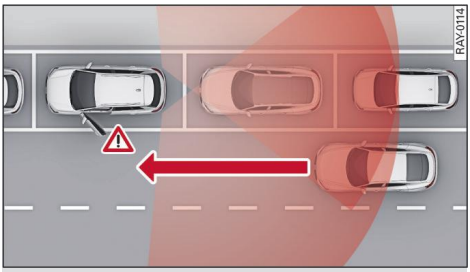



**Fig. 147** Detected traffic approaching from behind

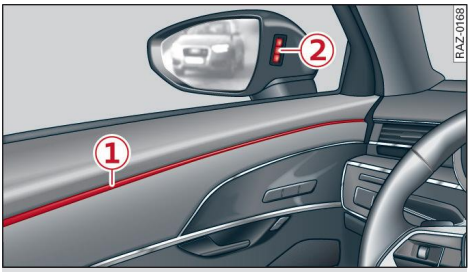



**Fig. 148** Front door: Warning strip

#### How it works

The exit warning system can recognise traffic approaching from behind (within certain system limitations) and warn you as you get out of the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 147*. The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle.

#### Display and warnings

If you pull one of the interior door handles when the vehicle is stationary and a road user judged by the system to be critical is approaching, the warning strip ① and the warning signal on the exterior mirror ② will light up on that side of the vehicle. At the same time, the door will be slightly delayed in opening.

The warning signals for the relevant side of the vehicle will flash when the door is opened. The warning signals will light up if a road user judged by the system to be critical approaches when the door is already open.

The driver messages for the exit warning system are identical to the messages for the side assist ⇨ *page 214*.

#### Switching the exit warning system on/off

– You can switch the exit warning system on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The exit warning system cannot replace the full concentration of the occupants. The vehicle occupants are always responsible for their own safety and the safety of other road users when opening the doors and leaving the vehicle.
– The exit warning does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.

– The exit warning does not react to stationary objects or persons.
– The exit warning does not react if the vehicle is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the vehicles in front and behind.

**Note**

– The exit warning system can remain available for approximately three minutes after unlocking the vehicle and opening the door or after switching off the ignition. After this period, the warning signals will light up briefly while the system is deactivated.
– The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 147* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

## Driver messages about the exit warning system

Applies to: vehicles with exit warning system

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the exit warning system functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 174, Fig. 119* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Intersection assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with intersection assist

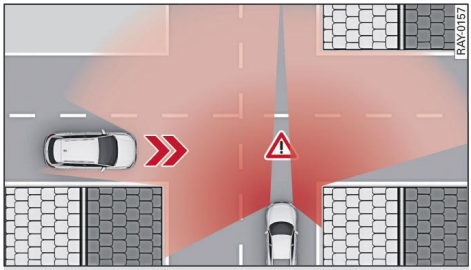



**Fig. 149** Detected intersecting traffic

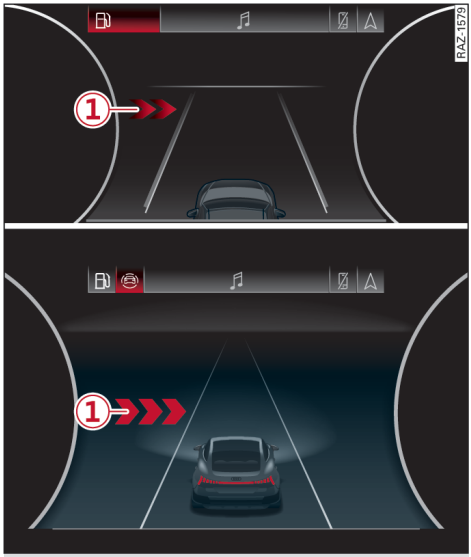



**Fig. 150** Instrument cluster: Intersection assist direction indicator without or with surroundings shown

### How it works

In complex intersection situations, the **intersection assist** can warn the driver if it detects traffic approaching from the side ⇨ *Fig. 149*.

Using the sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings, the system monitors the areas at the front and sides of the vehicle at intersections and blind exits. Under certain conditions, the system detects objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇨ ⚠. The system can also warn the driver of a potential collision with approaching ▶

traffic at blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see.

**Requirements for the use of the intersection assist:**

– The vehicle must not be travelling faster than approx. 30 km/h.
– Transmission position D must be selected.

**Displays, warnings and brake applications**

– **Display**: Red arrows ① may indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching. The symbols on the upper display only appear when the parking aid is activated. For vehicles with surround view cameras, the camera view must be set to **Front view** or **Corner view (front)**. The information is only shown on the instrument cluster ⇨ *Fig. 150* when the driver assist display is called up on the onboard computer ⇨ *page 22*. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the surroundings may be shown in the driver assist display if the tab has been selected in the instrument cluster.
– **Warnings**: The driver message **Cross-traffic!** may warn you of critical intersecting traffic when you are driving forwards. In addition, a tone may sound.
– **Automatic brake jolt**: If the driver does not react to a warning when the vehicle is driving forwards at speeds up to approx. 10 km/h, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

**Switching the intersection assist on/off**

– You can switch the intersection assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

**Driver messages**

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The intersection assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other vehicles are approaching very quickly.

**Note**

The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 149* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

# Emergency assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

**Introduction**

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane.

**Availability of the emergency assist**

Whether the emergency assist is available depends on whether you are using assist systems that intervene in the steering or driving manually, and whether the emergency assist is switched on or off in the **Driver assist** menu:

① You are driving with the adaptive cruise assist's lane guidance activated.
② You are driving with the lane departure warning switched on.
③ You are driving manually without any assist systems that intervene in the steering. ▶

| Driving situation | Availability when emergency assist | |
|---|---|---|
| | Is switched on | Is switched off |
| ① | At approx. 10 km/h and above | At approx. 10 km/h and above |
| ② | At approx. 65 km/h and above | At approx. 65 km/h and above |
| ③ | At approx. 65 km/h and above | Not available |

If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise assist or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted.

### Functions of the emergency assist

Phased measures can be taken. The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. The measures which can be taken depend on the hazard situation and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

– Visual and acoustic warnings
– Vehicle guidance
– Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
– Infotainment volume reduction
– Seat belt jolt
– Brake jolt
– Hazard warning lights are activated
– Audi pre sense protective functions are activated ⇨ *page 208*
– The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill

As soon as the vehicle has come to a standstill, it makes preparations for the occupants to be rescued. The parking brake is applied, transmission position P is selected, the doors are unlocked and the interior lights are turned on. A few seconds after the vehicle has stopped, an emergency call[1)] will be placed if necessary.

### Display

If is displayed, for instance, the emergency assist's lane guidance is active.

### Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist as follows ⇨ :

– Move the steering wheel, or
– Press the brake pedal, or
– Press the accelerator firmly.

When the vehicle is stationary, the emergency assist can be cancelled by moving out of transmission position P or by releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 125*.

### Switching the emergency assist on/off

You can switch the emergency assist on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

If you switch the system off, the indicator lamp will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

### Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by ▶

[1)] This function is not available on all models or in all countries.

taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.

**Note**

– Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
– After the emergency assist is activated, you must wait for a short period of time before it can be activated again.

# Parking and manoeuvring

## Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

### Parking aids

The **rear parking aid** gives you an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles behind the car ⇨ *page 219*.

When you are parking, the **parking aid plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside* the vehicle ⇨ *page 220*.

The **reversing camera** uses the MMI display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 223*.

The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇨ *page 223*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 227*.

The **manoeuvre assist** helps you to manoeuvre the vehicle ⇨ *page 241*.

### Assisted parking

The following systems help you to find suitable parking spaces and to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of them. The driver must always keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking/unparking manoeuvre.

The **park assist** helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of parking spaces. The system takes over the steering when parking in empty parking spaces. The driver must still accelerate, brake and change gears as necessary ⇨ *page 231*.

The **park assist plus** helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of empty parking spaces. This function can be used either from inside the vehicle by pressing a button ⇨ *page 233* or via the **remote park assist plus**[1)] remotely from outside the vehicle using a mobile device ⇨ *page 236*. The systems control steering movements, gear changes, acceleration and braking.

### Available settings

The parking aid functions can be adjusted individually. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– **Rear volume** ⇨ *page 220*
– **Automatic activation** ⇨ *page 220*
– **Front/rear volume** ⇨ *page 221*
– **Entertainment fader** ⇨ *page 221*
– **Clean reversing camera** ⇨ *page 223*
– **Trailer view** ⇨ *page 224*
– **View** ⇨ *page 226*
– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇨ *page 228*
– **Manoeuvre assist** ⇨ *page 242*

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

## Rear parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

### How it works

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system. When the rear sensors (in the rear bumper) ⇨ *page 172, Fig. 116* detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps). The system is ▶

1) The availability of the system may be restricted in certain countries.

activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

### Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇨ (!).

### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Rear volume** – Volume for the rear zone.

**Entertainment fader** – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

**Note**

– The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
– A distance warning will NOT be given if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

## Parking aid plus

### Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

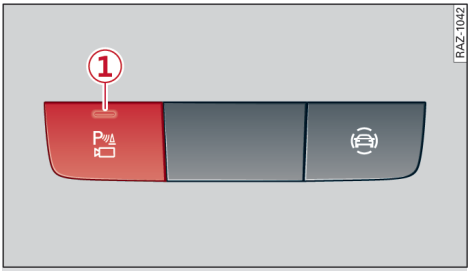



**Fig. 151** Centre console: Button for parking aid

### How it works

The parking aid plus will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇨ *page 172, Fig. 116*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

### Activating/deactivating

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h.

▸ Press the P button (1) in the centre console.

In some countries, the system cannot be deactivated when reverse gear is selected.

### Automatic activation

▸ The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected, or: ▶

The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under approximately 10 km/h and **Automatic activation** is switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

### Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when you are travelling forwards at speeds of approximately 10 km/h and above.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**CAUTION**

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

**Note**

– If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only reactivated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:
  – The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
  – The ignition is switched off and on again.
  – The parking brake is applied and released again.
  – Transmission position P is selected and then another position is selected.

## Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

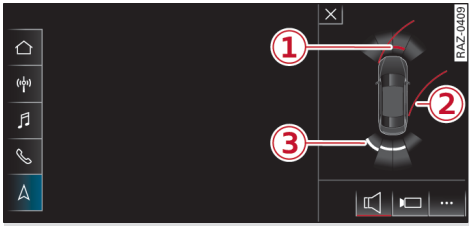



**Fig. 152** Upper display: Distance indicator

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.

### Visual warnings

The visual warnings on the upper display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines ② indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③ indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

### Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the front or rear of the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side* of the vehicle; in this case, you should not drive forward or reverse any further ⇨ (!).

▸ To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press 🔇 in the upper display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated.

### Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

**Front volume** – Volume for the front and side* zones. ▶

**Rear volume** – Volume for the rear zone.

**Entertainment fader** – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

### Fault warnings

If P appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If is shown on the MMI, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174*.

If P or P is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
– Applies to vehicles with assisted parking functions: If you use the assisted parking functions to park in short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!

**Note**

– The segments in the side zone* ⇨ *page 172, Fig. 116* are detected and evaluated as the vehicle moves past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.
– The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
– There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

# Reversing camera/ surround view cameras

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

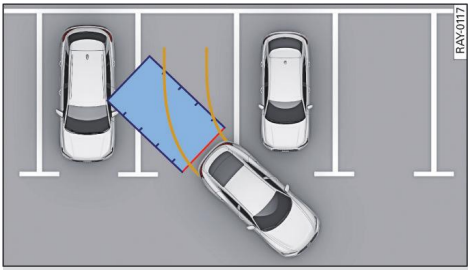



**Fig. 153** Display showing orientation lines for parking

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available.

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

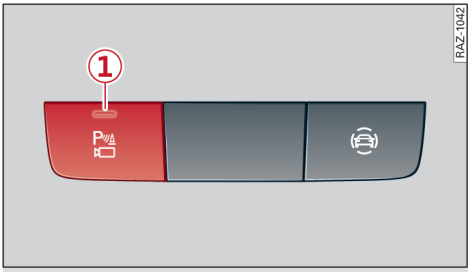



**Fig. 154** Centre console: Button for parking aid

### Activating/deactivating

- Press the button (1) in the centre console, or
- Press on the upper display when the distance indicator is shown ⇨ *page 221, Fig. 152*.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

On some equipment versions, the system can also be activated at higher speeds.

### Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

### Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Cleaning the reversing camera

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

You can start the camera cleaning process manually. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Select ··· > **Clean reversing camera** on the upper display with the parking aid activated, or:
- Move the wiper lever into the position for cleaning the rear window ⇨ *page 66*.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

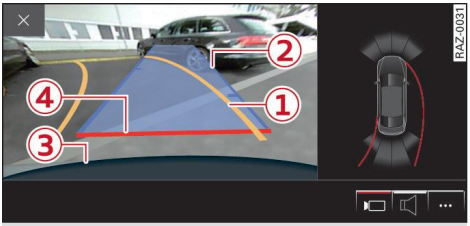
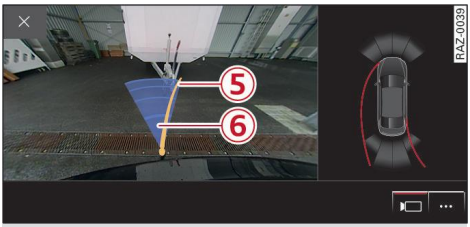



**Fig. 155** Upper display: Approaching a parking space




Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

**Fig. 156** Upper display: Trailer view

When using the reversing camera/surround view cameras to help you park, the acoustic and visual warnings from the parking aid plus will provide you with further guidance ⇨ *page 221*.

### Visual orientation lines

① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.

② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the horizontal blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue area is an extension of the vehicle outline to the rear of the vehicle.

③ You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.

④ You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle.

### Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Important: The reversing camera or surround view cameras must be activated.

– Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras: Switch to the **Rear view** ⇨ *page 225, Fig. 157*.

– Select ⋯ > **Trailer view** on the upper display with the parking aid activated.

The trailer view ⇨ *Fig. 156* helps you to position the vehicle in front of a trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇨ *Fig. 156* indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.3 m. The width of the blue area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

### Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

If /// is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If is shown, the corresponding ultrasonic sensor is iced up or dirty. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174*.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely ▶

on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

– The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
– Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
– Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

**Note**

– Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines and the blue area markings on the camera display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.
– There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

## How to use the surround view cameras

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

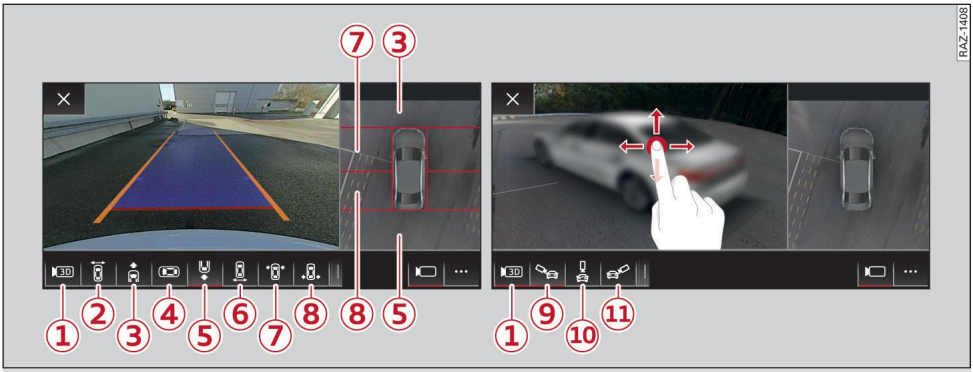



**Fig. 157** Upper display: Rear view (left-side); 3D overhead view (right-side)

On vehicles with surround view cameras, you can choose from a selection of different views.

The camera views can be controlled via the touch display. In some views, you can move or zoom in/out of the displayed area and tilt/rotate the **3D overhead view**.

### Selecting views

▸ To display the whole selection bar, tap on the current view ② or swipe the edge of the selection bar from left to right[1)]. ▶

[1)] In some countries the gesture is made in the opposite direction. The order of the views may differ. However, the symbols used to identify the views are the same.

- To select a view, press ② – ⑧ or tap on an area on either side of the vehicle[1].
- To select a **3D overhead view**, press on the symbol 3D ①. Then select your preferred **3D overhead view** ⑨ – ⑪.

### Switching quickly between views

To switch quickly between views (e.g. from **Corner view (front)** to **Front view**):

- Tap twice on the camera picture, or:
- Drag the camera picture to one side with two fingers using a pull/pinch movement.

### Zooming in/out of a view

Applies to: Overhead view and 3D overhead view

- To zoom in/out of an area, place two fingers on the area and move them apart or pinch them together ⇨ *Fig. 157* (left-side).

### Moving a view

Applies to: Overhead view and 3D overhead view

- To move a view, press on it with one finger and drag it in the desired direction.
- To centre the **3D overhead view** again, tap twice on the camera picture.

### Tilting/rotating a view

Applies to: 3D overhead view

- To tilt/rotate the **3D overhead view**, swipe your finger in the desired direction ⇨ *Fig. 157* (right side).
- To centre the **3D overhead view** behind the vehicle again, tap twice on the camera picture.

### Settings for the side of the display

The overhead view is shown on the side of the display. You can change the view in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*. You can switch between **graphic** and **camera**.

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ① | 3D | Switch between **3D overhead view** and **Overhead view** |
| ② | **Corner view (front)** or Display selection bar | This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle. |
| ③ | **Front view** | This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring. |
| ④ | **Overhead view** | This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇨ ⚠. |
| ⑤ | **Rear view** | This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed. |
| ⑥ | **Corner view (rear)** | This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle. |
| ⑦ | **Front tyres** | This view helps you monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle. |

[1] Important: The area around the vehicle (**camera**) must be selected and visible in the side **view**.

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ⑧ | **Rear tyres** | This view helps you monitor the distance from the rear tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle. |
| ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ | **3D overhead view** | In these views you can monitor the area around the vehicle in 3D while parking. The view of the area around the vehicle is generated using camera images and data from the sensors. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇨ ⚠. |

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The **overhead view** and **3D overhead view** are generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

**CAUTION**

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

**Note**

– Depending on the gear selected, the system will switch automatically between the suitable views (**Front view** or **Rear view**). If you change the view manually, the system will temporarily stop switching between views automatically.
– **Corner view (front)** is displayed the first time you activate the system while in a forward gear.

# Rear cross-traffic assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

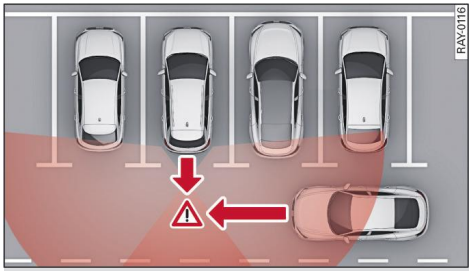



**Fig. 158** Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist

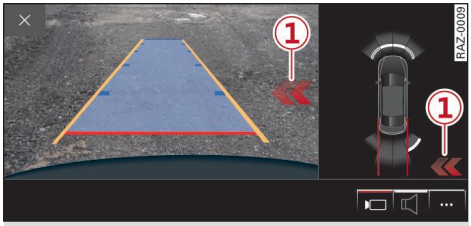



**Fig. 159** Upper display: Display for rear cross-traffic assist

### How it works

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇨ *Fig. 158*. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by an MMI display ① and various warnings.

### Requirements for the use of the rear cross-traffic assist:

– The parking aid must be activated ⇨ *page 220*. ▶

– The vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 10 km/h.

### Displays, warnings and braking

– **Display**: The arrows ① only appear when the parking aid is activated. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the arrows only appear for camera views **Rear view** and **Corner view (rear)**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.
– **Acoustic warnings**: A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.
– **Automatic brake jolt**: If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

### Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

You can switch the rear cross-traffic assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

### Driver messages

If , or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as bicycles. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
– The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other objects are approaching very quickly.
– The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

**Note**

– After an automatic brake jolt, no further brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds.
– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.
– The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
– The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 158* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

## Assisted parking

### How it works

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist, the park assist plus or the remote park assist plus, these systems will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the laser scanner may improve the measurement.

Once a parking space has been found, the systems provide assistance with parking while you monitor the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids and cameras*. ▶

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Options for driving into a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

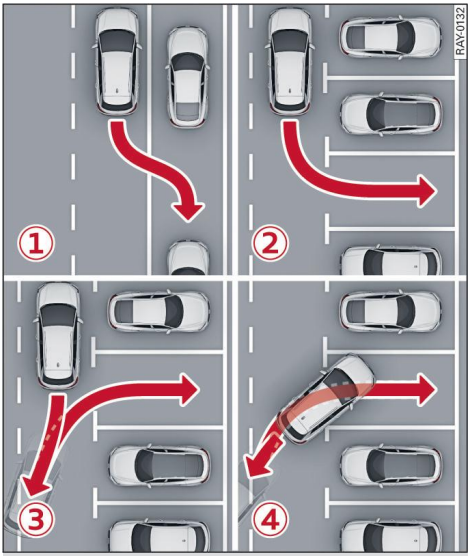



**Fig. 160** Overview of parking options

The following parking options may be available to you depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and when the system is activated:

– After using the parking space search function ① – ③ ⇨ *page 229, Finding a parking space*.

– After attempting to park the vehicle when you have started driving into the parking space yourself ④. The front of the vehicle should already be far enough inside the parking space so that the sensors can determine the size of the space.

① Reversing into parallel parking spaces

② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces

③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them

④ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces

## Options for driving out of a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking

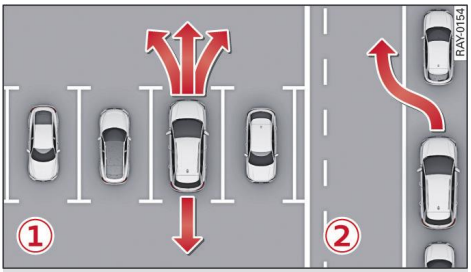



**Fig. 161** Overview of options for driving out of a parking space

The following options for driving out of a parking space may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

① Driving out of perpendicular parking spaces[1)]

② Driving out of parallel parking spaces

## Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with assisted parking




**Fig. 162** Upper display: Parking space search function activated

① Display showing options for parking

② Arrows and symbols indicate the driver response required while searching for a parking space (e.g. continue driving forwards or apply brakes)

③ Parking spaces detected and selected by the system

1) Only remote-controlled parking

### Activating the parking space search function

- Press P on the lower display, or
- To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is activated, press P on the upper display.

The upper display will show the vehicle looking for a parking space ⇨ *Fig. 162*.

### Looking for a parking space

- Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
- The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space on the other side of the road, activate the corresponding turn signal. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, you can also press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the upper display.

### Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space ①.

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Press on one of the suggested options ①.

### Starting the parking manoeuvre

Follow the visual instructions on the upper display ② to reach the correct starting position. A **P** will appear in the intended parking space ③ as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position.

- Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇨ ⓘ.

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle and the regulations in your country, you may be able to use different systems to drive into a parking space after selecting one of the options ①:

– In the vehicle: Parking with the park assist ⇨ *page 231*.
– In the vehicle: Parking with the park assist plus and the [>>P] button ⇨ *page 234*.
– Outside the vehicle: Remote-controlled parking using a mobile device ⇨ *page 236*.

### Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇨ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking manoeuvre or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

– Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
– Certain objects (e.g. trees and pillars/posts) or surfaces (e.g. gravel, snow and ice) in and around the parking space can cause unexpected results when parking – risk of collision.
– The assisted parking systems must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted. ▶

**Note**

– You can activate the system after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press P.
– The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
– You can approach a perpendicular parking space forwards and then activate the system. However, for this purpose the front of the vehicle must already be in the space (4) ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 160* so that the sensors can measure the space.
– The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
– If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals or press on the corresponding side on the upper display to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.
– Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on tight bends.

# Park assist

## How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Once a parking space has been found, the park assist helps you to drive the vehicle into and out of the space. The park assist steers the vehicle while you operate the accelerator and brake pedal and monitor the area around the vehicle. The park assist can be stopped at any time.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

– Do not use the park assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle, if snow chains are fitted or if the parking space is on a slope.
– In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

**Note**

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist.

## Using the park assist to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇨ *page 229*. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle (2) ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 162* on the upper display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

▸ After you have been stationary for a moment, check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist. ▶

- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇨ ⚠. The maximum manoeuvring speed is approx. 7 km/h.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the display and the warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

**Note**

You can cancel the direction of travel given by the system before parking by shifting between forwards and reverse gear. The system will then calculate the further path and steering directions for the manoeuvre based on the position of the vehicle.

## Using the park assist to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist to drive out of the parking space.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle ② ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 162* on the upper display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Press P on the lower display.
- ▸ Wait until a message appears on the upper display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▸ Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the upper display.
- ▸ Check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇨ ⚠. The maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h.
- ▸ Follow the instructions on the upper display and the acoustic warning tones until the manoeuvre is complete.
- ▸ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Actively take over the steering immediately ⇨ ⓘ.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

**CAUTION**

Actively take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position.

## Stopping the park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist stops automatically in the following situations:
– If you switch off the system.
– If you intervene in the steering.
– If the speed becomes too high.
– If the time limit is exceeded.
– If an obstacle is detected.
– If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and stop the park assist manually, or
– In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Press P.
– To continue unparking with the park assist, switch the engine off/on. Press P.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the indicator lamp P OFF, P OFF or P lights up, the park assist is unavailable or has been stopped.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Park assist plus

## How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

The park assist plus parks the vehicle after a parking space has been found, and can drive it out of a parallel parking space afterwards. The park assist plus takes over the steering, gear changes, acceleration and braking while the driver presses and holds the >>P button and monitors the area around the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

**CAUTION**

– Do not use the park assist plus if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– In certain situations, the park assist plus and the remote-controlled parking will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

**Note**

– Only use the park assist plus when the country-specific regulations permit it. The use of the system may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– Depending on the country, the system may be deactivated due to a comparison with a ▶

country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi.

## Using the park assist plus to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

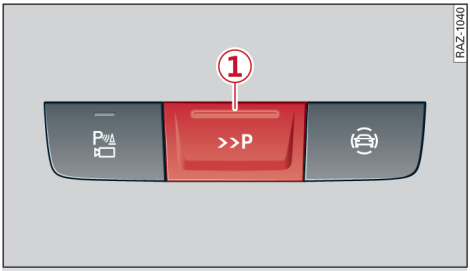



**Fig. 163** Centre console: Button for park assist plus

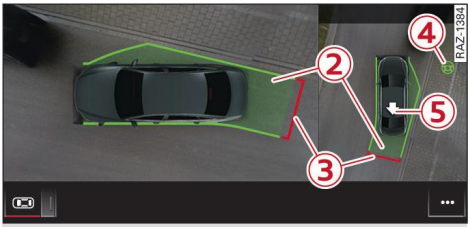



**Fig. 164** Upper display: Display for park assist plus

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇨ *page 229*. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with and the brake must be applied.

- ▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press and hold the >>P button ① and release the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Stop the parking manoeuvre by releasing the >>P button if the situation is unclear. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- ▸ To resume the parking manoeuvre, press and hold the >>P button again. The rest of the parking manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

### LED in button ①

The LED indicates the availability of the park assist plus:

– **White, pulsating** – The park assist plus is ready to perform the parking manoeuvre or to resume after an interruption.
– **Green** – The park assist plus is active.
– **Red** – The park assist plus is unavailable or has been stopped. A driver message appears on the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 236*.

### View in upper display

The current driving manoeuvre and the status of the park assist plus are shown in the upper display:

② Path to be travelled by the vehicle during the current parking manoeuvre
③ Final position of the current parking manoeuvre/direction change
④ Park assist plus active
⑤ Direction of travel

### End of parking manoeuvre

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully using the park assist plus, the parking lock will be engaged and the parking brake will be applied.

Stopping the park assist plus ⇨ *page 236*.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Press and hold the >>P button only if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
– The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches ▸

between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

**Note**

– You can reduce the speed specified by the system at any time by pressing the brake pedal.
– Objects which mark the edges of the parking space (e.g. bollards) may be misinterpreted by the system. Take control of the vehicle and perform the parking manoeuvre manually ⇨ *page 236* if the vehicle is not fully inside the parking space or if the vehicle attempts to drive beyond the edge of the parking space.
– The display shows an enlarged and distorted view. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately. This applies in particular to objects which are not touching the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle or the rear end of a truck. Drive with extra care and watch the road rather than the display if necessary.
– Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The orientation lines and the green area markings on the display are less accurate when the vehicle is raised/lowered using the air suspension.
– Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The system is not available when the suspension is set to the highest level, such as when Audi drive select is set to offroad* mode.

## Using the park assist plus to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist plus to drive out of the parking space.

▸ Start the engine.
▸ Press P on the lower display.
▸ Wait until a message appears on the upper display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
▸ Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the upper display.
▸ Select a transmission position.
▸ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
▸ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press and hold the >>P button ① ⇨ *page 234, Fig. 163* and release the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
▸ If an obstacle appears, stop the unparking manoeuvre by releasing the >>P button. The vehicle will come to a halt.
▸ To resume the unparking manoeuvre, press and hold the >>P button again.
▸ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Actively take over the steering immediately ⇨ ⓘ.

Stopping the park assist plus ⇨ *page 236*.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Press and hold the >>P button only if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.
– The park assist plus serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
– When the park assist plus is being used, the steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

**CAUTION**

Take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position. ▶

**Note**

You can reduce the speed specified by the system or stop the vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

## Stopping the park assist plus

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

You can stop the park assist plus at any time by releasing the >>P button ① ⇨ *page 234, Fig. 163*. To resume the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press and hold the >>P button again.

### Function stops automatically

The park assist plus stops automatically under the following circumstances:

– If you switch off the system
– If you move the steering wheel by hand or press the accelerator;
– If the time limit has been exceeded
– If an obstacle is detected
– If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and complete the parking/unparking manoeuvre manually, or

In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Keep the brakes applied and press P.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist plus

If the indicator lamp P OFF, P OFF or P lights up, the park assist is unavailable or has been stopped.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Remote-controlled parking[1)]

## How it works

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus

Remote-controlled parking is part of the park assist plus function. A mobile device can be used to drive the vehicle into or out of a parking space while the driver is outside the vehicle. You must keep the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person to do so. The system takes over the steering, gear changes, acceleration and braking, as well as locking the vehicle, while you operate the vehicle remotely and monitor the area around the vehicle. For fault-free parking/unparking there should be nobody in the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Remote-controlled parking serves merely as a driver assist function. As the driver you are always responsible for driving the vehicle, manoeuvring and stopping.
– Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
– Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone. Operate the function in the proximity of the vehicle. Make sure you have a good view of your vehicle and its ▶

1) The availability of the system may be restricted in certain countries.

surroundings. Do not let yourself be distracted.
– Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Danger of fatal injury to any persons – especially children – locked inside the vehicle. The vehicle is locked when the remote-controlled parking function is in use. Before and after using the remote-controlled parking function, always make sure that no persons are inside the vehicle and observe the instructions for the safelock ⇨ *page 43*.
– Never run the engine in confined spaces and always check that the engine is switched off after using the remote-controlled parking function. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
– Risk of accident due to problems occurring when operating the myAudi app. Do not exit the app during the parking manoeuvre, and make sure that the app is not forced into the background by answering incoming calls or similar. Please observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of your mobile device.
– There is a risk of accident if the connection is interrupted. In certain cases, the connection between the mobile device and the vehicle may be interrupted e.g. by other transmitters or if the device is too far from the vehicle. Make sure that you have an adequate connection and, if in any doubt, perform the parking manoeuvre in the usual way from inside the vehicle.
– Risk of accident if any notifications, sounds or vibrations are disabled. The myAudi app can only warn you of any dangers detected if you have made sure that your mobile device allows all notifications, sounds and vibrations from the myAudi app.

**CAUTION**

– Do not use remote-controlled parking if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle or if snow chains are fitted.
– In certain situations, the remote-controlled parking will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
– When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.

**Note**

– Only use remote-controlled parking when the country-specific regulations permit it. The use of the system may be restricted or prohibited in certain countries. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
– Depending on the country, remote-controlled parking may be deactivated due to a comparison with a country list. Data are not transmitted to Audi.
– The person using the mobile device for remote-controlled parking is considered as the driver of the vehicle and an active road user. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations for using remote-controlled parking.
– Always make sure that you are not putting any other persons at risk when using remote-controlled parking. We recommend that you try out the remote-controlled parking function in a quiet location such as a car park.
– Your mobile phone should be charged sufficiently; if necessary, recharge it before starting your journey.
– Do not use the remote-controlled parking function on devices which are damaged or impaired in any way. Only use operating systems approved by the manufacturer of the mobile device.
– While using the remote-controlled parking function, always keep a close eye on your vehicle to make sure that no persons are able to enter the vehicle; make sure that the vehicle is locked after the parking manoeuvre is complete. Take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle.

## Setting up[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus

Before using this system for the first time, the following steps must be performed:

- ▸ Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.
- ▸ Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- ▸ Specify the key user ⇨ *page 37*.
- ▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

### Device compatibility

The mobile device is checked at the start of a parking manoeuvre. If any form of incompatibility is detected, this is shown in the myAudi app. Audi advises against using the function if any form of incompatibility is detected ⇨ ⚠.

You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth. It is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of mobile device. Availability depends on a number of factors including:

- – Brand and version of the mobile device
- – Version of the operating system on the mobile device
- – Software version of the app in use
- – Individual settings on the mobile device

**⚠ WARNING**

- – Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- – There is a risk of accident if incompatible mobile devices are used. As soon as a functional restriction is shown, it is possible that e.g. the vehicle's speed of reaction will be impaired due to a reduced speed of transmission.

## Parking options[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, you may have the following parking options with remote-controlled parking:

### Driving into a space

- – Driving into parallel spaces on either side of the road ① ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 160*
- – Driving forwards or reversing into perpendicular spaces ②/③ ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 160*

### Driving out of a space

- – Driving out of perpendicular parking spaces ① ⇨ *page 229, Fig. 161*
- – Driving out of parallel parking spaces ②

**⚠ WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Using the myAudi app to drive into a space[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus




**Fig. 165** Upper display: Remote-controlled parking – preparing the vehicle

### Requirements

- ▸ Set-up must have been performed.
- ▸ You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.
- ▸ Bluetooth must be activated on the mobile device and on the MMI ⇨ *page 307*. ▶

[1)] The availability of the system may be restricted in certain countries.

- A suitable parking space must have been found and a parking option selected, e.g. a parallel parking space (1).
- The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.
- The ESC must not be restricted or switched off.

### Preparing the vehicle

- To activate the selected parking space (2) for remote-controlled parking, press (3) on the upper display.
- If you have already used the assist function to start driving into a parking space, remote-controlled parking can be activated to continue the parking manoeuvre. To activate remote-controlled parking, press on the upper display.
- Get out of the vehicle with the engine running; take the vehicle key with you. Always carry both the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person throughout the entire remote-controlled parking manoeuvre.
- Make sure that all doors and the boot lid are closed.

### Starting the parking manoeuvre

- Start the myAudi app promptly; otherwise the function will be cancelled.
- Watch the road. If the traffic situation permits, park your vehicle in the parking space using your mobile device ⇨ ⚠. The vehicle key and the mobile device must be within a range of about 6 m from the vehicle.
- Use the mobile device to stop the parking manoeuvre if the situation is unclear. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- To resume the parking manoeuvre, start the parking manoeuvre again using the mobile device. The rest of the parking manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

### Manoeuvre interrupted unexpectedly

- If the manoeuvre is interrupted unexpectedly due to the vehicle key, move to a different location with the mobile device and vehicle key and continue the manoeuvre.

### End of parking manoeuvre

If an obstacle appears, stop the parking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 240*.

The parking manoeuvre ends automatically as soon as the vehicle reaches its final position in the parking space. When a parking manoeuvre has been completed successfully, the parking lock is engaged, the parking brake is applied and the engine is switched off. Additionally, the vehicle is locked.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

**Note**

- The parking manoeuvre can only be started if the vehicle key is outside the vehicle after the vehicle has been prepared. Always carry both the vehicle key and the mobile device on your person throughout the entire remote-controlled parking manoeuvre.
- The remote-controlled parking function may be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
  - If the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a malfunction has occurred.
  - If another vehicle key is located in the vehicle or nearby.
  - Applies to vehicles with air suspension: If the suspension is set to the highest level, such as if Audi drive select is set to off-road* mode.
- Objects which mark the edges of the parking space (e.g. bollards) may be misinterpreted by the system. Take control of the vehicle and perform the parking manoeuvre manually ⇨ *page 240* if the vehicle is not fully inside the parking space or if the vehicle attempts to drive beyond the edge of the parking space.

## Using the myAudi app to drive out of a space[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus

### Starting a manoeuvre

- ▸ Start the myAudi app.
- ▸ Start the engine promptly in the myAudi app. To do so, the vehicle key and the mobile device must be within a range of about 3 metres from the vehicle.
- ▸ Start the manoeuvre promptly with your mobile device; otherwise the function will be cancelled.
- ▸ Watch the road. If the traffic situation permits, drive your vehicle out of the parking space using your mobile device ⇨ ⚠. The vehicle key and the mobile device must be within a range of about 6 metres from the vehicle during the remote-controlled parking manoeuvre.
- ▸ Use the mobile device to stop the unparking manoeuvre if the situation is unclear. For example, you should do so if an obstacle appears or if the vehicle is getting very close to an obstacle.
- ▸ To resume the manoeuvre, start it again using the mobile device. The rest of the manoeuvre is then re-calculated based on the vehicle's position.

### Manoeuvre interrupted unexpectedly

- ▸ If the manoeuvre is interrupted unexpectedly due to the vehicle key, move to a different location with the mobile device and vehicle key and continue the manoeuvre.

### End of manoeuvre

If an obstacle appears, stop the unparking manoeuvre ⇨ *page 240*.

The manoeuvre is over when the maximum distance has been covered or no more manoeuvring is necessary in order to drive out of the space. Unlock and take control of the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

- – Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
- – Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

## Stopping the remote-controlled parking[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with remote park assist plus

To stop the vehicle, you can briefly interrupt remote-controlled parking with your mobile device at any time.

You can also cancel the parking/unparking manoeuvre completely with the vehicle key and bring the vehicle to a halt immediately by pressing any button on the vehicle key. You should therefore always carry the vehicle key with you during remote-controlled parking.

### Function stops automatically

The remote-controlled parking stops completely automatically e.g. in the following situations:

- – If the myAudi app is not started promptly after you get out of the vehicle;
- – If you switch off the system
- – If the time limit has been exceeded
- – If the ESC intervenes.

### Taking over the parking manoeuvre

When the parking manoeuvre is stopped, the vehicle is brought to a halt and transmission position P is engaged. Take control of the vehicle, complete the parking manoeuvre manually and park the vehicle safely. You can also restart the entire parking manoeuvre from inside the vehicle. ▶

[1)] The availability of the system may be restricted in certain countries.

**WARNING**

– Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.
– Risk of accident if insufficient attention is paid to the area around the vehicle. Only use your mobile device to park the vehicle if you are certain that there are no obstacles in the path of travel or underneath the vehicle, and that no obstacles are about to move into the path of travel.

**Note**

The parking/unparking manoeuvre is interrupted briefly if an obstacle is detected.

# Manoeuvre assist

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with manoeuvre assist

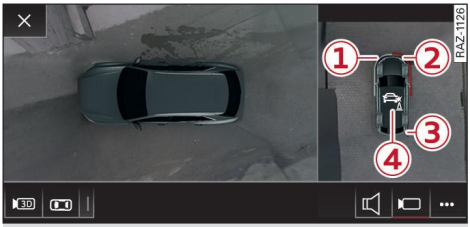



**Fig. 166** Upper display: Manoeuvre assist

### How it works

The manoeuvre assist helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by using sensors to monitor the area at the front, rear and side of the vehicle. In the event of an impending collision with another object, the system intervenes, within certain system limits, and attempts to prevent a collision by braking the vehicle. The system can detect objects higher than approx. 20 cm.

### Display overview

The symbols and indicators ① – ④ show the status and availability of the manoeuvre assist.

① The white border indicates availability in this area.

② The red border indicates an impending obstacle.

③ A missing border indicates an inactive area (partial availability).

④ Activating/deactivating manoeuvre assist and status display:
– Manoeuvre assist activated. The vehicle has a white surround. If the sensors are only partially available, the white surround is only visible in the areas being monitored.
– Manoeuvre assist temporarily deactivated.
– (symbol greyed out): Manoeuvre assist unavailable.
– No symbol: The manoeuvre assist has been permanently deactivated in the settings.

### Automatic braking

The vehicle can be braked automatically if a potential collision with a static object is impending. If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill, the message **Manoeuvre assist: vehicle has been braked. Obstacle detected** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

If you continue driving towards an obstacle after the vehicle has been stopped, the system automatically deactivates the manoeuvre assist temporarily until the next manoeuvring situation.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

**Note**

– The system is only partially available if towing mode is detected. The white frame is not displayed in the areas which are inactive. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.
– If the indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening and the manoeuvre assist is cancelled. ▶

– The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
– The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on or the park assist plus is being used.

## Activating/deactivating the manoeuvre assist

Applies to: vehicles with manoeuvre assist

### Requirements

- The manoeuvre assist must be switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*.
- The vehicle must not be travelling faster than approx. 10 km/h.

### Automatic activation

The manoeuvre assist is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

### Temporary deactivation

You can deactivate the manoeuvre assist temporarily if you do not wish to use it during a parking cycle. If the manoeuvre assist has been deactivated temporarily, it will automatically be reactivated the next time the parking aid is activated.

- To deactivate the manoeuvre assist temporarily, press ④ ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 166* on the upper display. The symbol will appear.

If you continue driving towards an obstacle after the vehicle has been stopped, the system automatically deactivates the manoeuvre assist temporarily until the next manoeuvring situation.

### Manual activation

Depending on the situation, you can activate the manoeuvre assist in different ways:

- To activate the manoeuvre assist manually (e.g. when driving forwards), press the button in the centre console.
- If the manoeuvre assist has been temporarily deactivated, you can activate it again by pressing ④ ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 166* on the upper display. The symbol will appear.

### Switching off/on permanently

You can switch the manoeuvre assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

If the manoeuvre assist is permanently deactivated, there will no longer be a symbol in the centre of the vehicle graphic ④ ⇨ *page 241, Fig. 166*.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limitations of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 171* to ⇨ *page 174*.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with manoeuvre assist

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the manoeuvre assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 174* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

# Telephone

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can use a wide range of telephone functions in your vehicle conveniently via the MMI.

The following options may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth
– Using two telephones
– Using the Audi phone box

**WARNING**

– According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
  – Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  – If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
– The speech dialogue system* ⇨ *page 34* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
– Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the drive system.
– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 26, Notes on traffic safety*.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle.
– You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

## Setting up

### Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to more than one mobile phone.

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇨ *page 307* and the mobile phone.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
▸ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

**After connecting successfully**

The contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several ▶

minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and the type of connection, you can use the following functions:

### Using the handsfree system

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (HFP).

The handsfree system is available for use. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

### Sending and receiving text messages

Refer to ⇨ *page 251*.

**Note**

– Please note any system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.
– You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone. The visibility of the MMI must be set to **Visible** ⇨ *page 307*.
– Bluetooth devices only have to be paired once. Any devices that have already been paired with the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
– You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones in the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 307*.
– The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

## Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can connect two mobile phones simultaneously via Bluetooth HFP to the MMI system (e.g. your business and personal mobiles). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile: You can send and receive messages with both mobile phones ⇨ *page 251*.

### Connecting a second mobile phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI. The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

▸ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇨ *page 307* and the mobile phone.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > , or
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **DEVICES** > **Telephone 1** / **Telephone 2** > **New connection**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.
▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.
▸ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

### After connecting successfully

Refer to ⇨ *page 243, After connecting successfully*.

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI. ▶

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > .

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

## Disconnecting a mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Use the Connected devices menu to disconnect a connected Bluetooth device ⇨ *page 308*.

# Using the Audi phone box

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

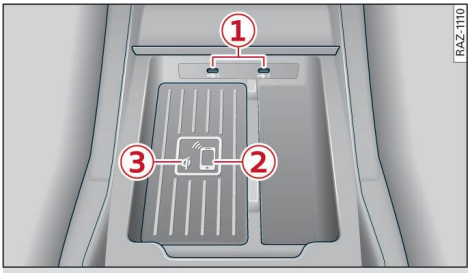



**Fig. 167** Storage compartment underneath the centre armrest: Audi phone box with connections

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions with the Audi phone box:

– Making and receiving calls using the vehicle's external aerial
– Charging your mobile phone via USB input
– Wireless mobile phone charging
– Reminder signal

### Restrictions

In some situations, the functions of the Audi phone box may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

– More than one mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box.
– The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
– There are objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
– The mobile phone is not in the centre of the Audi phone box.

**WARNING**

– Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Operate the mobile device via the MMI only. Keep the centre armrest folded down while driving.

## Making and receiving calls using the external aerial

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ To make a phone call on your mobile phone via the vehicle's external aerial, place the mobile phone on the phone symbol (2) ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 167* in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.

## Charging the mobile phone via the USB input

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged in the Audi phone box using special USB adapters ⇨ *page 288*.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ To charge your mobile phone via USB, connect it to the USB input (1) ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 167*. ▶

**Note**

– USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.
– Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.

## Charging a mobile phone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.

Important: The ignition must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

▸ Make sure that the wireless charging function is switched on:
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.
▸ Activate the **Wireless mobile phone charging** function.
▸ To charge your mobile phone wirelessly, place it on the symbol (3) ⇨ *page 245, Fig. 167* in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.

**WARNING**

– The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the Audi phone box's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.

**Note**

– The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
– The charging time and temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.

## Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle.

Important: A Qi compatible mobile phone must be in the Audi phone box, or your mobile phone must be connected to the USB port with charging function via a USB adapter with the smartphone interface active, or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and be charging with a USB adapter via the USB port with charging function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following settings are available:

– **Sound**
– **Off**

### Spoken

This setting is activated at the factory.

### Notes on mobile phone: Reminder, charge level

If this function is switched on, notifications on the charging status of your mobile phone will be displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile phone when you leave the vehicle.

# Using the telephone

## Accessing telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

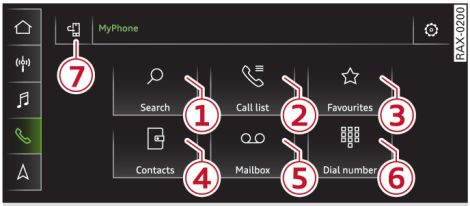



**Fig. 168** Upper display: Selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.

Possible telephone functions:

① **Search**
② **Call list** . . . . . 247
③ **Favourites** . . . . . 247
④ **Contacts** . . . . . 248
⑤ **Mailbox** . . . . . 249
⑥ **Dial number** . . . . . 249
⑦ **Switch phones** . . . . . 250

## Managing the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

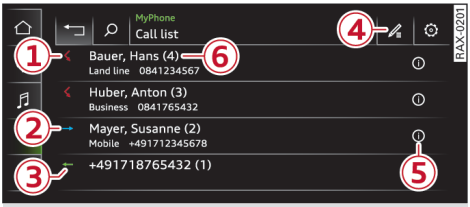



**Fig. 169** Upper display: Call list

### Calling up the call list via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Call list**.

### Calling up the call list via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the telephone tab > ☰ button > **Call list**.

Possible symbols in the call list:

① Missed calls
② Numbers dialled
③ Received calls
④ Edit telephone numbers
⑤ Display business card . . . . . 248
⑥ Number of interactions with a contact

If there has been more than one interaction with a contact or a number, the most recent action is displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③.

### Call list options

Press and hold a contact or phone number from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

– **Store as a shortcut** ⇨ *page 31, Shortcuts*
– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 247*.
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 251*
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 252*

### Edit number

You can edit a phone number before making a call.

### Show history

Important: You must have had more than one interaction with a contact.

All interactions with a contact/number will be displayed.

## Managing favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store contacts for all connected mobile phones in the favourites list for quick access.

### Calling up favourites

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Favourites**.

### Storing favourites

▸ Press ☆ ⇨ *page 248* in the business card, or ▶

▸ Press **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 247* in the options menu.

### Deleting favourites

▸ Press ★ ⇨ *page 248* in the business card, or
▸ Select: **Favourites** > ✎ > *one or more favourites* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

**Note**

The favourites can only be edited on the MMI.

## Managing directories

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can manage up to four directories on the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

### Calling up the directory

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts**.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇨ *page 251*, **Sort order**.

### Deleting imported contacts

Important: You must have imported a contact ⇨ *page 251*.

▸ Select: **Contacts** > ✎ > *one or more contacts* > **Delete** > (**Done**). The imported contacts will be deleted.

### Directory options

▸ Press and hold a contact from the directory until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 247*.
– **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 251*.
– **Send text message** ⇨ *page 251*
– **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 252*
– **Store as a shortcut** ⇨ *page 31, Shortcuts*

**Note**

– Please pay attention to any synchronisation requests on your mobile phone when downloading contacts.
– In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
– Please note that only contacts from the mobile phone with an active connection are displayed.
– The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are not protected against access by other users.
– When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will update the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system.
– You can only delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.

## Calling up a business card

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The business card shows you a contact's details.

▸ To open the business card, press on a contact in the directory, or
▸ In the call list, press ⓘ ⑤ ⇨ *page 247, Fig. 169*.

Possible options in the business card:
▸ **To make a call**: Press on a phone number.
▸ **To store a favourite**: Press ☆.
▸ **To delete a favourite**: Press ★.
▸ **To send a text message**: Press 🗩.
▸ **To start navigation**: Press on an address.
▸ **To send an e-mail**: Press on an e-mail address.
▸ **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇨ *page 251*.
▸ **Store as a shortcut** ⇨ *page 31, Shortcuts*

## Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

### Calling up the mailbox

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Mailbox**.

### Entering the mailbox number

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet.

▸ Enter the desired number.
▸ Press **OK**.

### Selecting the mailbox number

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

▸ Press **Mailbox**. The call will be started immediately.

**Note**

This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider.

## Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you may be able to dial a number in the following ways:

– Entering text via the MMI ⇨ *page 31*.
– Using the voice control function ⇨ *page 34*.

## Call options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ To answer/end a call, press the ✆ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Depending on your mobile phone, the following options may be available for an incoming call on the MMI:

– **Answer**
– **Ignore**
– **Message**

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone, active calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.

**Note**

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

## During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be available during a call depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

– **End call**
– **Mute**

### Sending a tone sequence

Press **Numbers**. You can enter DTMF tones ("touch-tones"), which are then sent to the person you are speaking to.

### Hold

To place the current call on hold. Press **Resume** to take the call again.

### Answering an incoming call

Depending on your mobile network service provider, one of the following options may be available:

– **Answer**: The current call will be placed on hold. You will then receive the incoming call.
– **Replace**: The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

### Declining an incoming call

If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

### Conference

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

### Switching between calls

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

You can switch between two phone calls.

### Further call options

Press **More**. ▶

The following options may be available depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

### Transfer call to mobile phone

To transfer the current call to your mobile phone/Bluetooth headset*.

### Retrieve call

To transfer the current call from your mobile phone back to the MMI.

### Add call

You can start a new call. The current call will be placed on hold.

### Remove conference participants

If a conference is in progress, you can remove participants individually.

### Microph. input level

You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

**Note**

The option Call waiting must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.

## Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Dial number** > *the emergency number for the specific country (e.g. 112)* > **Dial**.

**WARNING**

– Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when vital communication is required (e.g. in a medical emergency).
– Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

# Settings

## Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > ⚙.

The following settings are available, depending on your mobile phone:

– **Ignore with text message**
– **Edit mailbox number**

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

**Switch phones**: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

### Ring tone and volume settings

– **Ring tone and message volume**: You can adjust the volume by moving the slider.
– **Ring tone**: Select a ring tone from the list.
– **Microphone input level**: You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

### Serial number (IMEI) of data module

Applies to: vehicles with data module

The serial number (IMEI) will be displayed.

## Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts** > ⚙.

### Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

**Switch phones**: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

The directory of the selected telephone will be displayed. ▶

### Hide greyed out contacts

If this function is switched on, contacts for which no number has been stored are hidden.

### Sort order

You can sort contacts by **surname** or **first name**.

### Download contacts

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

### Import/export contacts

Important: A USB mass storage device must be connected to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 288*.

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the MMI.

– **To import contacts from a storage device**: Important: The USB mass storage device must contain contacts in vCard format. These must not be stored in subfolders. Select: **Import contacts** > **Search for import data** > **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all** > **Start import**.
– **To export contacts to a storage device**: Important: You must already have imported a contact. Select: **Export contacts** > **Find export medium** > **USB device 1**/**USB device 2** > *desired contacts* or **Select all** > **Start export**.

**Note**

– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the MMI system.
– There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.
– It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.
– Apple devices or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.

# Messages

## Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **Text message (telephone 1)**/**Text message (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

– **New text message***
– **Inbox**
– **Sent**
– **Outbox***
– **Drafts***
– **Deleted**

**User-defined***

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

### Message options

Press on a text message.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

– **Read**
– **Reply**
– **Forward**
– **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

– **Call**
– **Forward**
– **Navigate to**
– **Extract numbers**
– **Resend**

▶

### Settings

Press ⚙.

### Notification for new text messages

When a new text message is received, an envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.

**Note**

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

## E-mail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and e-mail

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** > (✉) > **E-mail (telephone 1)**/**E-mail (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

– **New e-mail**
– **Inbox**
– **Sent**
– **Outbox**
– **Drafts***
– **Deleted***

**User-defined***

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

### Message options

Press on an e-mail.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

– **Read**
– **Reply**
– **Reply to all**
– **Forward**
– **More**

To switch between messages, press 〈 or 〉.

Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

– **Call**
– **Forward**
– **Extract e-mails**
– **Navigate to**
– **Extract numbers**
– **Display receiver**
– **Resend**

### Settings

Press ⚙.

### Notification for new e-mails

When a new e-mail is received, an envelope symbol ✉ is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ▶

| Subject | Advice |
|---|---|
| **Connecting** the mobile phone to the MMI fails. | Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇨ *page 243*, or<br>Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇨ *page 243*. |
| After the mobile phone was connected **not all/none of the contacts** were loaded into the MMI. | Avoid using special characters in names.<br>Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone.<br>Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth. |
| Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available. | The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used. |
| Some **telephone functions** are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them. | Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation. |
| The **MESSAGES** menu is not available. | Check whether your mobile phone has the option Show messages and make sure that this option is activated. |
| Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted. | Check that the Audi phone box's wireless charging function is switched on.<br>Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible.<br>Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in the Audi phone box ⇨ *page 245* and that there are no other objects in the Audi phone box. |

# Audi connect

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

– Audi connect infotainment
– Audi connect vehicle control services
– Audi connect apps

**WARNING**

– Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇨ *page 26, Notes on traffic safety*.
– Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇨ *page 80*.

**CAUTION**

– Applies when using the embedded SIM card: With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This applies, for example, to online radio/podcasts, additional online data or internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot. These internet connections and services require additional paid data plans, depending on the country you are in ⇨ *page 258*. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
– Applies when using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi: If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use it. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.
– In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, this may incur charges, especially if you are using the system abroad. We therefore strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
– Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

**Note**

– The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
– The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
– The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract. ▶

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

# Audi connect infotainment

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, an internet connection can be established via the embedded SIM card (eSIM) or via your own mobile phone's SIM card using Wi-Fi.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

## Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

## Using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Wi-Fi

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use your mobile phone's SIM card to establish an internet connection via Wi-Fi ⇨ *page 255*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# Establishing a Wi-Fi connection

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

The vehicle can connect to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ If necessary, activate the "Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)" or "personal hotspot" function on your mobile phone.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi**.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on.
- ▸ Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot in the list of available networks.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The vehicle is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the internet ⇨ *page 255*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's internet connection. ▶

Important: The ignition must be switched on. In some countries a data plan must be available ⇨ *page 258*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi hotspot**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Wi-Fi hotspot**. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed.
- Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device.

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# Audi connect infotainment services

## Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Before you use certain Audi connect infotainment services for the first time, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

**Note**

- A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect infotainment services.
- Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
- Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.
- Detailed information on configuration can be found online at my.audi.com.

## Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

You can use available services directly on the MMI. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# Functions on demand

## Displaying purchased functions

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

With certain equipment versions in some countries you can purchase functions at any time (functions on demand) in the myAudi app using your myAudi account.

To display purchased functions in the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **PURCHASES**.

**Note**

- It may also be possible to show equipment options fitted at the factory in the purchased functions display.
- The availability and functions of the myAudi app vary from country to country.
- In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with functions on demand

If a message is shown regarding a function that requires a licence, this may indicate that the function is unavailable. Check in the Purchases menu on the MMI to see if you have a licence for ▶

this function, or if the licence has expired. If necessary, you can purchase the function using functions on demand.

# Audi connect apps

## Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

You must log in as a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the Audi connect apps.

- You can create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app.
- Add your vehicle to your myAudi account and then verify your myAudi account using one of the available verification procedures.
- Add the myAudi user in your vehicle.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

## Apps

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

Important: You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

### STORE

You can search for and install apps in your vehicle.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

# Audi connect vehicle control services

## Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.
– Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

**Note**

– Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
– The internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

4M6012720AE

## Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.

- ▸ Specify the key user ⇨ *page 38*.
- ▸ Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

**Note**

Certain services require you to enter the 4-digit PIN which you specified on registration.

# Settings

## Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

### Wi-Fi

When this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi is active and the MMI can be connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

## Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

### Wi-Fi hotspot

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

### Wi-Fi hotspot settings

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:

– **Access point (SSID)**: Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Password**: A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure. Follow the instructions given by the system.

### Allow data connection via Wi-Fi

When this function is activated, mobile devices can use the internet connection on the Wi-Fi hotspot. In some countries, a data plan is required for this.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Bluetooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

## Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Data plans must be purchased for certain services ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*. ▸

[1)] Not available in all markets.

You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
– When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.

# Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

| Subject | Advice |
|---|---|
| **Audi connect infotainment services**: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available. | Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found online at my.audi.com. |
| **Wi-Fi hotspot**: No Wi-Fi connection is possible. | Check whether Wi-Fi hotspot is activated on the MMI ⇨ *page 258*.<br>Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it. |

# Emergency call

## Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

*Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.*

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇨ *page 260*.

– Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.
– Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall) [1]. This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.
– Statutory ERA-GLONASS emergency call

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇨ *page 262*.

**WARNING**

– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
– Applies to EU eCall or ERA-GLONASS: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
– When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as those given by the parking aid) may be muted.
– Applies to ERA-GLONASS: The battery for the backup power supply has a service life of at least three years.

## Emergency call

### Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use.

The EU eCall emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The ERA-GLONASS emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The TPS emergency call is only available within the mobile network area covered by the network provider selected by Audi.

**Note**

– The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
– EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.
– ERA-GLONASS is provided free of charge.
– The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
– The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

### Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via onboard sensors ⇨ *page 261, Automatic emergency call*. If the ▶

[1] "EU eCall" in the following description refers also to emergency call systems required by law in non-EU countries, where the technical implementation corresponds to EU eCall.

vehicle is equipped with the TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically.

The EU eCall can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the system manually, please refer to ⇨ *page 261, Manual emergency call*.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇨ *page 261*.

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

The ERA-GLONASS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇨ *page 261*.

## Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

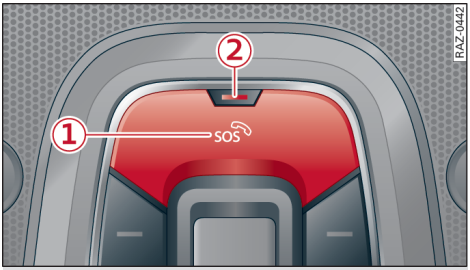



**Fig. 170** Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

### Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- ▸ Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ▸ If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

### Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

### Meaning of LEDs

- – **Green** – The emergency call function is available.
- – **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function ⇨ *page 262*.
- – **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

### Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇨ *page 261, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 262, Driver messages*.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the onboard emergency call system to be out of action, the vehicle occupants receive the following warning ⇨ *page 261, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇨ *page 262, Driver messages*.

**Note**

If the emergency call is cut off due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

## Sending phone number in an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with TPS emergency call

In the event of an emergency call, your phone number[1] can be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

### Switching the function on

Applies to: MMI

- On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > ⚙.
- Switch the function **Send phone number in an emergency call** on.
- To save or change the phone number, press **Save telephone number for emergency call** / **Change telephone number for emergency call**.
- Enter the phone number in the international format.

The function must be switched on individually for each connected mobile phone.

## ERA-GLONASS test mode

Applies to: vehicles with ERA-GLONASS emergency call function

The ERA-GLONASS test mode involves, among other things, a test emergency call to a test control centre.

The test mode can be started within the first 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on. Briefly press the emergency call button behind the cover ① ⇨ *page 261, Fig. 170* ten times after switching on the ignition.

**Note**

The test mode must only be started by a qualified technician.

## Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

**SOS Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop**

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**SOS Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

# Online roadside assistance call

## Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

An online roadside assistance call[2] is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

[1] We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all phones/SIM cards. As a result, it may not always be possible to read out the phone number and no indication of the incompatibility will be given.

[2] The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

## Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

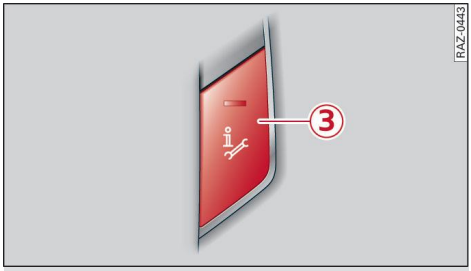



**Fig. 171** Front headliner: Online roadside assistance call

### Making an online roadside assistance call

- Press button (3). The red LED in the button will light up. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.
- If you press button (3) accidentally, simply press it again.

### Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call on the MMI.

**Note**

If the roadside assistance call is interrupted due to a poor connection, the call must be started again.

# Information on data processing

## EU eCall

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function (EU eCall)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Subparagraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

### Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location plausibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

### Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and, in any case, not more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed. ▶

### Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

**AUDI AG**
DSGVO-Anfrage
Auto-Union-Straße 1
85057 Ingolstadt
GERMANY

## Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit

### TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with EU eCall in conjunction with Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call) or online roadside assistance call

For a description, please refer to ⇨ *page 260* for operation, ⇨ *page 260* for functions and ⇨ *page 262* for online roadside assistance call.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance call systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance call forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance call systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

The TPS emergency call system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance call systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

– Modalities ⇨ *page 264*
– Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com/en/privacy-audi-connect.html, or on the MMI by selecting the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

The keeper of a vehicle which is equipped with TPS emergency call system in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system instead of the TPS emergency call system. To deactivate/reactivate the TPS emergency call system, please contact an Audi dealership.

**Note**

The deactivation/reactivation of the TPS emergency call system at an Audi dealership is subject to a fee.

# Navigation

## Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system




**Fig. 172** Route guidance not started

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

### Calling up the navigation menu

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.

The map is displayed after the navigation system is called up for the first time.

### Calling up the navigation menu via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ Select the navigation tab in the instrument cluster.

▸ To display the navigation menu when route guidance has been started, select the following in the instrument cluster: ☰ button > **Map**.

The following functions are available on the MMI:

① Select a destination ⇨ *page 267*.

② Search for navigation destinations ⇨ *page 266*.

③ **To switch between the map and menu**: Press △ repeatedly until the desired function is shown.

For further information on the map please refer to ⇨ *page 270, How to use the map*.

**WARNING**

– Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 26, Notes on traffic safety*.

– The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.

– Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.

– Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

– Applies to vehicles with Audi connect infotainment: Further services may be available depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

– Information is also provided in the head-up display*.

## myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favourites, last destinations) are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇨ *page 37*. ▶

myAudi navigation functions:

– You can send destinations and tours to the vehicle from the myAudi app ⇨ *page 268*.
– Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
– Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.

**Note**

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

# Entering a destination

## Searching for navigation destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Various search options may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination with the internet search.

You can use the hybrid search function to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations or contacts in the same way to help you navigate to the desired destination.

### Calling up the menu

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > 🔍.

### Internet search[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and internet search

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
▸ The search engine provider displays suggestions 🔍 to narrow the search.
▸ Press on any suitable suggestions until the desired destination is shown in the results list. If necessary, swipe upwards/downwards with one finger until the suggestions 🔍 or destinations 📍 appear.
▸ Press on the desired destination 📍. Route guidance will be started.
▸ Press ⓘ to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 268*.

### Hybrid search

When the G symbol is shown on the MMI, the hybrid search function is switched off.

▸ To switch the hybrid search function on, press and hold the coloured G symbol.

Important: The hybrid search function must be switched on.

▸ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field ⇨ *page 31, Text entry*.
▸ Press the desired destination in the results list. Route guidance will be started.
▸ Press ⓘ to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 268*.

### Online points of interest

▸ **To find a special destination**: Enter the name of the special destination.
▸ Select: *the symbol for a special destination category* (e.g. 🍴) > *a special destination*, or
▸ To display all categories and search for a special destination, select: ••• > *a category* (e.g. Restaurant) > *a special destination*. ▶

[1)] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

### Changing the search area

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .
- To change the search area, press /// repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

**Note**

– The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
– The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You may be able to have alternative routes displayed ⇨ *page 272*.
– If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check the spelling of the term you searched for or check the search area ⇨ *page 267*.
– Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇨ *page 277*.
– The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

## Selecting a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system




**Fig. 173** Menu: Selecting a destination

### Calling up the menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- When the map is displayed, press ① ⇨ *page 265, Fig. 172*.

The following functions are available:


① **Last destinations** . . . . . 267
② **Favourites** . . . . . 268
③ **Contacts** . . . . . 268
④ **Received destinations and tours** . . 268


## Loading the last destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations and tours you have most recently used can be loaded as the new navigation destination.

As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically stored in your most recent destinations. The destinations you have recently used are indicated by the symbol.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your recent destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 265*.

### Calling up the last destination

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > () > **Last destinations** > *a destination* > **Start**.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > button > **Last destinations** > *a destination*.

### Deleting recent destinations

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > () > **Last destinations** > > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

**Note**

The last tour will be deleted automatically from the list of recent destinations if you start route guidance to a new destination after cancelling the tour.

## Using a favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

Important: At least one favourite must have already been stored ⇨ *page 272*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favourites** > *a destination*.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > ☰ button > **Favourites** > *a destination*.

## Selecting a contact as a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate to your contacts.

Important: An address must be available for a contact.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Contacts** > *a contact*.
- Press on an address belonging to the contact.
- Press on a suggested address. The **Details** menu will be displayed.

**Note**

– If a directory contact is greyed out, an address has not been added for the contact.
– Navigation to geographical coordinates for a contact is not possible.

## Loading received destinations and tours

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

You can search for destinations or tours in the myAudi app and send them to the vehicle.

Important: The MMI and the mobile device must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect* and you must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device.

- Send a destination/a tour to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Received destinations and tours**.
- Make sure that you are logged in to the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destinations and tours will be loaded automatically.
- **To navigate to a destination**: Press a destination.
- **To delete destinations**: Select ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

**Note**

– All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

## Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

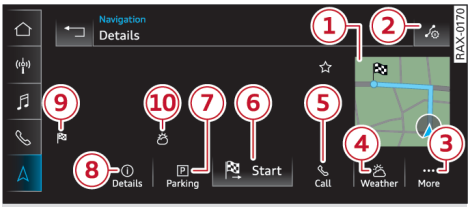



**Fig. 174** Details

The functions available depend on the vehicle's equipment and the destination selected.

① **Map preview**: To enlarge the map preview, press on the map.
② **Route criteria**: Refer to ⇨ *page 277*.
③ **More**: Additional functions.
④ **Weather**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. Also refer to ⇨ *page 256*.
⑤ **Call**: Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 243*. The call is made to the phone number which is stored for the destination.
⑥ **Start**: To start navigating to the destination shown. The map will be displayed ⇨ *page 270*.

▶

⑦ **Park**: Press **Park** to search for a car park at the destination. You can use the car park as the destination or stopover.

⑧ **Details**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

⑨ **Display showing distance/driving time to destination**

⑩ **Weather at destination**: Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

## Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

### Calling up the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

### Setting a convenient map scale

- Select: ⊕/⊖ > *a scale*.

### Marking a destination

- Press on a location on the map and hold it until a marking or the address of the selected destination is shown.

### Using map content (e.g. special destination) as a destination

Important: Map content must be displayed ⇨ *page 277*.

- Press on a location on the map (e.g. 🍴).

### Setting the destination

- Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

## Stopovers and tour plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter further destinations while route guidance is active.

### Entering a stopover

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Enter a destination ⇨ *page 266*.

### Displaying stopovers/tour plan

All destinations are listed in the tour plan.

- On the map legend menu, press 🏁 ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

### Editing stopovers

- On the map legend menu, press 🏁 ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.
- **To add a stopover**: Select **Add destination** > *a destination* > **Add**.
- **To move a stopover**: Press ✎. Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- **To delete a stopover**: Select ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

# Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active and the map must be displayed.

- Applies to MMI: Press 🏁 ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > ☰ button > **Stop route guidance**.

# Map

## Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system




**Fig. 175** Active route guidance

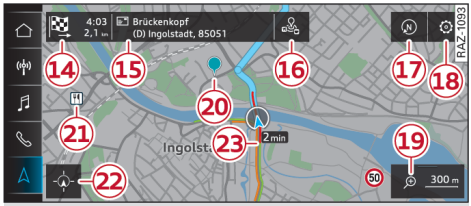



**Fig. 176** Marked object on map

### Calling up the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
▸ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on a function (e.g. Alternative routes) to display further options.

① Select a destination ⇨ *page 267*
② Enter a destination ⇨ *page 266*
③ Stop route guidance ⇨ *page 269*
④ Current route
⑤ Request spoken cue
⑥ Alternative routes ⇨ *page 272*
⑦ Display active destinations/stopovers/tour plan ⇨ *page 269*. The distance to the next destination in the tour plan is displayed along with the estimated time of arrival.
⑧ Online traffic information ⇨ *page 275*
⑨ Altitude
⑩ Display of the maximum speed limit[1)] in towns, on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads
⑪ Current vehicle position
⑫ Route information ⇨ *page 278*
⑬ Name of the street you are on
⑭ Start route guidance for a marked object on the map ⇨ *page 269, Setting a destination from the map*
⑮ Display details for the destination ⇨ *page 268*
⑯ Search in immediate vicinity ⇨ *page 266*
⑰ Set map orientation. Also refer to ⇨ *page 277*.
⑱ Settings ⇨ *page 277*
⑲ Set map scale. Press on the magnifying glass displayed on the map to activate/deactivate the automatic zoom ⇨ *page 277*. The Ⓐ symbol appears when the function is activated.
⑳ Marked destination ⇨ *page 269, Setting a destination from the map*
㉑ Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several different types of map content are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press on ⇨ *Fig. 176*. Press on a special destination from the list.
㉒ Centre map to current vehicle position
㉓ Traffic information and estimated delay on the route
– **Green**: no obstructions
– **Orange**: slow-moving traffic
– **Red**: traffic jams/obstructions

### Further possible symbols on the map

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| ⌂ | Home address ⇨ *page 272, Favourites* |
| 🏢 | Business address ⇨ *page 272, Favourites* |
| ★ | Favourites ⇨ *page 272* |
| 🏁 | Shows the current destination |

### Traffic information

– **Coloured warning symbols**: There is an upcoming traffic obstruction or hazard alert on your route.
– **Greyed out warning symbols**: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.
– All traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map when route guidance is not active.
– **Warning symbols with arrow**: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided, e.g. ⛐.

## How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the gestures described below to operate the map ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

### Moving the map

▸ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger. ▶

[1)] This function is not available in all countries and is only available for vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition.

### Moving the map quickly

▸ Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.

### Zooming in on the map

▸ Move two fingers apart on the map, or
▸ Double tap the map with your finger.

### Zooming out on the map

▸ Move two fingers together on the map, or
▸ Double tap the map with two fingers.

### Turning the map

▸ Turn the map with two fingers.

### Tilting the map

▸ Swipe up/down with two fingers.

**Note**

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

### Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

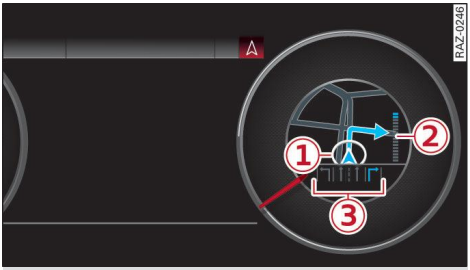



**Fig. 177** Standard view in instrument cluster: Turn-off with route guidance started

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇨ *page 266*.

The following information is displayed in the driver information system (if available):

① Current vehicle position
② A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If no turn-off is imminent, the right-hand speedometer shows the remaining distance to the destination/stopover, the estimated arrival time and a direction arrow for the upcoming manoeuvre. If there is no upcoming manoeuvre, the distance to the next manoeuvre is displayed.
③ Lane recommendation

## Predictive route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and predictive route guidance

Your MMI system can memorise routes that you frequently follow and suggest them based on your vehicle's current location (e.g. the daily route to your workplace and back).

When this function is activated , the MMI records routes you have driven (even if you do not use the navigation system).

Even if route guidance is not started, your MMI system can check the traffic situation and show possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take.

### Calling up personal routes

Important: The predictive route guidance function must be switched on ⇨ *page 278*. Route guidance is not active. A notification will be displayed.

▸ The MMI will suggest up to three routes. Select one of the suggestions. Route guidance will be started.

### Optimised routes

A notification is displayed on the MMI if there are any larger traffic disruptions, irrespective of which menu is selected. If the MMI has calculated an optimised route, you can use this.

▸ Press on the notification.

Your personal routes are no longer recorded as soon as you switch off the predictive route guidance function. Routes which have already been recorded remain stored. ▶

### Deleting personal routes

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Predictive route guidance** > **Delete recordings from the last 24 hours** or **Delete all personal routes and destinations**.

**Note**

If the predictive route guidance function is switched off and you press 🏁, the settings for the predictive route guidance function will be displayed ⇨ *page 278*.

## Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

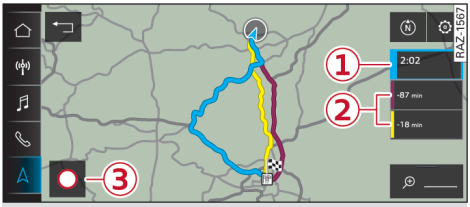



**Fig. 178** Alternative routes in the overview map

### Calling up alternative routes

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇨ *page 266* and the map must be displayed ⇨ *page 270*.

▸ On the map legend menu, press ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

### ① Current route

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed for the current route.

### ② Alternative route

The difference in time compared with the currently selected route is displayed.

### ③ Exclude route

You can exclude an upcoming section of the current route for a specific distance to avoid, for example, an upcoming road or tunnel closure. The navigation system will automatically calculate an alternative route and the length of the excluded section. The route you entered will only be excluded in the current route guidance; if required, you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

▸ **To exclude a route**: Press ③ ⇨ *Fig. 178*.
▸ **To cancel the route exclusion**: Press ⃠.

### Displaying an alternative route in the foreground

▸ Press on ⓘ in the corresponding information window, or
▸ Press and hold the information window for the corresponding alternative route (e.g. ② ⇨ *Fig. 178*).

### Selecting a route

▸ Press on the information window for the corresponding route (e.g. ②).

## Further functions

### Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

### Calling up favourites

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (⊞) > **Favourites**.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your favourites will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇨ *page 265*.

### Storing favourites

▸ Press ☆ in the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 268, Fig. 174*.

### Storing home/business address

▸ Press **Home address**/**Business address**. When you call this menu up for the first time, you will be asked to set the corresponding address.
▸ Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

### Editing home/business address

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must have already been stored. ▸

▸ Press **Home address**/**Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > (**Set as destination**) or (*complete the address*) > **OK**.

### Editing favourites

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ **To use a favourite as the destination**: Press a favourite.
▸ **To delete a favourite**: In the **Details** menu, press ★ ⇨ *page 268, Fig. 174* or select the following: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).
▸ **To move a favourite**: Press ✎. Touch the ⇕ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.

**Note**

– If you delete the home/business address, only the address is deleted. The entry in the favourites is still displayed.
– When moving favourites, please note that positions 1 and 2 are reserved for the home and business addresses.

## On-street parking

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and on-street parking

You can have roadside parking spaces displayed in locations which support this feature.

Important: **Parking** must be activated in the notifications ⇨ *page 30, Notification centre*. The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. Route guidance is active, you are almost at your destination and a notification is displayed, or a point on the map is marked.

▸ Press on the notification, or
▸ Press on 🅿 on the map.
▸ To navigate to a parking space, press on a colour marking on the map.
▸ Select: 🏁 > **Start**.

Colour markings on the map indicate the probability of finding a space, depending on availability.

| Colour | Description |
|---|---|
| green | high probability |
| orange | average probability |
| red | low probability |

# Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**[1)].

For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

**Note**

– The satellite map[1)] is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
– Depending on the internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map[1)] is activated.

[1)] Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

# Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and plug-in hybrid drive

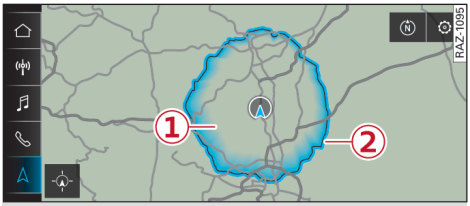



**Fig. 179** Display showing electric range

The electric range function shows you the maximum distance you can drive using electric power. This takes into account factors such as road categories, speed and road elevation.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Range map**.

① Depending on the prevailing conditions, the beginning of the coloured area shows the likely minimum electric range of your vehicle.

② The maximum distance your vehicle can travel on electric power in ideal conditions is shown by the border.

# Map update

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map material on your navigation system. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

– Map update via **online map update** ⇨ *page 274*.
– Importing a map update to your MMI via **USB connection** ⇨ *page 274*.

## Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system in the vehicle.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to determine regions and uses this information to provide you with updates for these regions.

### Starting the update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

▸ Applies to MMI: To allow automatic online map updates, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Automatic online map update**. The MMI will start the map update automatically in the background as soon as new map material is available.

You can check the status of the download process and the installation in the notification centre ⇨ *page 30*.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

## Map update via USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with map update via USB connection

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the map update function.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

### Downloading the update

▸ Download the map update at my.audi.com and save it on a USB stick. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

### Installing the update

▸ Connect the USB stick to the USB interface with charging function ⇨ *page 288*.
▸ Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇨ *page 30* and press on the notification.
▸ Press **Next**. The status of the installation will be shown on the display.

# Traffic information

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

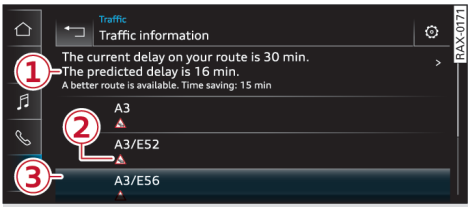



**Fig. 180** Overview of traffic information

### Calling up traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed ⇨ *page 270*.

- Press on the traffic jam sign in the map legend menu ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

### Displaying traffic message details

- Press on the traffic message ②.
- Press ← or → to display the previous/next traffic message.

The following information can be displayed:

① If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message is shown. The estimated delay takes into account future changes to the traffic situation on the route. Press on the entry in the list ① and select the better route. Further information can be found on ⇨ *page 272*.

② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazard location is calculated based on the current vehicle position.

③ Traffic messages are only displayed when route guidance is active. Press on the corresponding line to have details displayed.

**Note**

– Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.
– Traffic information is not available in certain countries.

## Traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving compared to the current route guidance.

The following options are available:

### Automatic traffic avoidance

- Set traffic avoidance to **automatic** ⇨ *page 277* and start route guidance.

If a better route is available, this is set automatically. The MMI does not inform you of a better route if the calculated time needed to avoid the traffic jam exceeds the estimated time lost in the traffic jam.

### Manual traffic avoidance

- Set traffic avoidance to **manual** ⇨ *page 277* and start route guidance.

The MMI informs you if a better route is available via a notification or a message in the traffic information ① ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 180*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

To select a better route, you have the following options:

- **Notifications**: Press . The better route will be used for route guidance. Alternatively, press on the notification. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇨ *page 272, Fig. 178*).
- **Message in the traffic information**: Press on the entry in the list ① ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 180*. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇨ *page 272, Fig. 178*).

## Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇨ *page 277*. ▶

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, online traffic information may also be displayed on the satellite map ⇨ *page 273*.

**Note**

– Every vehicle with active **online traffic information** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. You can switch off the data transmission at any time ⇨ *page 372*.
– The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries or areas.

# Hazard alerts

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function allows information on hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility to be detected by vehicles ahead of you and forwarded to your vehicle online.

This function is subject to certain general system limitations and may be unavailable if the vehicles ahead of you do not detect a hazard, e.g.:

– If the ASR or ABS was not triggered on a slippery road ⇨ *page 136*
– If the hazard warning lights of a broken-down vehicle were not switched on
– If the rear fog light was not switched on in poor visibility conditions
– If a vehicle's airbag was not triggered in an accident

**WARNING**

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the hazard alerts function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

**Note**

– Not all vehicles of other road users can transmit hazard information.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
– Depending on the vehicle speed, the type of road and the hazard, only the most important information may be displayed.

## Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 255*.

### Switching hazard alerts on/off on the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Traffic** > **Traffic information**.

### Switching hazard alerts on/off on the instrument cluster

You can switch the hazard alerts on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 175*.

## Operation

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

### Instrument cluster display

A hazard alert is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds when it is received.

▸ To hide the hazard alerts, press the ⮌ button on the multi-function steering wheel.

### Displaying hazard alerts on the map

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
▸ Press △ to show the map (if necessary).

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇨ *page 277*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed on the map ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175*. ▶

### Displaying in the route information

Important: **Traffic information** and **Route information** must be switched on ⇨ *page 277*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be shown in the route information ⇨ *page 278*.

### Displaying in the traffic information

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed in the traffic messages ⇨ *page 275, Fig. 180*.

## Settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system to suit your individual needs in the instrument cluster and on the MMI display. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

### Calling up the settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙.

### Calling up the settings via the multi-function steering wheel

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > ☰ button.

Please note that a map setting selected with the multi-function steering wheel only applies to the instrument cluster map.

### Map settings

**Satellite map**: Refer to ⇨ *page 273*.

**Range map**: Refer to ⇨ *page 274*.

**Traffic**: You can have current traffic information displayed on the map.

– **No traffic jams/obstructions**
– **Traffic jams/obstructions**
– **Traffic information**

### Map colours

– **automatic**: The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).
– **day/night**

### Map orientation

– **2D driving position/2D north**: The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.
– **3D driving position**: The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel.
– **overview**: The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is set to face north.
– **Prayer compass**: Refer to ⇨ *page 278*.

### Automatic zoom

– **On**: The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
– **Intersection**: When route guidance is active and there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
– **Off**

**MMI map content/map content**: This function controls whether additional information (e.g. special destinations) is shown on the map on the upper display.

### Voice guidance

**Voice guidance**: With the setting **Traffic**, the MMI will only give spoken cues on traffic jams/obstructions on your route.

### Voice guidance during calls

**Entertainment fader for navigation system**: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced while a navigation cue is being played.

### Route criteria

You can set which route criteria are permitted for the route calculation and which should be avoided. ▶

**Traffic avoidance**: Your MMI will receive traffic information which will enable it to calculate a better route ⇨ *page 275, Traffic avoidance*

– **Automatic**
– **Manual**

**Motorways**

**Vignette roads**

**Toll roads**

**Ferries**

**Motorail**

**Seasonally restricted**

– **Automatic**: The MMI determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
– **Allow**: Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.
– **Avoid**: Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.

### Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information ⇨ *page 269, Fig. 175* is shown. The next manoeuvre is displayed at the bottom. Special destinations and traffic information are also displayed. Press on the route information to have a preview of the next manoeuvre displayed on the map. You can switch the following information in the route information on/off:

– **Special destinations along the route**
– **Traffic information along the route**

### Use hybrid search as standard

When this option is switched on, the hybrid search is used as the standard function for searching for destinations.

### Predictive route guidance

The predictive route guidance function is switched off by default in the factory settings.

When this function is activated, your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI ⇨ *page 271*.

### Prayer compass display[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with prayer compass

Important: The standard map must be displayed ⇨ *page 269*.

– Select: ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Map orientation** > **Mecca**. The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle position will be displayed.

### Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system “drives” the planned route on the display without moving the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Set start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. **To simulate route guidance**: Start route guidance and press Presentation mode.

**Note**

You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played ⇨ *page 36*.

[1)] This function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

# Radio

## General information

### Calling up the radio menu

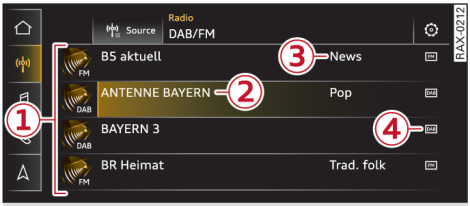



**Fig. 181** Upper display: DAB/FM station list

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM and DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.

Depending on the station list selected, the following information may be displayed:

① **Station list**

Shows the stations that can currently be selected. The station list is updated automatically.

② **Station**

Information such as the station name is displayed if available.

③ **Programme type**

The programme type of the station is displayed if available. Depending on the country, it may be necessary to switch on the option to display **Station genres** ⇨ *page 284*.

④ **Waveband**

Shows the current waveband of the station.

In addition to the regular waveband symbols, the following information may be available depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| FM/DAB | The station provides information on its alternative internet station in the background. **Service following online** must be switched on for this ⇨ *page 284*. |
| WEB | The station is being received via the internet. |
| | The system is attempting to receive the station/podcast via the internet. |
| | The DAB station can no longer be received. |

**Note**

– The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.
– The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+*, where available.

### Controlling the radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To select a waveband, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category*.
- Applies to MMI: To select a station, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > a *station/podcast**.
- To tune to a specific frequency, follow the instructions on ⇨ *page 281, Search function*.

### Controlling the radio via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: Radio mode must have been started.

- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
- To switch between radio and media or another source, press the ☰ button.
- To select a station/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.

**Note**

Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

# Radio functions

## Overview

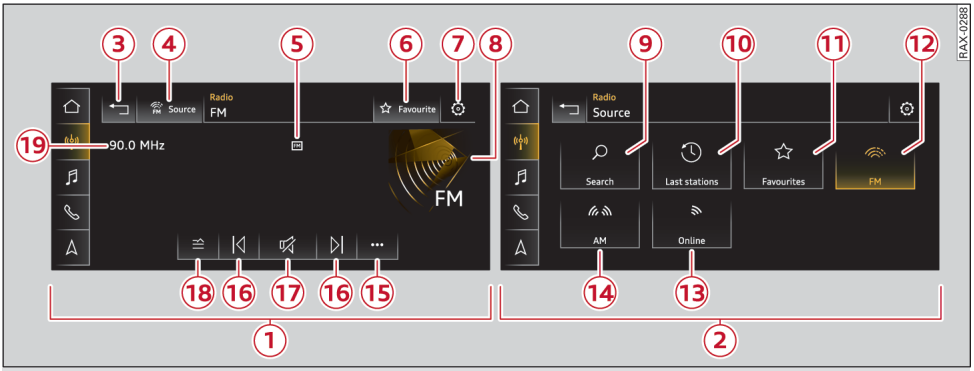



**Fig. 182** Upper display: Radio functions in playback view (left-side), sources (right-side)

### How to use

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > a *station/podcast**.
- Applies to MMI: To open the sources ②, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

Depending on the radio station/podcast* selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ③ | ⮌ | To go back one level. |
| ④ | **Source** | To display sources in the radio menu. |
| ⑤ | **Waveband** | Shows the current waveband of a station. |
| ⑥ | **Favourite** | To store as a favourite/delete a favourite. |
| ⑦ | ⚙ | Settings ⇨ *page 284* |
| ⑧ | **Station logo** | Depending on availability, you can switch between various views by pressing the station logo. Swipe to the right/left with one finger to switch between **Station logo**, **Cover art*** (album covers) and **Slide show*** (e.g. studio photos, current photos of artists or album covers, etc.). Also refer to ⇨ *page 284,* **Additional online data**. |
| ⑨ | **Search** | Refer to ⇨ *page 281*. |
| ⑩ | **Last stations** | Refer to ⇨ *page 281*. |
| ⑪ | **Favourites** | Refer to ⇨ *page 281*. |
| ⑫ | **FM or DAB/FM** | To display stations from the **FM** waveband or the mixed **DAB/FM** station list. |
| ⑬ | **Online** | Refer to ⇨ *page 282*. |
| ⑭ | **AM** | To display stations from the **AM** waveband. |
| ⑮ | ••• | To call up options on the current station ⇨ *page 283*. |

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ⑯ | ⏮/⏭ | To select the previous/next station. |
| ⑰ | 🔊/🔇 | To mute/unmute the playback. |
| ⑱ | ☰ | To display the station list ⇨ *page 279*. |
| ⑲ | **Information area** | If available, the station name and additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown, for example. Also refer to ⇨ *page 284,* **Additional online data**. |

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

## Search function

You can use the intelligent search function to find station names, frequencies[1)], programme types (e.g. **news**), podcasts* or online radio stations*.

### Calling up the search function

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Search**.

### Entering search terms

You can enter several search terms together in any order.

The following information is available:

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
| 🕘 | Result from the **Last stations** list |
| ☆ | Result from the **Favourites** list |
| 📻 | Result from a **Station list** |
| e.g. FM | Waveband of the station |

## Last stations

You can listen to stations from all frequencies that you have previously listened to.

### Calling up last stations

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Last stations**.

### Listening to last stations

▸ Press on *a station*.

### Deleting last stations

▸ Select: ✎ > *one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

## Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.

### Calling up favourites via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Favourites** > *a favourite*.

### Storing favourites

▸ In the playback view, press ☆ ⑥ ⇨ *page 280, Fig. 182*.

Important: A list of radio stations must be displayed ⇨ *page 279, Fig. 181*.

▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

▸ Press **Store as favourite**.

### Editing favourites

▸ **To delete a favourite:** Press on ★ in the playback view, or

▸ In the favourites list, select: ✎ > *one or more stations* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

▸ **To move a favourite**: Press ✎. ▶

1) This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

- ▸ Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
- ▸ Press **Done**.

## Radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

### Calling up the radio text

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > *a waveband (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > ••• > **Radio text**.

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

### Displaying the most recent radio text entries

- ▸ Swipe down with one finger. Depending on the availability, the most recent radio text entries will be displayed.

### Browsing through radio text entries

- ▸ Swipe up/down with one finger.

### Calling up RadioText Plus information

If a radio text entry is displayed in colour, the station has provided a telephone number or a navigation destination as RadioText Plus information.

The following options are available:

### Setting the destination

- ▸ Select: *a navigation destination marked in colour* > **Set as destination**.

### Making a call

- ▸ Select: *a telephone number marked in colour* > **Call**.

**Note**

A call to a number given in radio text will be started immediately.

# Online radio

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can use the online radio function to listen to different radio stations/podcasts from the internet.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 258*.

### Calling up online radio via the MMI

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

Functions such as the following are available:

### Last selected

The list of most recently played stations/podcasts will be displayed.

### Top stations

The most popular online radio stations will be displayed.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

- – Depending on the internet connection and network load, online radio playback may be interrupted.
- – It may not be possible to receive online radio if your internet connection's speed has been limited.
- – Whether online radio can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- – The scope of the online radio services and the way that they are displayed in the vehicle may differ from the third party service.
- – Please note that some online radio stations may not be available in certain countries.

▶

– Audi only enables you to access online radio via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

## Podcasts

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

### Calling up podcasts via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > **Source** > **Online** > **Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

### Listening to a podcast

▸ Select *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

### Displaying the online radio menu

▸ Press ⊞.

### Search

▸ Press 🔍.

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

### Displaying podcast episodes

▸ Press ☰.

### Starting/stopping podcast playback

▸ Press ▷/II.

### Previous/next podcast

▸ Press ⏮/⏭.

### Adjusting the play position

▸ Move the control slider to the desired position.

### Switching to radio

▸ Press **Source**. The sources in the radio menu will be displayed.

### Podcast favourites

You can store podcasts in the podcast favourites.

Important: The playback view for a podcast must be displayed.

▸ Press ☆.

Important: A list of podcasts must be displayed.

▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.
▸ Press on **Favourite podcast**.

### Listening to a podcast favourite

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Select *a podcast* > *a podcast episode*.

### Browsing podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Press 〈 or 〉.

### Displaying all podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

▸ Press **All**.

### Editing podcast favourites

▸ **To delete a podcast favourite:** Press ★ in the playback view, or
▸ In the podcast favourites, select **All** > ✎ > *one or more podcasts* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed.
▸ **To move a podcast favourite**: Select **All** > ✎.
▸ Touch the ⬍ symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
▸ Press **Done**.

# Options and settings

## Options

Important: The playback view ① must be displayed ⇨ *page 280, Fig. 182*.

▸ Press ••• ⑮, or

Important: A list of radio stations/podcasts* must be displayed ⇨ *page 279, Fig. 181*.
▸ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears. ▶

The following functions may be available depending on the source selected:

– **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 281*.
– **Radio text** ⇨ *page 282*.
– **Favourite podcast** ⇨ *page 283*, **Podcast favourites**.
– **Store as a shortcut** ⇨ *page 31, Shortcuts*

## Settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RADIO** > ⚙.

The following settings may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

### HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

### Traffic announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive traffic announcements from different wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

### DAB announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive announcements such as news or weather information.

### Station genres

You can switch the programme type display on/off (e.g. **News**).

### Disaster warning

When this function is activated, alarm announcements are shown in the notification centre ⇨ *page 30*.

### Service following between related DAB stations

When this function is switched on, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.

When the function is switched off, the system will not do this. The current station will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received.

### Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 258*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

### Service following online

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 258*. A station must be providing information on its alternative internet station in the background and must be marked with the symbol FM or DAB.

The radio tuner can establish a data connection and switch to an alternative station on the internet (if available) if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband. You may be able to receive your local radio stations in all the regions of your country via the internet. This may lead to additional costs ⇨ ⓘ. The WEB symbol denotes a station which is currently being received via the internet.

– **Automatic/Off**: Activates/deactivates the function to switch automatically to an alternative station on the internet.
– **With request**: Manual confirmation is required in order to switch to an alternative station on the internet.

### Preferred online radio bit rate

Depending on the radio station selected, you can set the bit rate for online radio ⇨ *page 282* and for **Service following online**.

To achieve the best possible playback sound quality, press **High**. To reduce data consumption, press **Low**. ▶

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– If the function ⇨ *page 284,* **Traffic announcements** or ⇨ *page 284,* **DAB announcements** is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 36, Fig. 20*.
– There may be delays when the system is switching between regular wavebands and online radio automatically.

## Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

| Subject | Advice |
|---|---|
| A station is no longer listed in the station list. | Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ *page 281*. |
| **Online radio**: No online radio playback. | Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available ⇨ *page 258*. |

# Media

## General information

Various media sources and various options for connecting devices may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle. For example, you can play media files from a USB stick or connect mobile devices to the USB port with charging function and operate them via the MMI.

**Media and format limitations**: The MMI system (including the connection for the USB mass storage device) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and media files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

**Restricted performance**: If you experience restricted performance, reset the MMI to the factory settings ⇨ *page 307*.

**Digital rights management**: Please note that copyright law applies to media files.

DRM-protected files will not be played; these files are marked with the symbol .

**Data storage**: Never store important data on CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

**Loading time**: The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a storage medium which contains only media files, and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

**Metadata**: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote stored locally or online ⇨ *page 293,* **Additional online data**. Nevertheless, some additional information may still not be displayed in some cases.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

## DVD drive

### General information

Applies to: vehicles with DVD drive

In view of the variety of CDs/DVDs and the difference in memory capacities, the functionality may be restricted in the case of some storage devices. Under certain circumstances, audio CDs/video DVDs that are copy-protected or CDs/DVDs that do not comply with the standard audio format, and multisession CDs cannot be played at all, or the functionality may be limited. Audi recommends always finalising the burning process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession is not supported for DVDs.

**CAUTION**

To prevent damage to the drives and storage media:

– Always store the storage media in a suitable case and do not expose them to direct sunlight.
– Do not use storage media which are damaged, dirty or covered by stickers.
– Do not use 8 cm diameter single CDs/DVDs, shape CDs/DVDs (i.e. not round), cleaning CDs or protective rings.
– Never use force to push a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD will be drawn into the slot automatically.

**Note**

The thermal cut-out switches off the playback temporarily if the outside temperature is unusually high.

## DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with DVD drive

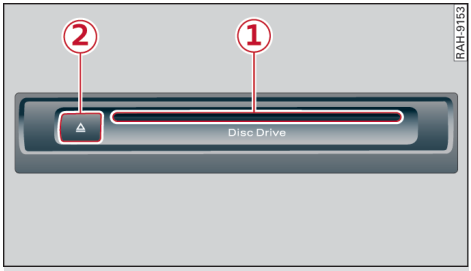



**Fig. 183** Glove box: DVD drive

### Loading a CD/DVD

▸ Insert the CD/DVD (text facing upwards) into the DVD slot ①, holding it straight. The CD/DVD will be drawn in automatically.

### Ejecting a CD/DVD

▸ Press button ②.

After it has been ejected, the CD/DVD will be pulled back into the DVD drive automatically after about ten seconds if it is not removed from the DVD slot.

The DVD drive is called up and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 289*.

**Note**

– Playback cannot be guaranteed if the media files have a high data rate.
– Please always note the information in the chapter ⇨ *page 286, General information*.

# Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled mobile device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇨ *page 307* and the mobile device must be activated.

### Connecting a mobile device

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Connect external device** > **New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.
▸ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown as a Bluetooth audio player in the **Connected devices** menu.

Playing media ⇨ *page 289*

**Note**

– Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
– You can pair several Bluetooth audio players with the MMI; however only one external device at a time can be actively connected to the MMI as a Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 307*.
– Which media functions (e.g. random playback, list view, categories, search function, options) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.
– Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
– You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

# Online media

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online media

You can start and operate various online media services (such as music streaming services) via the MMI.

Important: One of the supported online media services must be available in your country. You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the ▶

vehicle. The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 258*.

### Connecting online media

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **Streaming services**. All the online media services supported in your country will be displayed for the user who is logged in.
- Press the desired online media service and follow the instructions given by the system.

Once you have registered, the online media service will be available as a media source.

### Starting online media

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > *an online media source*.

**WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.

**CAUTION**

– Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.
– In order to use online media, you generally have to set up an account with an online media service, which may lead to additional costs, especially if you are using the service abroad.

**Note**

Depending on the internet connection and network load, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.

# Multimedia connections

## USB adapters

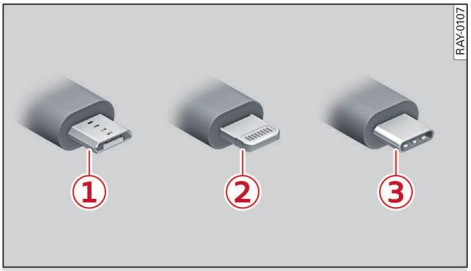



**Fig. 184** Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

You can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using USB adapters connected to the USB ports with charging function.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector
② USB adapter for Apple devices with Lightning connector
③ USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

**CAUTION**

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

**Note**

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

## USB ports with charging function

You can connect your mobile devices via the USB ports in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB ports are located in the storage compartment under the front centre armrest and are marked with the symbol ⇠. If several USB devices are connected to the USB ports (e.g. a ▶

smartphone and a USB stick), all of the devices can be used as a playback source.

### Connecting/charging a mobile device via USB adapter

▸ Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB port and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. smartphone).

The battery will be charged automatically.

Mobile devices connected to the USB ports are started and operated via the MMI ⇨ *page 289*.

### Disconnecting a mobile device from the USB port

▸ Unplug the USB adapter from the USB port.

**WARNING**

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– To avoid damage, please take care when unplugging the connector from the USB port.
– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the USB port.
– Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

**Note**

– Please always observe the information ⇨ *page 90*.
– When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or which must be connected via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 288, Fig. 184* to the USB ports; this could cause performance issues.
– It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Video playback via the USB ports is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).
– iPod touch/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
– Audi recommends that you use the most up-to-date iPod touch/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.
– iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported provided USB adapters are used on the USB ports.
– You can find a selection of supported devices in the database of tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

# Playing media

## Media sources

The following media sources can be selected, depending on the vehicle's equipment:
– **USB device** ⇨ *page 288*.
– **DVD** ⇨ *page 287*.
– **Connect external device**: You can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇨ *page 287*. Alternatively, you can connect an external device directly to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 288*.
– **Streaming services** ⇨ *page 287*.
– **TV** ⇨ *page 297*.

## Calling up media

### Playing media files via the MMI

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source*. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device ▶

connected or the online media service* in use. The device name may be displayed (e.g. My-Phone).

▸ Select a track from the categories in the media centre ⇨ *page 290*.

### Playing media files via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: At least one media source must contain media files ⇨ *page 289*.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.

▸ To switch between radio and media or another source, press the ☰ button.

▸ To select a media file/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.

**Note**

– If the function ⇨ *page 284,* **Traffic announcements** or ⇨ *page 284,* **DAB announcements** is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 36, Fig. 20*.

– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

– Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

## Media centre

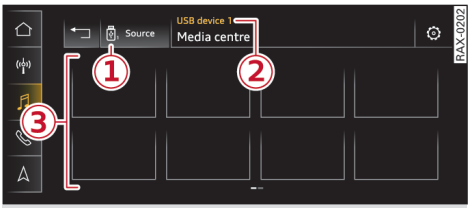



**Fig. 185** Upper display: Media centre

Several categories are available in the media centre. You can search for media files across different sources. Music will still be played from the active source while you are searching on the MMI.

### Calling up the media centre

▸ Applies to MMI: Select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.

### ① Source symbol

The symbol for the source you are currently using will be displayed. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected or the online media service* in use. A USB stick connected via the USB port with charging function is shown as an example.

### ② Device name of a source

The device name of the source you are currently using will be displayed.

### ③ Categories

The categories displayed in the media centre depend on the vehicle equipment, the device connected, the contents of the selected source and the connection type:

– **Last tracks played**
– **Artists**
– **Compilations**
– **Composers**
– **iTunes Radio**
– **Audiobooks**
– **Podcasts**
– **Genres**
– **Videos**
– **Tracks**
– **Albums**

Further categories may be available, depending on the service.

### Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists from the source will be displayed.

### Smart playlists

– **Last tracks played**
– **Most played tracks**

### Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed. ▶

**CAUTION**

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

– Cloud services and the iTunes Radio category always require an internet connection.
– Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– Only the categories supported by the medium/service used are available.
– For safety reasons, the video picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.
– If you synchronise a mobile device with cloud services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.
– Applies to iPod touch/iPhone: Please also observe the notes on the USB ports with charging function and supported devices ⇨ *page 288*.

## Media functions

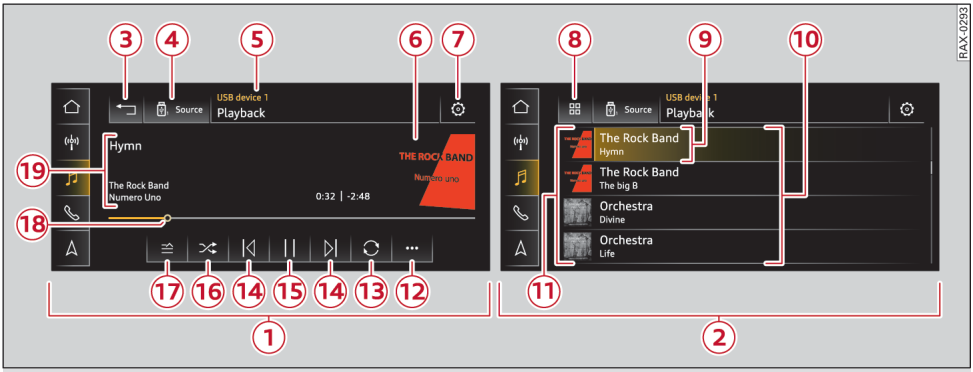



**Fig. 186** Upper display: Playback view (left-side), playlist (right-side)

### How to use

▸ Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category* (e.g. **Artists** > *an album*) > *a track*.

▸ To open the playlist ②, press ☰ ⑰ in the playlist view.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the media source selected, the following options may be available:

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ③ | ⮌ | To go back one level. |
| ④ | **Source** | To display sources in the media menu. |
| ⑤ | **Source/device name** | Device name of the source currently playing. |
| ⑥ | **Album cover** in playback view | Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 293*, **Additional online data**.<br>Displays the current album cover.<br>**To display the playlist**: Press the cover. |
| ⑦ | ⚙ | Settings ⇨ *page 293* |

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ⑧ | ⊞ | The media centre categories are displayed (depending on the active source) ⇨ *page 290*. |
| ⑨ | **Information on the current track** | Displays **track** and **artist**. The track currently playing is marked in colour. |
| ⑩ | **List** | **To scroll in the list**: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards. |
| ⑪ | **Album cover** in the playlist | Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇨ *page 293,* **Additional online data**.<br>Displays the current album cover. |
| ⑫ | ••• | Calling up options ⇨ *page 293*. |
| ⑬ | **Off** | **To switch between Off/Playlist/Track**: Press ⑬. |
| | **Playlist** | The tracks in the current playlist will be repeated continuously. |
| | **Track** | The current track will be repeated continuously. |
| ⑭ | ⏮/⏭ | **To select the previous/next track (or station/chapter)**: Press ⏮ or ⏭.<br>**To rewind/fast forward**: To rewind/fast forward the current track, press and hold ⏭ or ⏮.<br>**To jump to the beginning of the track**: After the track has played for 3 seconds, press ⏮. |
| ⑮ | ▷/II | To start/stop the playback. |
| ⑯ | ⤮ | When this function is switched on, all the files in the playlist will be played in random order. |
| ⑰ | ☰ | The playlist ② will be displayed. |
| ⑱ | **Play position** | The slider indicates the current playback position in the track.<br>**To rewind/fast forward**: To rewind/fast forward the current track, move the slider to the right/left.<br>**To change the playback position**: Press on the desired playback position. |
| ⑲ | **Information area** | Displays **track**, **artist** and **album**. |

### DVD functions

Applies to: vehicles with DVD drive

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and a DVD must be playing.

The following functions are available in the playback view:

– **To display the DVD main menu**: Press on the upper display. Press **DVD menu**.
– **To operate the DVD main menu**: Press on the desired function.
– **To switch to the media functions**: Press the upper display. Select: ⮌ > *a chapter*, or start the film on the DVD main menu and press the upper display.
– **To set the picture format**: Press on the upper display. Select **Picture format** > *a picture format* > **OK** ⇨ *table on page 293*.

**Note**

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

## Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and artists across all sources. ▶

### Calling up the search function

Important: The selected source must support the search function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Search**.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results. Every result is marked with the symbol of a category from the media centre ⇨ *page 290*.

You can search in the following categories:

– Artists
– Albums
– Tracks
– Genres
– Videos

## Options and settings

### Options

Certain functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment, the selected source, the mobile device connected and the type of connection.

Important: The playback view must be displayed ① ⇨ *page 291, Fig. 186*.

▸ Press ••• ⑫.

### Similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display a smart playlist with similar tracks.

### Language[1)]

You can set the language manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages and audio formats are available.

### Subtitles[1)]

You can select subtitles manually. It depends on the video DVD whether different languages are available.

[1)] May not be possible during playback (depends on the DVD).

### Picture format

Audi recommends using the **Auto** setting for the picture format. You will be shown a preview of the setting when you press on one of the picture format options. Press **OK** to use the picture format selected.

The following table provides an overview of the picture formats. The possible picture formats depend on the source being played or the video file.

| Picture format | Description |
|---|---|
| **Auto** | The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio. |
| **4:3**, **16:9**, **Cinema** | The picture is set to the relevant format. Select one of these options if the picture shown with **Auto** selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus. |
| **Zoom** | The picture is enlarged to fill the entire display. |
| **Original** | The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with **Auto** selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus. |

### Settings

### Calling up the settings

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > ⚙.

The following settings may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

### Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇨ *page 258*. ▶

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

### DVD child lock

You can use the child lock to restrict playback of video DVDs with age restrictions.

### Displaying DVD child lock menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > ⚙ > **DVD child lock**.
- Enter the child lock PIN. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
- Press **OK**.

### Setting/deactivating the safety level

Important: The DVD child lock menu must be displayed.

- Select: **Safety level selected** > *a safety level (e.g. level 5)* > ↩, or:
- To lift all restrictions, press **Off**.

Eight safety levels are available for the child lock function. If you select child lock level 5, all DVDs with safety levels 1-5 can be played. Playback of DVDs with a higher safety level will be blocked.

### Changing PIN

Important: The DVD child lock menu must be displayed.

- Select: **Change PIN** > *a new PIN for the child lock* > **OK**.
- Re-enter and press **OK**.

**Note**

– Not all video DVDs have a child lock feature.
– The child lock safety levels comply with the US standards of the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Please note that age ratings for DVDs may vary between different European countries.
– If you enter the wrong child lock PIN three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a PIN for approximately one minute. The PIN can only be reset by an Audi workshop.

## Supported media and file formats

### Overview

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, media files with the following attributes are supported by the DVD drive and the connection for the USB mass storage device:

| Audio/video files | |
|---|---|
| **Supported media** | **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; video DVDs; audio DVDs with soundtrack compatible with DVD-Video; **USB ports with charging function**: mobile devices ⇨ *page 288* (e.g. iPhone, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives) |
| **File system** | **USB mass storage devices**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS<br>**USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*)**: 2 per USB connection<br>**CD/DVD file systems:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF |
| **Metadata** | **Album covers**: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*. |

| Audio/video files | |
|---|---|
| **Playlists** | .M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX |
| **Number of files** | **DVD drive**: max. 1000 files per medium.<br>**USB mass storage devices**: max. 50000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory |

| Audio files | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Format** | **File extension** | |
| MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3 | .mp3 | Up to max. 320 kbit/sec<br>48 kHz sampling frequency |
| Windows Media Audio 9/10 | .wma | |
| MPEG-2/-4 | .m4a; .m4b; .aac | |
| Opus | .opus; .ogg; .oga | |
| FLAC | .flac | 48 kHz sampling frequency |
| ALAC | .m4a | |
| Monkey's Audio | .ape | |

| Video files | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Format** | **File extension** | |
| MPEG-1/-2 | .mpg; .mpeg | Up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps |
| MPEG4 AVC (H.264) | .mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi | |
| Windows Media Video 9 | .wmv; .asf | |
| MPEG-H (H.265/HEVC) | .mp4; .mov | |
| VP8/VP9 | .webm | |
| Flash Video | .flv; .f4v | |

**Note**

- The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media sources.
- Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
- The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.
- The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.
- Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

## Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle’s equipment. ▶

| Subject | Advice |
|---|---|
| **USB ports with charging function**/ **Bluetooth audio player**: The mobile device is not supported. | Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇨ *page 288, Multimedia connections*/⇨ *page 287, Bluetooth audio player*. |
| **USB ports with charging function**: The mobile device is not recognised as a source. | On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5 %). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge. |
| **USB ports with charging function**: Problems during audio playback via an iPod touch/iPhone. | The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇨ *page 306* when you are not using a **Bluetooth audio player**. |
| **USB ports with charging function**: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device. | Make sure that the USB mode *MTP* is selected in your mobile device's settings. |
| **Bluetooth audio player**: Problems with track display and playback. | Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the **Bluetooth audio player**. Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone). |
| **Online media**: No online media playback. | Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available ⇨ *page 258*. |

# TV
# General information

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with TV

It is possible to receive television in your vehicle via the applicable digital aerial standard [1]. Depending on its equipment, your vehicle may have a CI+ slot to receive encrypted channels ⇨ *page 301*.

For safety reasons, the TV picture on the upper display is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound is played.

**Note**

Television reception in the vehicle via the aerial is not available nationwide in all countries. The signal can be affected by network coverage and vehicle speed, for example.

## Calling up the TV menu

Applies to: vehicles with TV

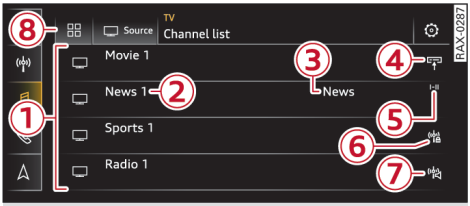



**Fig. 187** Upper display: Channel list

① Channel list
② TV channel
③ Important: Channel list must be set to **Presorted**. For classification of TV channel refer to ⇨ *page 299*
④ CI+ slot* is empty ⇨ *page 301*
⑤ Audio track available ⇨ *page 299*
⑥ Encrypted TV channel* ⇨ *page 301*
⑦ Audio channel*
⑧ Open browser ⇨ *page 298*

**Note**

Television broadcasts are interrupted by traffic reports if the traffic announcements* function is active ⇨ *page 284*.

## Setting channels via the MMI

Applies to: vehicles with TV

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⊞ > **Channel list** > *a TV channel*.
- To switch from the TV picture to the channel list, press on the upper display and then select ∧ ⑯ ⇨ *page 298, Fig. 188*.

## Setting channels via the multi-function steering wheel

Applies to: vehicles with TV

Important: TV mode must have been started.

- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
- To switch between radio and media or another source, press the ☰ button.
- To select a station/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.

[1] At the time of publication, the TV tuner supported the following standards, depending on the country: DVB-T/DVB-T2 with MPEG-2, MPEG-4, HEVC (H.265).

# TV functions

## Overview

Applies to: vehicles with TV

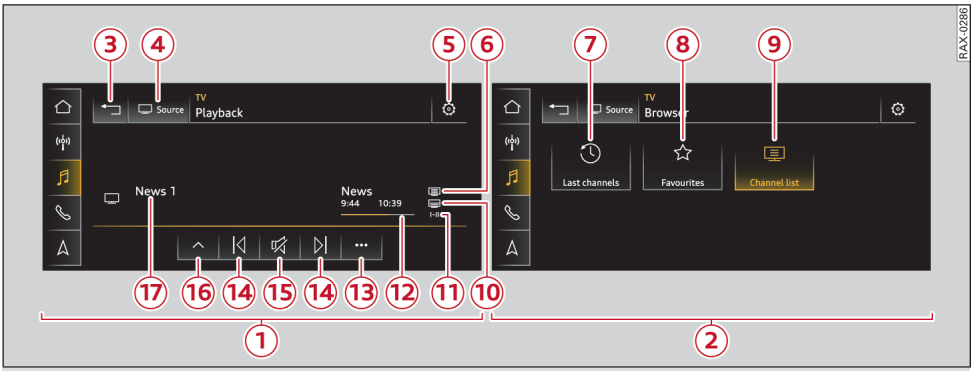



**Fig. 188** Upper display: TV functions in playback view (left-side), browser (right-side)

### How to use

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *a TV channel*. After a few seconds, the TV picture will be shown in full screen.
- To display the TV functions again, press the upper display.
- Applies to MMI: To open the browser ②, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⊞ ⑧ ⇨ *page 297, Fig. 187*.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

| | Symbol/designation | Description |
|---|---|---|
| ③ | ⮌ | To go back one level. |
| ④ | **Source** | To display sources in the media menu ⇨ *page 289*. |
| ⑤ | ⚙ | Settings ⇨ *page 300* |
| ⑥ | **Teletext available** | Refer to ⇨ *page 299*. |
| ⑦ | **Last channels** | To call up and delete recently viewed channels. |
| ⑧ | **Favourites** | To call up the favourites list, select, edit and store favourites ⇨ *page 299*. |
| ⑨ | **Channel list** | To call up an overview of all channels currently available. |
| ⑩ | **Subtitles available** | Refer to ⇨ *page 300*. |
| ⑪ | **Audio track available** | Refer to ⇨ *page 299*. |
| ⑫ | **Time of broadcast** | If available, information on the time of broadcast and the duration of the programme is shown. |
| ⑬ | ••• | To display the options menu ⇨ *page 299*. |
| ⑭ | ⏮/⏭ | To select the previous/next channel. |
| ⑮ | 🔊/🔇 | To mute/unmute the playback. |
| ⑯ | ∧ | The station list will be displayed. |
| ⑰ | **TV channel** | The name of the channel currently being received is displayed. |

## Options

Applies to: vehicles with TV

In the **Options** menu, you can change settings for the TV channel currently selected and call up certain functions, depending on availability.

▸ To call up the **Options** menu, press ••• (13) ⇨ *page 298, Fig. 188*.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

– **Store as favourite**
– **Store as a shortcut** ⇨ *page 31*
– **Teletext**
– **EPG**

### Audio track

For channels that are broadcast in multiple languages, you can select from the languages/sound channels available. Sound channels with audio description are marked with the symbol .

### Channel classificat.

If you select **Pre-sorted** ⇨ *page 300*, you can change the channel classification set at the factory and assign the TV channel to a category yourself.

## Teletext

Applies to: vehicles with TV

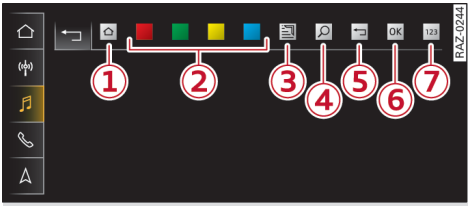



**Fig. 189** Upper display: Teletext

### Calling up teletext

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the TV channel selected must support the teletext function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *a TV channel* > ••• > **Teletext**.

### How to use

▸ Swipe your finger up/down to call up the next/previous page.
▸ Swipe your finger left/right to call up the next/previous subpage.

| | Description |
|---|---|
| ① | To call up the start page. |
| ② | To call up teletext pages directly. The coloured symbols have different functions depending on the page currently displayed. |
| ③ | To select the desired display option. |
| ④ | To switch zoom on/off, switch between upper/lower section. |
| ⑤ | To display the previous page[a]. |
| ⑥ | To confirm the page number entered[a]. |
| ⑦ | To enter the page number. Confirm with **OK**[a] if necessary. |

a) Not possible on versions for some countries.

**Note**

The assignment of the buttons depends on the teletext provider and may be shown on the display.

## Programme guide (EPG)

Applies to: vehicles with TV

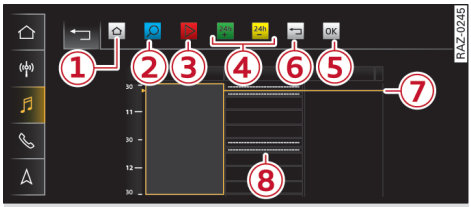



**Fig. 190** Upper display: Programme guide

### Calling up the programme guide

Important: The vehicle must be stationary and the TV channel selected must support the programme guide function.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *a TV channel* > ••• > **EPG**. ▶

### How to use

▸ To select an item, swipe your finger right/left and up/down. The item will be displayed with a coloured frame.

| | Description |
|---|---|
| ① | To switch to the EPG entry of the current programme. |
| ② | To zoom in/out of the EPG overview. |
| ③ | To set a channel via the EPG. The channel currently selected will be set in the background. |
| ④ | To operate the schedule preview, go back/forward a day. |
| ⑤ | To display a detailed view of the EPG entry currently selected. |
| ⑥ | To leave the detailed view of an EPG entry. |
| ⑦ | The time bar marks all TV programmes currently being broadcast. |
| ⑧ | Programmes with a short running time (dotted line). |

# Further settings

## Settings

Applies to: vehicles with TV

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⚙.

Depending on the TV channel selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following settings may be available:

– **Subtitles**
– **TV child lock** ⇨ *page 300*
– **CAS system notification** ⇨ *page 301*

### Region code

The region code for your country is set as standard. More than one region code is available in some countries. Select the region code with which the most channels are displayed in the channel list. If you are travelling abroad, you may need to select the relevant region code from the list. To reset the region code to the factory setting, press **Set standard region code**. This will reset all TV tuner settings to the factory settings.

### Channel Following

To ensure that you remain tuned to the selected TV channel, the TV tuner automatically switches between alternative channels if you leave the transmission area of the current channel when this function is switched on.

When this function is switched off, the alternative channels available are displayed in the channel list and can be selected manually.

### Channel sorting

If the setting **Pre-sorted** is selected, the channels in the channel list are sorted by category. The channels are assigned to categories at the factory. You can change the categories to change the channel sorting ⇨ *page 299*. Uncategorised channels are shown at the end of the channel list.

### Classification filter

If the setting **Pre-selected** is chosen, you can specify which channel categories are displayed using the classification filter.

## TV child lock

Applies to: vehicles with TV and child lock

You can use the child lock to set an age limit for television broadcasts and to set a PIN to protect against unauthorised viewing.

### Displaying TV child lock menu

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⚙ > **TV child lock**.
▸ Enter the child lock PIN. The PIN set at the factory is **1234**.
▸ Press **OK**.

### Setting/deactivating the safety level

Important: The TV child lock menu must be displayed.

▸ Select: **Safety level selected** > *an age limit from the list*, or:
▸ To lift all restrictions, press **No restriction**.

### Changing PIN

Important: The TV child lock menu must be displayed. ▸

▸ Select: **Change PIN** > *a new PIN for the child lock* > **OK**.
▸ Re-enter and press **OK**.

**Note**

– If you enter the wrong child lock PIN three times in a row, you will not be able to enter a PIN for approximately one minute. The PIN can only be reset by an Audi workshop.
– Whether a digital signal for the child lock activation can be received depends on the broadcasting organisations.

## Interference

Applies to: vehicles with TV

| Subject | Remedy |
|---|---|
| Channel list is incomplete or not displayed. | No reception at your current location. Wait briefly or move your vehicle to a different location. |
| Freeze frame, muted sound, hourglass display, symbol. | Periods of interference in a digital channel. Move your vehicle to a different location. |
| Temperature too high/low. | The thermal cut-out of the television receiver has switched the picture and sound off temporarily. |
| Limited or no TV reception. | Change the region code of the TV tuner. |

## Receiving encrypted TV channels

### CI+ module

Applies to: vehicles with CI+ slot

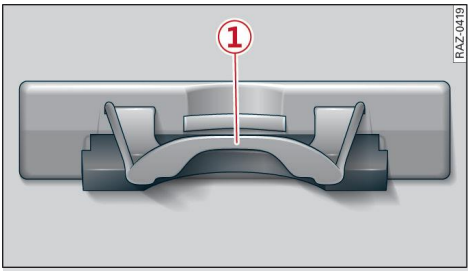



**Fig. 191** CI+ slot: CI+ module inserted

You will require a CI+ module for DVB-T2 to receive encrypted DVB-T2 channels (6) ⇨ *page 297, Fig. 187*. The CI+ module is available from specialist retailers.

#### Inserting the CI+ module

The CI+ slot is located in the luggage compartment behind a cover in the right side trim.

▸ Open the cover and insert the CI+ module in the slot.

#### Preparing the CI+ module for use

▸ Switch the MMI on.
▸ Ensure that you have stable TV reception.
▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > *an encrypted TV channel*.

Depending on the country and the provider, the CI+ module may need to be activated.

▸ Follow the instructions given by the provider of the CI+ module.
▸ Applies to MMI: If the provider requires an ID for activation, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⚙ > **CAS system notification**.

For further information on activation, please contact the provider of the CI+ module.

#### Changing the CI+ module

If you possess additional CI+ modules for trips abroad, you can change the modules in the vehicle.

▸ Remove the CI+ module from the CI+ slot ⇨ *page 302*.
▸ Follow the instructions ⇨ *page 301, Preparing the CI+ module for use*.

### Displaying the menu of the CI+ module

The CI+ module has its own TV menu, which may vary between providers. Only use this TV menu in conjunction with the provider's operating instructions.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > **Source** > **TV** > ⚙ > **CAS system notification** > **Call up CAS notification**.
- To select a menu item, swipe your finger up/down.
- Press **OK**.

### Removing the CI+ module

- To remove the CI+ module, hold it with two fingers and pull it carefully over the catch ①.

**CAUTION**

Additional charges may be incurred depending on the CI+ module provider in your country. For more information, contact your CI+ module provider.

**Note**

Use of the CI+ module depends on the service availability of third parties.

## CI+ malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with CI+ slot

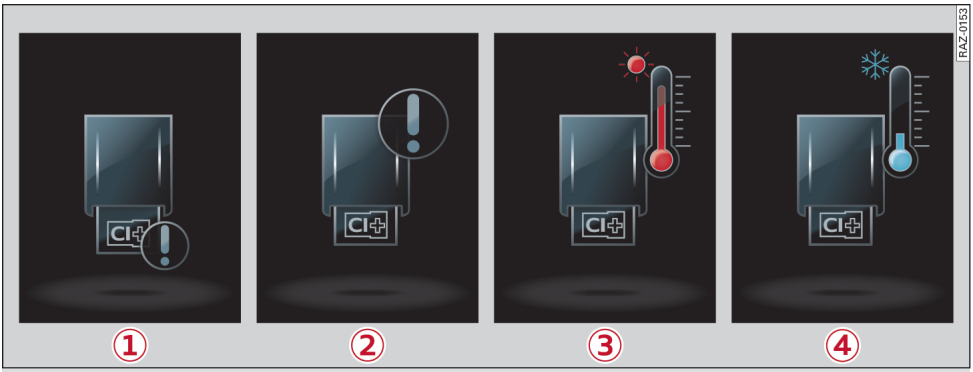



**Fig. 192** Upper display: Notifications of CI+ malfunctions

| | Subject | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| ① | CI+ module malfunction. | Remove the CI+ module for a few seconds and then put it back into the CI+ slot. For more information, contact the provider of your CI+ module or a qualified workshop. |
| ② | CI+ slot malfunction. | Your Audi dealer can provide you with further information if there is a prolonged malfunction. |
| ③ | CI+ module temperature too high. | To protect your CI+ module from damage, the thermal cut-out switches the CI+ system off if the temperature is below freezing or above +50 °C. It is not possible to receive encrypted channels if the CI+ system is switched off. |
| ④ | CI+ module temperature too low. | |

# In-car experience

## Themes

Applies to: vehicles with themes

This function enables you to use themes to customise the appearance of the infotainment system.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 254, Audi connect*.

### Using the themes preview

You can view a time-limited preview of a theme.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **THEMES** > > *a theme*.
- ▸ Press **Preview**.

### Downloading a theme

To use a theme permanently, you must download the theme.

Important: You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You must have added your vehicle in the myAudi app. You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

- ▸ Open the myAudi app and download the desired theme.
- ▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

### Selecting a theme

Important: You must have downloaded a theme.

- ▸ Select the desired theme in the myAudi app, or
- ▸ Applies to MMI: To activate a theme, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > *a theme*.
- ▸ To update the list, press .
- ▸ Applies to MMI: To restore the factory appearance, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > **No theme**.

### Using as a screensaver

When shown as a screensaver, the background image is displayed without the menus.

Important: You must have activated a theme.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: Swipe to the right until the background image is displayed without the menus.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

# Smartphone interface

## Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone wirelessly* or via a cable to the MMI system via the smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format and can be operated via the MMI.

### Connecting a smartphone by cable

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 8.0 or higher.

- Connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 288, Fig. 184* via a USB adapter ⇨ *page 288*.

### Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with wireless Apple CarPlay/wireless Android Auto

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 11 or higher.

- To connect your smartphone wirelessly, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your smartphone.
- Applies to Apple CarPlay: Call up the settings for Apple CarPlay on your iPhone.
- Applies to Android Auto: Make sure that wireless Android Auto is allowed in the app settings on your smartphone.
- Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on the MMI ⇨ *page 307*.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **DEVICES** > **Smartphone interface** > **New connection**.
- Using the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.

### Establishing a wireless* connection/ connection by cable

- Follow any instructions given by the system.
- Please note any system queries on your smartphone.
- Applies to MMI: If you declined the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, select the following on the home screen: **DEVICES** > **Smartphone interface** > *a smartphone*.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

**WARNING**

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

**Note**

– The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
  – The brand of your smartphone
  – The operating system version of your smartphone
  – The software version of the app in use
  – The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
  – Your mobile network/service provider
  – The individual settings on your smartphone
– One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.
– Please note that you must connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging ▶

function in the front cabin to use the smartphone interface.
– Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is not available in all countries.
– Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is possible on vehicles without navigation system/without a vehicle position that can be analysed (GPS data) only if the embedded SIM card in the vehicle is logged in to the mobile network ⇨ *page 255*.
– If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system ⇨ *page 35*.

– The MMI uses the menu language set on your smartphone.
– Some of the MMI functions are not available when a smartphone interface connection is active.
– You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when the smartphone interface is active.
– Whether the smartphone interface can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
– Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

## Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.

| Subject | Advice |
|---|---|
| Smartphone interface cannot be called up. | Check the battery charge level on your smartphone.<br>Check the USB adapter and use a different one if necessary.<br>Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country. |
| | **Android Auto**: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone. |
| Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails. | Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 288*. |
| | **Apple CarPlay**: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone. |
| | **Android Auto**: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars. |
| Wireless connection between smartphone and MMI fails. | **Apple CarPlay**: Call up the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle. |
| | **Android Auto**: Call up the settings for Bluetooth on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle. Delete your vehicle in the Android Auto app as well. |
| | Open the Connected devices menu ⇨ *page 307*. Delete your smartphone in the menu items Telephone 1 and Smartphone interface. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI ⇨ *page 26*. Restart your smartphone.<br>Call up the Wi-Fi settings on your smartphone. Check whether your smartphone has connected to the vehicle's 5 GHz Wi-Fi. Try connecting to the 5 GHz Wi-Fi manually. |
| Smartphone is not detected automatically. | Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇨ *page 288*.<br>Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met. |

4M6012720AE

# Further settings
# System settings

## Introduction

This chapter describes general settings. Information on specific settings can be found in the relevant chapter. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

## Date and time

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Available settings:

– **Set date and time automatically**
– **Date**
– **Time**
– **Date format**
– **Use 24h time format**
– **Automatic time zone**
– **Time zone**

## Measurement units

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Measurement units**.

Available settings:

– **Speed**
– **Distance**
– **Temperature**
– **Capacity**
– **Pressure**
– **Consumption (combustion engine)**
– **Consumption (electric motor)**

## Language and keyboard

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Language & keyboard**.

### Language

You can change the language of the display, the navigation cues and the speech dialogue system.

### Keyboard

Refer to ⇨ *page 31*.

## Sound

Important: An audio source must be active.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Sound**.

Available settings:

– **Treble**
– **Bass**
– **Balance/fader**
– **Speed-dependent volume control**
– **Subwoofer**
– **Surround level**
– **Focus**
– **3D sound**

## Announcements and sounds

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Announcements & sounds**.

Available settings:

– **Announcement volume**
– **Greeting sound**
– **Audi heartbeat**

**WARNING**

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

**Note**

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when you switch on the MMI.

## Bluetooth

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connection settings** > **Bluetooth**. ▶

### Bluetooth

You can set whether the MMI system is visible to other Bluetooth devices.

– **Visible**: Bluetooth is activated. The MMI is visible to other Bluetooth devices.
– **Invisible**: Bluetooth is activated. Bluetooth devices can be connected via the MMI. The MMI is not visible on other Bluetooth devices.
– **Off**: Bluetooth is deactivated. Bluetooth devices cannot be connected.

### Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will be connected automatically as soon as your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

### Bluetooth name

The Bluetooth name of the MMI is displayed and can be changed.

**Note**

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Bluetooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

## Factory settings

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **System maintenance** > **Restore factory settings**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The factory settings will be restored. The system will be restarted. This can take some time.

**Note**

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

# Software update

## Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can use software updates to keep the software in your vehicle up to date.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

– Map material update for the navigation system ⇨ *page 274*.
– Software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.

**WARNING**

– Only perform the installation when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
– In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

# Connected devices

## Displaying connected devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **DEVICES**.

Possible menu items:

– **Telephone 1**
– **Telephone 2**
– **Audio player**
– **Wi-Fi hotspot**
– **Headset**

### Smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI ⇨ *page 304*.

### myAudi app

This function is available when the corresponding Audi app is installed and running on your mobile device and the mobile device is connected to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.

**CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨ *in General information on page 254*.

## Managing connected devices

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 307*.

### Connecting a device

Important: The Bluetooth discoverability option must be activated for the MMI system ⇨ *page 307* and the mobile device.

- ▸ Make sure that the Bluetooth settings are open on your mobile device.
- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ To search for and connect your mobile device, press on **New connection** ⇨ *page 243*.

### Selecting a connected device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of connected devices. The connection will be established.

### Disconnecting a device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI.

### Deleting a device

- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▸ Press **Delete**.

If a device is listed more than once, it will be deleted accordingly from all of the menu items.

### Reconnecting devices

You can disconnect the devices that are currently connected and automatically start reconnecting them.

Important: The Bluetooth visibility of the MMI must be switched on. There must be at least one device in the list of connected devices.

- ▸ Press ⓑ.

**Note**

Audi recommends connecting no more than six devices. You should delete any devices you no longer need at regular intervals.

## Further options

Additional options may be available depending on the function selected.

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇨ *page 307*.

- ▸ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

### Bluetooth profiles

You can switch the profiles on/off individually on the MMI as desired.

### Favourite

Activate this function to set a paired mobile phone as the standard phone on the MMI.

The standard phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. This requires that the Bluetooth function of both the mobile phone and the MMI be switched on.

# Legal information

## General information

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

## Multi Media Interface

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General**.

### Licence periods

### Version information

### Legal information

Possible options:

– **Software information**

– **About Audi connect** ▶

– **About the memory**

## Smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 304*.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **DEVICES** > **Smartphone interface**.
▸ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
▸ Press **Legal information**.

## Instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

▸ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab ⇨ *page 18*.
▸ Press the ☰ button on the multi-function steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

– **Engine code**
– **Software information**
– **Version information**

## Audi connect apps

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect apps

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Audi connect settings**.

You will find legal information, software information, licence information and version information in the submenus.

# Checking and topping up fluids

## Fuel

### Identification of fuels[1)]

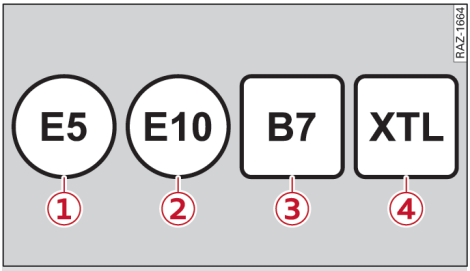



**Fig. 193** Fuel tank flap sticker: Identification of fuels (examples)

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, the individual symbols may be found on the vehicle's fuel tank flap. In some countries, you will also find the information on the fuel pumps. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Only fill the tank with the fuel types shown on the vehicle's fuel tank flap.

- ① **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E5" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
- ② **Petrol** with ethanol: "E" stands for **e**thanol. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, "E10" means that the fuel contains a maximum of 10% ethanol.
- ③ **Diesel** with biodiesel: "B" stands for **b**iodiesel. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, "B7" means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
- ④ **Diesel**: "XTL" stands for paraffinic diesel.

### Petrol

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

*The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.*

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's fuel tank flap (example):

#### 95 RON/ROZ or min. 91 RON/ROZ

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

#### min. 95 RON/ROZ

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

#### 98 RON/ROZ or min. 95 RON/ROZ

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible. ▶

[1)] May vary in different countries.

**CAUTION**

– Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E30 – E100). This will damage the fuel system.
– Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 – M100), because this will damage the fuel system and the engine.
– Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
– Audi recommends that you use only additives approved by Audi. Additives that have not been approved by Audi may cause engine damage. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
– Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
– High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

**Note**

– You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
– In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

### Diesel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

*The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.*

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

**CAUTION**

– Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
– Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.

### Paraffinic diesel [1)]

Applies to: vehicles suitable for paraffinic diesel

*The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.*

You can use **sulphur-free paraffinic diesel** that complies with the EN 15940 standard if the "XTL" symbol is on the sticker inside your vehicle's fuel tank flap. You must not use this fuel if the symbol is not on the sticker.

Please also refer to the description of diesel ⇨ *page 311*.

## Filling the tank

### Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Driver messages**

If the indicator lamp lights up and a corresponding message appears, you should add fuel to the vehicle's tank. ▶

[1)] This fuel is available in certain countries only.

**Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**Vehicle refuelled. Reset km/miles now?**

Select **Yes** if you want to reset the trip recorder to zero.

The display of this message depends on the amount of fuel in the tank and the amount of fuel added.

### Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Tank flap: fault. Release tank flap manually. See owner's manual**

or

**Tank flap: fault. Refuelling not possible. See owner's manual**

A malfunction has occurred. The tank flap must be released manually ⇨ *page 314*.

**Warning! Limited performance**

The fuel tank is almost empty. You should be prepared for a significant loss of performance. Drive to a filling station without delay.

**/ Please refuel and recharge battery. Total range x km**

or

**/ Tank system: please refuel immediately and recharge battery. Total range: x km**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, refuel the vehicle without delay; the high-voltage battery is also empty ⇨ *page 141*.

**Tank flap open. Please press button again to refuel**

When you press the button in the driver's door, you have a certain amount of time to refuel the vehicle. After this time, it is necessary to press the button again before refuelling.

## Procedure for filling the tank

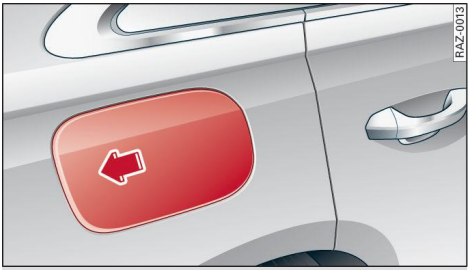



**Fig. 194** Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening fuel tank flap

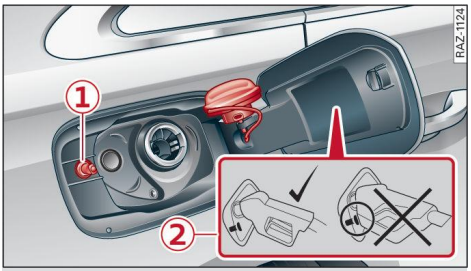



**Fig. 195** Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system.

- If necessary, unlock the vehicle.
- Conventional power unit: Press the left side of the flap to open it ⇨ *Fig. 194*.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Pull the button in the driver's door. Once the air has been released, the tank flap will automatically open slightly.
- Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇨ *Fig. 195*.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Read the notes on refuelling at the end of this chapter.
- Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full ⇨ ⚠.
- When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

▶

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇨ *page 310*.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇨ *page 378*.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp [1] will light up.

**WARNING**

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

– Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
– The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.
– Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling. Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
– The auxiliary heating* must be switched off when refuelling.
– Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
– Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.
– The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank. Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm, potentially at a later point in time. This can cause explosion, fire and serious or fatal injuries.

**WARNING**

Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.

– If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
  – Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
  – When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.
  – Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
  – Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.

**CAUTION**

– If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straight away to prevent damage to the vehicle.
– Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).
– Vehicles with diesel engine: When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

[1] Depends on engine and country

**For the sake of the environment**

– Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.
– Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.

**Note**

The fuel tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system[1]. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.

– If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
– The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel slowly.

**Note**

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

– When you insert the filling nozzle, make sure that it does not press against the tank flap release mechanism ① (see label inside tank flap ②) ⇨ *Fig. 195*). Otherwise, a valve in the filler neck will close and the refuelling process will be interrupted although the tank is not yet full.
– If you have pressed the tank flap release mechanism unintentionally, you will need to bleed the air from the tank system again. It is not necessary to remove the filling nozzle from the filler neck to do so. To bleed the air from the tank system, pull the button in the driver's door again.
– If the engine has switched itself off due to a lack of fuel, you may need to add up to 15 litres of fuel for the vehicle to detect that it has been refuelled. Otherwise it may not be possible to restart the engine.
– Fuel can age and cause starting problems. Audi recommends refuelling your vehicle within six months.

### Having the fuel tank flap released manually

▸ If you cannot open the fuel tank flap, seek professional assistance.
▸ Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

## Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

### General information

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle. AdBlue consumption is normally between 1.0 ltr. – 2.5 ltr./1000 km. In individual cases, the consumption may be different as a result of how the vehicle is driven along with the operating and ambient temperature.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, ▶

[1] Depending on country

you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop ⇨ *page 316*.

### Legal information

– It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
– Audi has approved this vehicle for use only with AdBlue corresponding to ISO-22241-1, for which the Certificate of Conformity for this type of vehicle has been issued.
– It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue which corresponds to ISO-22241-1.
– If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.
– The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.

**Note**

– The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇨ *page 315, Low AdBlue level*. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
– Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
– The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

## Instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

*The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.*

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

### Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display.

**Please refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF the next time you refuel. Range x km**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

**Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. No restart in x km. See owner's manual**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the onboard computer.

**Refill at least x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual**

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇨ *page 316, Before refilling AdBlue*.

### Filling the wrong fluid / system fault

If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

**Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or ▶

with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

**AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

## Before refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

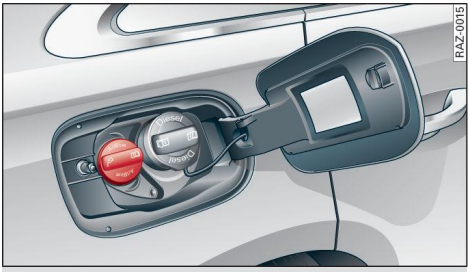



**Fig. 196** Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity on your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇨ *page 378*.

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Open the fuel tank flap ⇨ *page 312*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇨ *Fig. 196*.
- ▸ Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇨ *page 316*, canister ⇨ *page 317* or bottle ⇨ *page 317*.

**WARNING**

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

**CAUTION**

- – Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- – Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.
- – AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.
- – AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- – Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- – Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid.

**Note**

Please follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for storage and use.

## Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- ▸ Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇨ (!). ▶

▸ Put the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 318, After refilling AdBlue*.

**CAUTION**

– The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*.
– Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.
– You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*.

**Note**

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

## Refilling AdBlue from a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

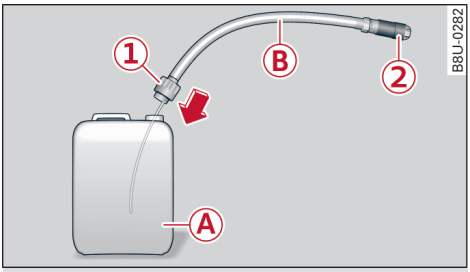



**Fig. 197** Canister with screw-on hose

▸ Take the cap off the refill canister ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*, ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*.
▸ Screw the end of the hose (1) clockwise onto the opening on the canister (A).
▸ Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).
▸ Fit the end of the hose (2) onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
▸ Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
▸ Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it.
▸ Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 318, After refilling AdBlue*.

**CAUTION**

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

**Note**

– Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle.
– Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

## Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

▸ Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*, ⇨ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*.
▸ Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
▸ To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
▸ Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
▸ Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇨ *page 318, After refilling AdBlue*.

**CAUTION**

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

**Note**

– Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops.
– Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

## After refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

### Closing the filler neck

- ▸ Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇨ ⚠ *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*, ⇨ (!) *in Before refilling AdBlue on page 316*.
- ▸ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

### After refilling

The vehicle must be driven so that the system can detect the AdBlue which has been added. This process can take several minutes.

- ▸ If the AdBlue tank had run dry and a range of 0 km was shown on the display, switch on the ignition for approx. 30 seconds before starting the engine.

**Note**

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

# Emission control system

## General information

**WARNING**

The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.

– Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!

– Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!

– Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system – risk of fire!

## Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 318, General information*.

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

## Particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 318, General information*.

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. if the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter will become obstructed with soot and a driver message will appear. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

**Driver messages:**

**Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Or

**Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Different regeneration procedures are required, depending on the type of power unit (petrol/diesel/plug-in hybrid). ▶

### Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine without plug-in hybrid drive

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- ▸ Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- ▸ Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time.

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

### Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine or plug-in hybrid drive

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving at a constant speed** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇨ (!).

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

- ▸ Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h ⇨ ⚠. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- ▸ Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**⚠ WARNING**

When regenerating the particulate filter, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

**(!) CAUTION**

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.

**ⓘ Note**

- – As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.
- – Noises, odours and increased engine speeds when idling may be noticed during regeneration. The availability of electric driving is limited on vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive.
- – Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the indicator lamp requesting you to refuel the vehicle ⛽ also appears in the instrument cluster during the regeneration trip, the particulate filter regeneration process may be interrupted. Drive to a filling station and then resume the regeneration trip after refuelling the vehicle.
- – To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

## Emission control system

If the indicator lamp 🔧 lights up or flashes, malfunctions have occurred which are relevant for emissions. These malfunctions may reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the ▶

catalytic converter, for example. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly ⇨ *page 312*[1)].

# Engine compartment

## General information

*Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.*

**Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.** ⇨ ⚠

**Explanation of warning symbols:**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Observe all warnings – risk of injury! |
|  | Hot engine parts!<br>Rotating parts! |
|  | Fan can switch on at any time! |
|  | High voltage! The voltage of these components (such as the high-voltage system or ignition system) is lethal! Touching damaged live high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. |
|  | High voltage! Switch off the engine before touching any part of ignition system! |
|  | The catalytic converter can be damaged if the engine oil level is too high! |
|  | Hot coolant – risk of scalding! |
|  | Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual. |

**⚠ WARNING**

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

– Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
– Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
– If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

**⚠ WARNING**

– Switch off the engine.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Select transmission position P (Park).
– Wait for the engine to cool down.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator antifreeze).
– Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
– Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
– To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: The cap on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system is fitted with a sealing tag which must not be removed under any circumstances ⇨ *page 323, Fig. 200*. If there is no sealing ▶

1) Depends on engine and country

tag on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system, please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: The cap and sealing tag on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system must only be opened by a qualified workshop.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure; there is a risk of being scalded.
– Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
– Never remove the engine cover panel – risk of burns!
– Never touch ignition cables or other components of the electronic high-voltage ignition system while the engine is running or being started – risk of electrocution!
– The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
– If any tests or repairs have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc:
  – First apply the parking brake and select transmission position P (Park).
  – Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can become caught up in rotating engine parts. Before commencing any work, always remove ties and jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight clothing to prevent these from becoming caught up in the engine parts.
– Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near naked flames.
  – Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
– Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
– Do not expose yourself to exhaust gases or chemical substances for any longer than necessary.

**CAUTION**

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.

**For the sake of the environment**

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

## Opening/closing bonnet

*The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.*




**Fig. 198** Footwell: Release lever




**Fig. 199** Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety notes ⇨ *page 320, General information*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

### Opening the bonnet

- Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Switch off the ignition before you release the bonnet; otherwise the combustion engine may start automatically.
- With the door open, pull the lever [1] under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇨ *Fig. 198*.
- Lift the bonnet slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the release lever ⇨ *Fig. 199* in the direction indicated by the arrow. This will release the arrester hooks.
- Open the bonnet.

### Closing the bonnet

- To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. ⇨ ⚠

### Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock**

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

**WARNING**

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

[1] Symbol not available in all countries.

## Engine compartment layout

*Main components for checking and refilling*

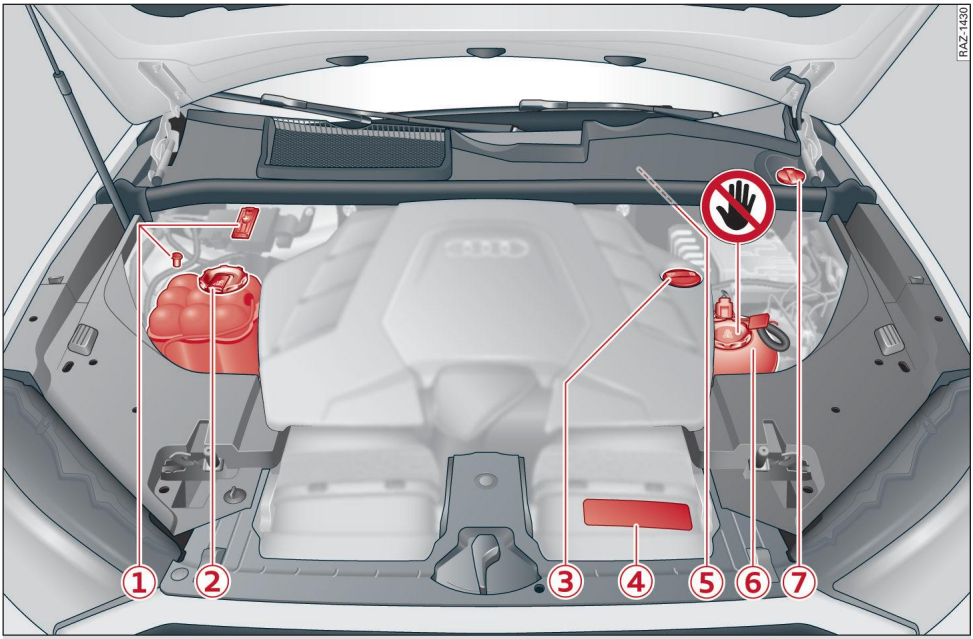



**Fig. 200** Engine compartment layout: Example

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 320, General information*.

① Jump-start terminals: under a cover (+); hexagon head (–) ⇨*page 333, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇨*page 360, Jump-starting*

② Coolant expansion tank for combustion engine (🌡) ⇨*page 327*

③ Engine oil filler cap (🛢) ⇨*page 325, Checking the engine oil level*

④ Sticker for engine oil specification ⇨*page 324*

⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (⭘) under a cover ⇨*page 329*

⑥ Plug-in hybrid drive: Coolant expansion tank for high-voltage system (🌡) ⇨*page 327*

⑦ Windscreen washer container (🚿) ⇨*page 334*

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir, the coolant expansion tank and the engine oil filler cap may be different on some engine and country versions.

**Note**

Plug-in hybrid drive*: Please note the information for the coolant expansion tank on ⇨*page 327, Checking the coolant level* and for jump-starting on ⇨ⓘ *in Preparations on page 360*.

# Engine oil

## If the engine oil level is too low

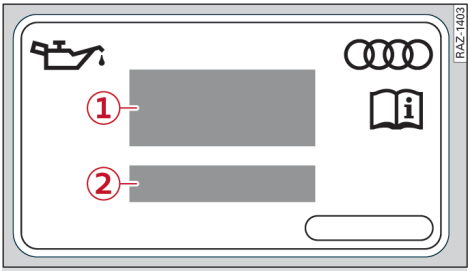



**Fig. 201** Engine oil sticker

– ① Engine oil standard
– ② Engine oil viscosity

If you have to top up the engine oil, use one of the oils that meet the engine oil standard specified on the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 201*. The sticker with the specified standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 323, Fig. 200*. If you use this oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

– Applies to petrol engines: Standards: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.
– Applies to diesel engines: Standards: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.

Audi recommends having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

**CAUTION**

Audi recommends that you use the types of engine oil that have been formulated to conform to the corresponding VW standard. Using engine oil that does not meet these quality requirements may cause damage to the engine. In an emergency, 0.5 ltr. of engine oil corresponding to the standards specified above may be used as an exception.

**Note**

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

## Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low**

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 325*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇨ *page 326*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
– If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

**Please add oil immediately**

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the oil level ⇨ *page 325* and top it up immediately ⇨ *page 326*.

**Please add max. x ltr. oil. You can continue driving**

Add the amount of oil shown soon ⇨ *page 326*.

**Please reduce oil level**

The engine contains too much oil – risk of damage to the catalytic converter and engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have any excess oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

**Oil level sensor: engine oil change required. Please contact workshop**

The engine oil has become contaminated with fuel. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Do not attempt to correct the level by extracting engine oil – risk of engine damage. Drive to a qualified workshop soon to have the engine oil changed. ▶

**Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop**

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Oil pressure sensor: fault. Please contact workshop**

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**Please warm up engine**

It is possible for fuel to enter the engine oil, especially at low outside temperatures. The temperature of the engine oil needs to be high enough so that the fuel in it can evaporate.

Drive in transmission position S.

Run the engine at high rpm speeds but avoid using full throttle.

You should drive for at least 30 minutes; however it is possible that the indicator lamp may not go out during this period. Repeat the procedure at your convenience.

If the indicator lamp does not disappear after several runs, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

When responding to the message **Please warm up engine**, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

**Note**

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

## Checking the engine oil level

*You can check the engine oil level on the MMI.*

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 320, General information*.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the warm engine.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition again without starting the engine.
- ▸ Wait for about 5 minutes for the engine oil to drain back into the sump.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Read off the oil level on the display. Top up the engine oil if the bar in the oil level display is near the “min” mark ⇨ *page 326*.

**CAUTION**

There is a risk of engine damage if the engine oil level is too low or too high.

**Note**

The oil level shown on the MMI is intended solely for information purposes. The indicator lamp and a driver message are shown in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too low. Add more engine oil ⇨ *page 326, Topping up the engine oil*.

**Note**

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption on RS models can be up to 0.8 ltr./1,000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before a journey.

## Topping up the engine oil




**Fig. 202** Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (example)

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 320, General information*.

- ▸ Switch off the engine.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨*page 322*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap from the oil filler opening ⇨*Fig. 202*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇨*page 324*.
- ▸ Screw the filler cap back on.
- ▸ Close the bonnet ⇨*page 322*.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on again after two minutes and read off the current oil level on the MMI ⇨*page 325, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Applies when using engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard: Add a little more engine oil if necessary.

**WARNING**

- – Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
- – The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- – Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- – Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- – Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

**CAUTION**

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

**For the sake of the environment**

- – Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- – Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.

# Cooling system

## Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

### Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Switch off power unit and check coolant level. See owner's manual**

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇨*page 327*.

- – If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇨*page 327*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

**Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary**

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

- – Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

**Cooling system: fault. Please switch off power unit** ▶

Do not drive on. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

**Electric drive: fault. Cooling system. Please contact workshop**

There is a fault in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

### Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

| Coolant additive | Specification |
|---|---|
| G12evo | TL 774 L |

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

| | Coolant additive | Frost protection |
|---|---|---|
| Hot regions | min. 40 %<br>max. 45 % | min. -25 °C<br>(-13 °F) |
| Cold regions | min. 50 %<br>max. 55 % | max. -40 °C<br>(-40 °F) |

**CAUTION**

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only distilled water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of engine damage!
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of engine damage! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

## Checking the coolant level

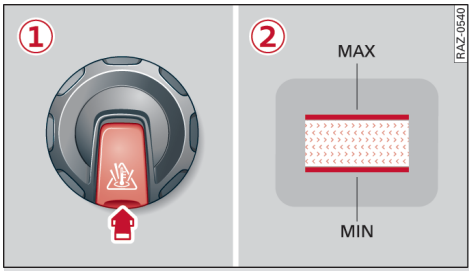



**Fig. 203** Engine compartment – coolant expansion tank (example): ① Cap with release catch, ② Marks

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 320, General information*.

Applies to vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Your vehicle has two separate coolant expansion tanks ⇨ *page 323, Fig. 200*: one for the combustion engine and one for the high-voltage system. **The coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system is sealed and must not be opened** ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠!

### Checking the coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 322*.
- ▸ Check the coolant level in the expansion tank ⇨ *page 323, Fig. 200* using the external markings ② ⇨ *Fig. 203* as a guide. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks ②. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark. ▶

- Conventional power unit: Please read ⇨ *page 326, Cooling system* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Please read ⇨ *page 326, Cooling system* before topping up the coolant in the expansion tank for the combustion engine.
- Plug-in hybrid drive: Do NOT drive on if there is insufficient coolant in the expansion tank for the high-voltage system. Please contact a qualified workshop immediately ⇨ ⚠.

### Topping up the coolant

Applies to: coolant expansion tank for combustion engine

Follow the procedure described below when topping up coolant in the expansion tank for the combustion engine.

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇨ (!).

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive. Only use non-distilled water in an emergency. Always use clean water.

- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- Press the release catch on the cap (1) ⇨ *Fig. 203* and carefully screw it anti-clockwise as far as the first point of resistance ⇨ ⚠.
- Press down the release catch again and unscrew the cap completely.
- Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇨ *page 327* up to the MAX mark.
- You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- Screw the cap on clockwise until you feel the second point of resistance.

**⚠ WARNING**

– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, stop the engine, switch off the ignition and allow the engine to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇨ *page 320, General information*.
– Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
– When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
– The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

**⚠ WARNING**

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system may be opened and topped up by a qualified workshop only.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system is fitted with a sealing tag which must not be removed under any circumstances ⇨ *page 323, Fig. 200*. If there is no sealing tag on the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system, please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop.
– When coolant is added, it can get inside the high-voltage components and cause a short circuit – risk of fire!

**(!) CAUTION**

Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being virtually empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage.
– Applies to coolant expansion tank for combustion engine: Do not add coolant if the coolant expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
– Applies to coolant expansion tank for combustion engine: If there is coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a ▶

qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning lamp comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.

– Applies to coolant expansion tank for combustion engine: If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.
– If you use non-distilled water, the chemicals that it contains can cause serious corrosion damage to the engine – risk of engine damage!
– If you have used a large quantity of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 ltr.) in an emergency, drive directly to a qualified workshop and have the coolant changed.

## Brake fluid

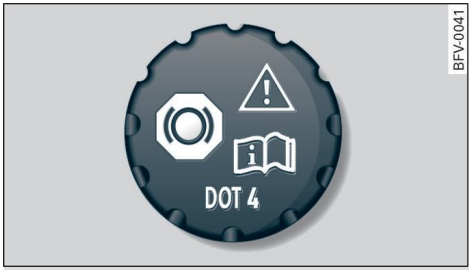



**Fig. 204** Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 320, General information*.

### Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath a cover in the engine compartment on the driver's side.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Slide the cover, which is located under the windscreen wiper on the driver's side, towards the windscreen and detach it.
- ▸ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨*page 323, Fig. 200*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Replace the cover.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

### Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level**

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.

### Having the brake fluid changed

The brake fluid must be changed at regular intervals by a qualified workshop. The workshop can inform you about the service intervals for the brake fluid change.

**⚠ WARNING**

– If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.
– Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
– The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
– If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely. The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

**CAUTION**

– If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
– Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

# Electrical system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning/indicator lamp / or lights up, there is a power supply or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

**/ Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle**

Stop the vehicle safely and do not drive on. You should also switch off the ignition ⇨ ⚠. Seek professional assistance.

**Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop**

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

**Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop**

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

**Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving**

Starting reliability may be impaired.

– If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.
– If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

# Battery

## General information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠.

Several batteries using different technologies may be fitted in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (e.g. for starting the engine and the basic supply) ⇨ *page 332, Safety information*
– Additional battery (e.g. for recuperation and extra equipment) ⇨ *page 332, Safety information*
– Plug-in hybrid drive: High-voltage battery (e.g. for electric driving) ⇨ *page 139, Introduction*.

### If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be ▶

recharged at least once a month ⇨ *page 333*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

### Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12-volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

### Replacing the battery

Applies to: 12-volt vehicle battery

Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, please enquire about the electromagnetic compatibility, capacity and the required maintenance, performance and safety features of the new 12-volt vehicle battery before purchasing it from your qualified workshop. The gas vent on the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The gas vent on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.

When replacing the 12-volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12-volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.

**WARNING**

- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!
- Using a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications or dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can cause short-circuits or fires. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
- Only maintenance-free and leak-proof 12-volt vehicle batteries that have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery may be used.
- Charging cables or jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 333*.

**CAUTION**

- If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12-volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇨ *page 333, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*.
- Electrical components which can heat up during operation are located behind a trim panel underneath the luggage compartment floor. To prevent these components from overheating, objects such as blankets must not be stored underneath the floor panel. The components will switch off temporarily if they overheat. This will be indicated by a message in the instrument cluster until the temperature has returned to normal.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
- If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications set by Audi, or that has a battery capacity that is too low, the vehicle's certification for use on public roads is void and thus also the vehicle's registration ⇨ ⚠.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

## Safety information

**Explanation of warning symbols:**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Observe all warnings – risk of injury! |
|  | Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual. |
|  | 12-volt vehicle battery. High-voltage component. Improper handling can cause short circuits ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 331*. |
|  | With the exception of jump-starting and charging the 12-volt vehicle battery, all work on the 12-volt vehicle battery must be performed by a qualified workshop ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 331* ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on batteries on page 331*. |
|    | High voltage! The voltage of the high-voltage system is lethal! Touching damaged high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted. |
|  | Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. **First aid**: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately. |
|  | Always wear safety glasses. |
|  | If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. |
|  | Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment. |
|  | The high-voltage battery is flammable. The high-voltage battery must never be exposed to fire, sparks or naked flames. The high-voltage battery must always be handled with care, in order to prevent damage and fluid leaks. |
|  | Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte. |
|  | A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge! |
|  | Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Never dismantle the high-voltage battery and never remove its cover. |
|   | Applies to high-voltage battery: Improper handling of the high-voltage battery can lead to serious or fatal injury. Maintenance work on the high-voltage battery must only be carried out by suitably qualified and trained personnel. Never make modifications to the high-voltage battery. The high-voltage battery must never come into contact with water or other fluids when it is open. Fluids can cause short-circuits, electric shocks and burns. The high-voltage battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts. |

**WARNING**

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop. ▶

– Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
– The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

**CAUTION**

Applies to: mild hybrid drive

– To prevent damage, e.g. due to power surges, components must not be connected to the 48-volt battery terminals and wires.
– Maintenance work must always be carried out by qualified personnel.
– The 48-volt lithium-ion battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts.
– Never attempt to replace the 48-volt lithium-ion battery yourself. The 48-volt lithium-ion battery in this vehicle must only be replaced with a 48-volt lithium-ion battery from Audi which is supplied explicitly for this vehicle. The use of other 48-volt lithium-ion or lead-acid batteries can cause substantial faults and even the total failure of the electrical system.
– Never make modifications to the lithium-ion battery.
– Never open the 48-volt lithium-ion battery.

## Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

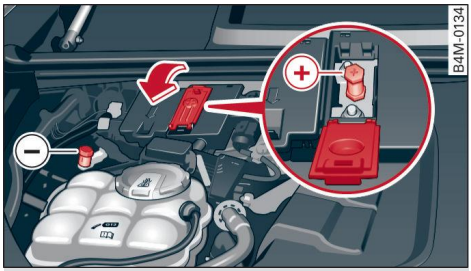



**Fig. 205** Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 320, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on batteries on page 331* and ⇨ ⚠.

Important: Only use chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

The terminals for the charging cables are located in the engine compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body.

▸ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
▸ Open the bonnet ⇨ *page 322*.
▸ Press the release lever on the positive terminal and fold open the cover ⇨ *Fig. 205*.
▸ Follow the correct procedure for connecting the charger cables to the jump-start terminals (hexagon terminal under cap ⊕, earth point on body ⊖).
▸ Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
▸ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging ⇨ ⚠.
▸ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
▸ Now disconnect the charger cables.
▸ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
▸ Close the bonnet ⇨ *page 322*.

**WARNING**

– Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
– Charging cables or jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 333*.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
– When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the ▶

electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
– Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!

**Note**

Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

## Windscreen washer system

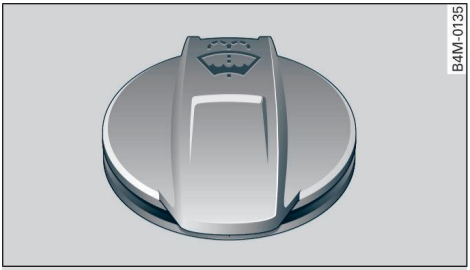



**Fig. 206** Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety information ⇨*page 320, General information*.

The container for the windscreen washer contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system* ⇨*page 323*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇨*page 378*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

### Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

**Please add washer fluid**

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system*.

**CAUTION**

– The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
– Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
– Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

## Service interval display

*The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.*

There are two service interval display levels:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder**: After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

### Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Service intervals**.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate ▶

the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

### Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

Applies to MMI: To reset the display, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Service intervals**.

**WARNING**

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

**CAUTION**

- Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
- Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
- Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

# Wheels

## Tyres and rims

### General information

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- ▸ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▸ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▸ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▸ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▸ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▸ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

**WARNING**

– Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!

– Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

**CAUTION**

– Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

– Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

### Tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

**205/60 R 16 92 H**

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code for tyre type: radial
16 Rim diameter in inches
92 Load index
H Speed rating

**Manufacturing date**

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

**DOT ... 2225 ...**

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2025.

**AO or RO**

Tyres with the marking "AO" or "RO" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

### New wheels or tyres

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel. ▶

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Applies to RS model: All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ ⚠.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document [1]). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by the differences in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not use steel wheels which are 17 inches or larger. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
- If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

[1] COC = Certificate of conformity

## Tyre wear / damage

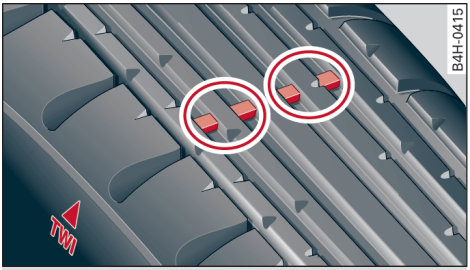



**Fig. 207** Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

### Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

– The wear on under-inflated or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
– Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5,000 km – 10,000 km.
– If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
– Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

### Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇨ *Fig. 207* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth[1)] is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

### Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇨ *page 358*.

### Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

**⚠ WARNING**

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

## Tyre pressure

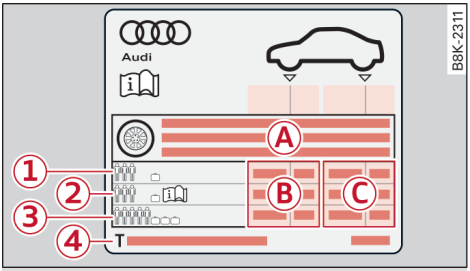



**Fig. 208** B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the spare wheel* are specified ▶

[1)] Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

on a sticker. The sticker ⇨ *Fig. 208* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

Ⓐ Tyre size

Ⓑ Tyre pressure for the front wheels

Ⓒ Tyre pressure for the rear wheels

① Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

② Tyre pressure (comfort setting)* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.

③ Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

④ Tyre pressure for the spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. However, if you prefer an extra-smooth ride you can select the comfort setting* ②. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressures to the specified maximum ③ ⇨ ⚠.

### Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- ▸ Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- ▸ The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- ▸ Refer to the sticker ⇨ *Fig. 208* for the correct tyre pressures.
- ▸ If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- ▸ Then store the new tyre pressures in the MMI ⇨ *page 343* or ⇨ *page 344*.
- ▸ Check the pressure of the spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

**WARNING**

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

– Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Under-inflation, high speeds and heavy loads require the tyres to flex more, which causes them to overheat. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

**For the sake of the environment**

– Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.
– Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting* may also result in increased fuel consumption.

**Note**

Audi recommends always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

## Wheel bolts and rims

### Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

### Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 359, After changing a wheel*.

– Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.

– Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!

## Loose wheel warning

Applies to: vehicles with loose wheel warning

*Within the limits of the system, the loose wheel warning in the instrument cluster warns you if one or more of the wheels is no longer properly secured.*

The loose wheel warning makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the vibration of the individual wheels. If the system detects one or more loose wheels, the driver is alerted by a warning lamp and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one wheel is affected, the display will indicate its position.

### Driver messages

**Wheel bolts loose. Please stop vehicle safely and check all wheel bolts.**

Loose wheel warning for at least one of the wheels ⇨ ⚠. Use the box spanner from the vehicle toolkit to check the wheel bolts of all the wheels right away. Have the tightening torques checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution. For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇨ *page 359, After changing a wheel*.

**Wheel check active. Please drive on carefully**

After a driver message has been displayed and you have checked the wheel bolts, the system will check the wheels as you drive. This may take a few minutes.

**Loose wheel warning: fault. See owner's manual**

A system fault has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

– If a driver message is displayed, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the wheel bolts.
– Check your wheels for damage and have any damaged wheels inspected and/or replaced by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the driver message may not appear immediately.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the wheel bolts are properly secured.

**Note**

– If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the loose wheel warning may also be out of action.
– When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction may occur.

## Winter tyres

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

▸ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 336*. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
▸ After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ *page 338*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

**For the sake of the environment**

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on ▶

roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

**Note**

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ⛄ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

## Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions (snow and ice).

- Snow chains can be used on the rear wheels only.
- Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):

| Rim size | Rim offset | Tyre size |
|---|---|---|
| 8.5Jx19 | 20 mm | 265/55 |
| 8.5Jx20 | 20 mm | 265/50 |

Applies to: RS model

| Rim size | Rim offset | Tyre size |
|---|---|---|
| 10Jx22 | 18 mm | 275/40 |

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 10.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

**WARNING**

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

- Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.
- If the air suspension* is defective you must NOT drive with snow chains as the vehicle is extremely low on the road. Driving with snow chains could cause severe damage to the wheel housings and other parts of the vehicle.

**Note**

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇨ *page 137*.

## Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel and tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 338*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

4M6012720AE

# Tyre pressure loss indicator

## Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

*The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.*

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 343*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 338, Fig. 208*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

– The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
– The tyres have suffered structural damage.
– The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇨ *page 343*.
– Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.

### Indicator lamps

If the indicator lamp lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇨ ⚠. Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 343*.

If the indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal is issued although you have not yet stored the new tyre pressures, drive to an authorised workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual**

If TPMS appears and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇨ *page 343*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

**WARNING**

– If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
– It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

**Note**

– If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
– When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction may occur.
– The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to “Audi Genuine Tyres” ⇨ *page 336*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

## Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

*When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the MMI.*

- ▸ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 338*.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition.
- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Tyre pressure** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

**Note**

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

# Tyre pressure monitoring system

## General information

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

*The tyre pressure monitoring system keeps a check on the tyre pressures on the four wheels while you are driving.*

The system uses sensors to measure temperatures and pressures in the tyres. The sensors transmit the data to the control unit by radio.

The tyre pressure monitoring system displays the current pressures and temperatures of the tyres on the MMI while the vehicle is moving ⇨ *page 343*. In addition, it compares the current tyre pressures with the stored tyre pressures and warns you via the driver information system if it detects a discrepancy ⇨ *page 344*.

The system cannot check whether the stored tyre pressures correspond to the recommended tyre pressures for your vehicle. You must store the new tyre pressures ⇨ *page 344*:

– after every adjustment to the tyre pressures, e.g. after changing the laden weight of your vehicle,
– after changing a wheel, or
– when using wheels with new wheel sensors.

**WARNING**

– The tyre pressure monitoring system helps the driver to monitor the tyre pressures. However, it is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are at the correct pressure.
– Never re-adjust the tyre pressure when the tyre is hot. This can cause serious damage to the tyre or even a blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– Under-inflated tyres flex more than they should. This causes them to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system cannot warn you of tyre damage or defects that could lead, for example, to a tyre blow-out. Perform a regular visual check of your tyres.

**Note**

– The sensors and valves do not have to be detached or replaced when fitting new tyres. Only the valve core needs to be replaced, and if necessary the valve and the electronic components in the wheel. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
– After using the tyre repair kit*, the tyre pressure monitoring system may malfunction. Have the sensors replaced by a qualified workshop.

## Displaying tyre pressures and temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

Important: The vehicle must be moving.

- ▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Tyre pressure** > **Display tyre pressures**.

The current tyre pressures are displayed in green, yellow or red on the MMI:

– **Green:** The tyre pressure is roughly the same as the reference value.
– **Yellow:** The tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value. ▶

– **Red:** The tyre pressure is much too low compared with the reference value.

The reference value is the last stored tyre pressure value ⇨ *page 344*.

Bear in mind that the tyre inflation pressure is also influenced by the temperature of the tyre. The tyre heats up while the vehicle is being driven and the tyre pressure will rise accordingly.

**WARNING**

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 343*.

**Note**

The tyre pressures and temperatures are not shown in the display when the vehicle is stationary or during the initialisation phase. Horizontal dashes **--.--** will appear instead of the pressure and temperature figures.

## Loss of tyre pressure

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

If the indicator lamp lights up, the tyre pressure is too low compared with the reference value. Adjust the pressure of the relevant tyre(s) at the next opportunity and store the pressures ⇨ *page 344*.

**Flat tyre! Safely stop vehicle. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the tyre pressure has reached a critical value compared with the reference value. Avoid unnecessary braking and steering manoeuvres. Adapt your driving style to the prevailing conditions. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyre(s). If it is possible to continue driving, you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop and have the defective tyre(s) replaced immediately.

**WARNING**

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 343*.

## Storing new tyre pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

*To enable the tyre pressure monitoring system to work reliably, it is important to store the correct pressure settings.*

You should always store the tyre pressures if new sensors have been fitted or after changing the pressures, such as when carrying a different load.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇨ *page 338, Fig. 208*. Only adjust and store the pressure of the tyres when they are at approximately ambient temperature. If the tyre temperatures are higher than the ambient temperature, the pressures should be increased by approx. 0.2 bar above the pressures specified on the tyre pressure sticker.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Tyre pressure** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now**.
- If the new tyre pressures do not appear on the MMI, you will need to drive for about 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels can be received again.

During this initialisation phase, **--.--** will be shown on the pressure and temperature display and some functions of the tyre pressure monitoring system will not be available. The system will warn you only if the pressure of one or more tyres is below the minimum reference pressure.

**Tyre pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tyres and store pressures in MMI**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message also appears, the system has detected that the sensor positions have changed because of a wheel change or that new sensors have been fitted. Store the new tyre pressures.

**WARNING**

Please observe the important safety information and notes ⇨ *page 343*.

## Possible malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system

**TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual**

If the indicator lamp TPMS appears after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving and the indicator lamp (!) flashes for approximately one minute and then remains lit, there is a fault in the system. This fault can have the following causes:

– If the display appears at the end of the initialisation process, this means that the system cannot detect the wheel sensors required to monitor the pressures. This can happen if one or more of the tyres fitted does not have a sensor or the sensors are incompatible.
– One of the wheel sensors or another component may not be working.
– Snow chains interfere with the signals transmitted by the sensors and can prevent the system from functioning properly.
– The tyre pressure monitoring system may be inoperative due to radio interference.
– Radio systems operating on the same frequency, such as radio headphones or two-way radios inside the vehicle, produce strong electromagnetic fields which cause temporary interference.

The indicator lamp TPMS and the message will disappear as soon as the tyre pressure monitoring system is available again. If the fault persists and the indicator lamp TPMS stays on, you should drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

# Care of vehicle and cleaning

## General information

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

**WARNING**

– Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
– Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

## Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

### High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sunroof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors*, camera lenses* or the laser scanner*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Plug-in hybrid drive: Do not point the spray jet at the clip wall mount*.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

### Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sunroof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use a brushless car wash.

### Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

### Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with plenty of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.

**WARNING**

– Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!

▶

– To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
– After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

**CAUTION**

– Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
– Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
– Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
– Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes ⇨ *page 133*. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!
– Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
– Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
– The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
– Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
– Matt-painted vehicle parts:
  – Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
  – Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
  – Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

**For the sake of the environment**

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

## Information on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇨ ⚠.

**Cleaning the exterior**

| Component(s) | Situation | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| **Wiper blades** | Dirt/deposits | Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 68* |
| **Headlights/ rear lights** | Dirt/deposits | Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)] |
| **Sensors/ camera lenses** | Dirt/deposits | Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent<br>Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent |
| | Snow/ice | Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray |

4M6012720AE

| Component(s) | Situation | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| **Laser scanner** | Dirt/deposits | Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)] |
| **Wheels** | Road salt | Water |
| | Brake dust | Acid-free cleaning agent |
| **Tailpipes** | Road salt | Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary |
| **Trim/ mouldings** | Dirt/deposits | Mild detergent[a)]; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary |
| **Rubber seals** | Dirt/deposits | Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent[a)] |
| | Frost | Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products |
| **Paintwork** | Fuel overflow | Rinse with water without delay |
| | Surface rust | Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions |
| | Corrosion | Have it removed by your qualified workshop |
| | Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork | Apply wax (at least twice a year) |
| | Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing | Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds |
| | Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt | Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth |
| | Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion | Remove immediately using mild detergent[a)] and a soft cloth |
| **Carbon parts** | Dirt/deposits | Same treatment as painted parts ⇨ *page 346* |
| **Decals** | Dirt/deposits | Soft sponge with mild detergent[a)] |
| | Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt | Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth |
| | Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion | Remove immediately using mild detergent[a)] and a soft cloth |
| | Fuel overflow | Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent[a)] and a soft cloth |
| **Audi e-tron charging system** | Dirt/deposits | Soft, dry cloth |
| **Clip wall mount** | Dirt/deposits | Soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent |

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

**Cleaning the interior**

| Component(s) | Situation | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| **Windows** | Dirt/deposits | Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry |
| **Trim/ mouldings** | Dirt/deposits | Mild detergent[a)] |
| **Plastic parts** | Dirt/deposits | Damp cloth |
| | Heavier dirt/deposits | Mild detergent[a)]; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary |
| **Displays/instrument cluster** | Dirt/deposits | Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush |
| **Controls and displays** | Dirt/deposits | Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent[a)] |
| **Seat belts** | Dirt/deposits | Mild detergent[a)] (allow to dry before retracting) |
| **Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre** | Surface dirt | Vacuum cleaner |
| | Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Absorbent cloth and mild detergent[a)] |
| | Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc. | Apply mild detergent[a)], dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water |
| | Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc. | Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent[a)] |
| **Natural leather** | Fresh dirt/stains | Cotton cloth with mild detergent[a)] |
| | Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth<br>Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather |
| | Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc. | Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather<br>Dried stains: grease removal spray |
| | Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc. | Stain remover suitable for leather |
| | Care of vehicle | Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream |
| **Carbon parts** | Dirt/deposits | Same treatment as plastic parts |

a) Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

▶

**WARNING**

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.

**WARNING**

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system or the connectors in water.
- Only clean the Audi e-tron charging system when the operating unit is fully disconnected from the power grid and from the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- **Headlights/rear lights**
  - Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
  - Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
- **Wheels**
  - Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
  - If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
  - Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.
- **Laser scanner**
  - Never use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the laser scanner – danger of scratches and cracks.
- **Windows and windscreen**
  - Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
  - To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
- **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
  - Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not use solvent-based cleaning products – risk of damage!
- **Paintwork**
  - The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
  - Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
  - Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
  - Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- **Decals**
  - Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
  - Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
  - Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
  - Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.
- **Displays/instrument cluster**
  - Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool. To switch off the upper and lower display, select the following on the home screen of the MMI: **SETTINGS** > **Display & brightness** > **MMI** > **Screen cleaning**.
  - The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!

▶

– Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

– **Control consoles**
  – Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

– **Seat belts**
  – Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
  – Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
  – If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

– **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**
  – Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
  – To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.

– **Natural leather**
  – Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
  – Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
  – Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
  – Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

– **Clip wall mount**
  – Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or fluids containing alcohol – risk of discolouration!

**Note**

– It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
– Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
– The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

## Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

4M6012720AE

# Mobility

## General information

- If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- Put on your high-visibility vest.
- Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

**WARNING**

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

## Equipment

### High-visibility vest

Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the driver's or front passenger's door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

### Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle




**Fig. 209** Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- To open the cover, turn the catch ⇨ *Fig. 209* and fold down the cover.
- Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.

**WARNING**

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

### First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit

The first-aid kit is stowed in the storage compartment in the rear left door.

### Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.

**WARNING**

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

**Note**

– The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.

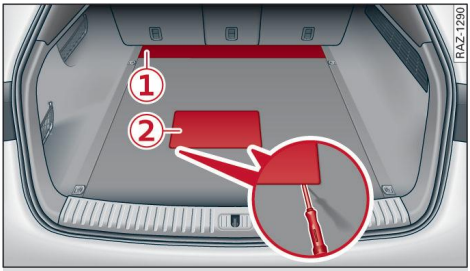
– The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

## Toolkit / tyre repair kit / jack

Applies to: vehicles with toolkit, tyre repair kit and jack




Applies to: vehicles with conventional power unit
**Fig. 210** Luggage compartment: Floor panel




Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive
**Fig. 211** Luggage compartment: Covers

Conventional power unit: The vehicle toolkit, jack*, tyre repair kit* and compressor* are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇨ *Fig. 210*.

Plug-in hybrid drive: The tools, tyre repair kit and compressor are stored under covers ① and ② in the luggage compartment ⇨ *Fig. 211*.

Conventional power unit

- ▸ Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel ⇨ *Fig. 210*.
- ▸ Applies to vehicles with spare wheel: Turn the knob anti-clockwise and take out the spare wheel.

Plug-in hybrid drive

- ▸ To access cover ① ⇨ *Fig. 211*, you will need to fold down the rear seat ⇨ *page 94*.
- ▸ Open the cover.
- ▸ To open cover ②, carefully prise it out using the screwdriver from the vehicle toolkit.

Conventional power unit: Depending on the version, the vehicle toolkit and the tyre repair kit* may be located under the spare wheel*, under a further cover or in the toolbox.

**Note**

– The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: The vehicle must not be driven if the tyre repair kit is not on-board.

# Tyre repair kit

## Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 352*.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Select transmission position P.
- ▸ Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇨ *page 353*.

## Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit




**Fig. 212** Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C. ▶

**The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:**

– On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ① ⇨ *Fig. 212*.
– If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
– If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

**WARNING**

– Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
– Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
– If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
– Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
– If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
– Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
– If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
– Keep the sealant away from children.
– After using the tyre sealant the tyre pressure monitoring system* may malfunction or display incorrect values. Therefore, please drive carefully to the next available qualified workshop.

**For the sake of the environment**

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately ⇨ *page 381, Information on waste disposal*.

**Note**

– If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
– Please note the expiry date on the tyre sealant container. If necessary, have the tyre sealant replaced by a qualified workshop.
– Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
– Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

## Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

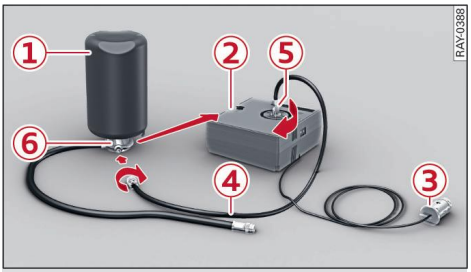



**Fig. 213** Components of the tyre repair kit

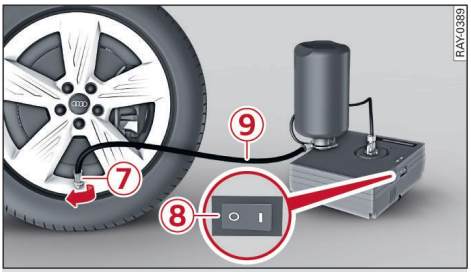



**Fig. 214** Connecting the tyre repair kit

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇨ *page 353*.

### Setting up the tyre repair kit

▸ If necessary, remove the “max. 80 km/h” sticker from the socket on the compressor.
▸ Take the connector ③ and the compressor hose ④ out from the bottom of the housing. ▶

- ▸ Screw one end of the compressor hose ④ clockwise into the socket ⑤ on the compressor[1]. Screw the other end onto the flange ⑥ of the tyre sealant container ①.
- ▸ Place the tyre sealant container (flange facing down) into the opening ② on the compressor.
- ▸ Unscrew the dust cap from the valve of the damaged tyre.
- ▸ Screw the filler hose ⑨ onto the valve ⑦ ⇨ *Fig. 214*.
- ▸ Insert the connector ③ ⇨ *Fig. 213* into a socket in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch on the ignition.

### Inflating the tyre

- ▸ Move the switch ⑧ ⇨ *Fig. 214* on the compressor to position **I**.
- ▸ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▸ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the filler hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇨ ⚠.

**WARNING**

– Please observe the manufacturer's safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant container.
– If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes, this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
– Seek professional assistance if it is not possible to repair a tyre puncture with the sealant.

**Note**

Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

[1] Even if the compressor in your vehicle looks slightly different, it will be operated in much the same way.

### After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ▸ After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ▸ If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

**WARNING**

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:
– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
– Vehicle handling could be impaired.
– If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

**For the sake of the environment**

A used tyre sealant container can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

**Note**

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant container at a qualified workshop.

## Changing a wheel

### Preparations

*Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.*

- ▸ Please refer to the important safety information ⇨ *page 352*.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Select transmission position P.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- ▸ Take out the tools ⇨ *page 353* and spare wheel ⇨ *page 359*. ▶

▸ Applies to vehicles with air suspension: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Air suspension: wheel change**.
▸ Switch off the ignition.

**WARNING**

– When using the jack*, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
– Applies to vehicles with active roll stabilisation: Switch off the ignition, as an adjustment in the vehicle's suspension could change the height of the vehicle and lead to an accident.

## Removing the wheel bolt caps




**Fig. 215** Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

▸ Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle toolkit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *Fig. 215*.
▸ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

## Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

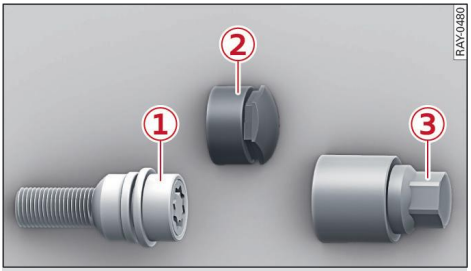



**Fig. 216** Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To remove the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle toolkit).

▸ Remove the cap ②.
▸ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
▸ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the adapter ③.
▸ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇨ *page 356*.

**Note**

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

## Loosening wheel bolts




**Fig. 217** Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

▸ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt[1)]. ▶

[1)] An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇨ *page 356*.

- Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner* near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner* carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

**WARNING**

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

## Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

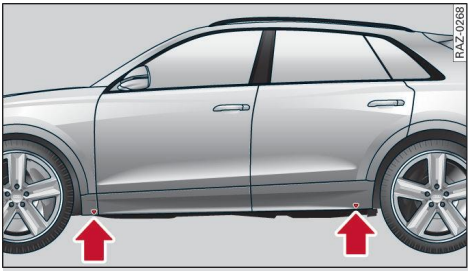



**Fig. 218** Sills: markings

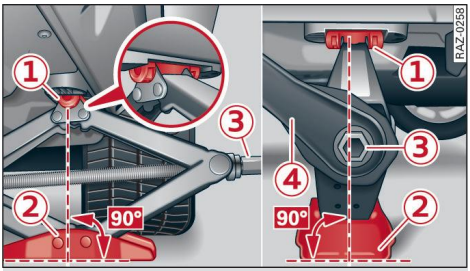



**Fig. 219** Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground (the jack can be found in the vehicle toolkit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.
- Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇨ *Fig. 218*. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- Wind up the jack under the jacking point on the underside of the door sill using the hexagon socket ③ (from the vehicle toolkit) until the cylindrical part of the arm ① ⇨ *Fig. 219* of the jack is below the plastic mount.
- Align the jack so that the cylindrical part of the arm ① fits in the plastic mount under the door sill and the base plate ② of the jack is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
- To raise the vehicle, insert the correct side of the ratchet handle ④ (from the vehicle toolkit) onto the hexagon socket ③.
- Move the ratchet handle ④ back and forth in a clockwise direction until the wheel is clear of the ground.

**WARNING**

- Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!
- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
- Use only the jack supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack – risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Do not use the jack provided with the vehicle to lift any other vehicles or loads – risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with air suspension: The height of the parked vehicle can change as a result of variations in temperature and loading.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

**CAUTION**

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

## Taking off / putting on a wheel

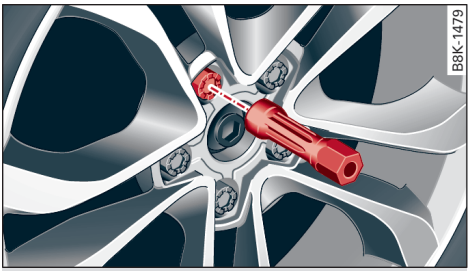



**Fig. 220** Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts

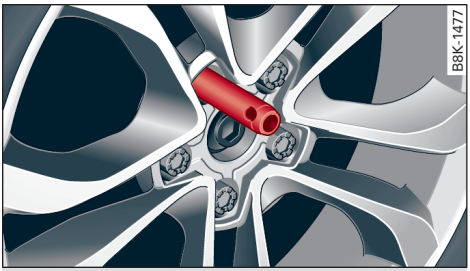



**Fig. 221** Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

### Taking off the wheel

- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle toolkit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇨ *Fig. 220*.
- Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle toolkit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇨ *Fig. 221*[1)].
- Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- Take off the wheel ⇨ (!). The mounting pin stays where it is.

### Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇨ *page 358*.

- Ensure that the wheel bolts and threads on the wheel hubs are clean, turn easily and are free of oil and grease.
- Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇨ (!).
- Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner*.

**WARNING**

– Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇨ *page 336*.
– Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

## Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should ▶

1) Applies to vehicles with ceramic brake discs*: Use a second mounting pin* (from the vehicle toolkit) for the bottom hole following the same procedure as described for the first mounting pin.

be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

### After changing a wheel

- Fit the wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- Put the tools and jack back in their correct storage location.
- If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 92*.
- Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- Adjust the tyre pressure and store it in the MMI ⇨ *page 343* or ⇨ *page 344*.
- The wheel bolts should be tightened to 160 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

## Collapsible spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with collapsible spare wheel

The collapsible spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the collapsible spare wheel. The collapsible spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a collapsible spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The collapsible spare wheel is stowed under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Important: The tools ⇨ *page 353* and compressor must be unpacked and ready for use.

### Removing

- Take hold of the handle and fold back the floor panel.
- Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
- Take out the collapsible spare wheel.

Pump up the collapsible spare wheel prior to use.

### Inflating

- Unscrew the valve cap from the collapsible spare wheel.
- Screw the compressor hose onto the tyre valve of the collapsible spare wheel.
- Plug the connector of the compressor into an electrical socket on the vehicle and switch it on.
- Run the compressor until the tyre pressure reaches the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker ⇨ *page 338, Fig. 208* ⇨ (!).
- Screw the valve cap back onto the valve.

### Stowing

- Unscrew the valve completely to release the air from the tyre. If necessary, seek assistance from a qualified workshop.
- Screw the valve back in once the air has escaped.
- Wait a few hours before placing the collapsible spare wheel back in the spare wheel well. Only then can it be folded back completely and stowed safely.
- Then screw the valve cap back onto the valve.
- Secure the collapsible spare wheel with the plastic knob.
- Fold the floor panel back down.

### Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the collapsible spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the rear wheels when using snow chains, fit the collapsible spare wheel in place of one of the front wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the front and use this wheel to replace the punctured rear wheel.

**WARNING**

– Use the collapsible spare wheel in an emergency only and take extra care when driving if it is more than 6 years old.
– The compressor and the hose can become very hot during operation (risk of burns).
– The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the collapsible spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.

– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the collapsible spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
– Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the collapsible spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
– Never use more than one collapsible spare wheel on the vehicle at the same time – risk of accident!
– No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the rim of the collapsible spare wheel.

**CAUTION**

Turn the compressor off after 10 minutes at the latest (risk of overheating). Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes before using it again.

## Jump-starting

### Preparations

*You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.*

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, you can use another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

#### Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

**WARNING**

– When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
– Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 320*.
– Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).

**CAUTION**

– If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: Do **not** use your vehicle to jump-start another vehicle. This would cause serious damage to your vehicle's electrical system.

**Note**

– There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
– The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
– Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need.

## Jump-starting the vehicle

*The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.*

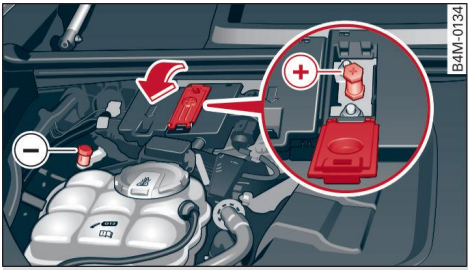



**Fig. 222** Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

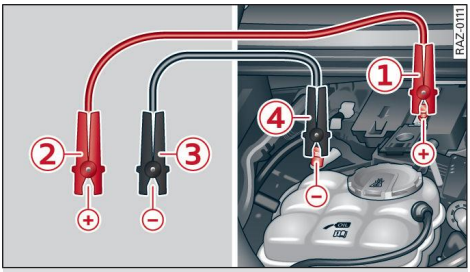



**Fig. 223** Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the engine compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 330*.

### Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

▸ Open the red cap on the positive terminal ⇨ *Fig. 222*.

1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the jump-start connection ① ⇨ *Fig. 223* on your vehicle.
2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

### Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.
4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the jump-start connection ④ on your vehicle.

### Starting the engine

▸ Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
▸ Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.
▸ If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
▸ Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.
▸ With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
▸ Refit the red cap onto the positive terminal.

**WARNING**

– Jump leads must never be connected directly to the battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment.
– The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
– The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
– Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

**CAUTION**

Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle. ▶

**Note**

Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

# Towing away

## General information

*You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.*

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

### Information on towing vehicles

When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

– The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
– The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

### Additional note on towing by breakdown truck

The vehicle may only be towed with the front axle raised. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

### Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

**WARNING**

– There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
– There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter – risk of accident!
– Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.

**CAUTION**

– If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
– Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.
– For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started.

**Note**

– It is not possible to move the selector lever out of transmission position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the parking lock ⇨ *page 116*.
– Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇨ *page 211* if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
– Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

## Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇨ *page 362*. ▶

### Preparations

- Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇨ *page 363*, ⇨ *page 364*.
- Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇨ *page 62*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

### Towing vehicle (front)

- Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- Accelerate with particular care.
- Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

### Vehicle being towed (rear)

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇨ ⚠.
- Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
- Release the parking brake ⇨ *page 125*.
- Select transmission position N.
- Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

**⚠ WARNING**

– If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
– If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

## Front towline anchorage

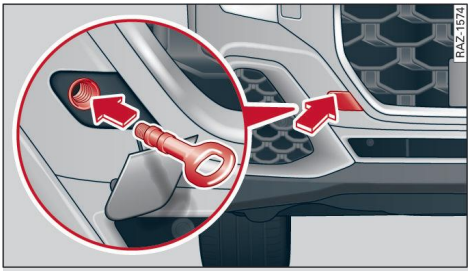



**Fig. 224** Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 353*.
- Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇨ *Fig. 224*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

**⚠ WARNING**

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

**Note**

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

## Rear towline anchorage

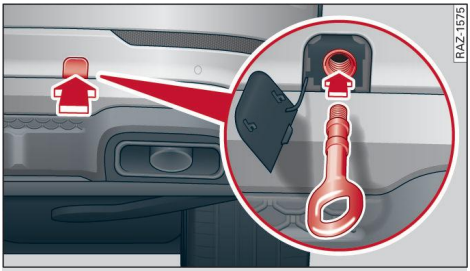



**Fig. 225** Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 1)

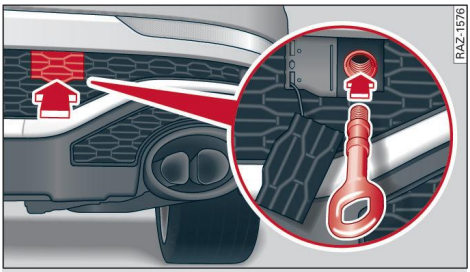



**Fig. 226** Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage (version 2)

### Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket* have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▸ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 353*.
- ▸ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇨ *Fig. 225*/⇨ *Fig. 226*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▸ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▸ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

### Vehicles with towing bracket*

- ▸ Swivel out the towing bracket ⇨ *page 161*.
- ▸ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket* do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

**WARNING**

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

To avoid damaging the towing bracket*, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

**Note**

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

# Fuses and bulbs

## Fuses

### Changing fuses

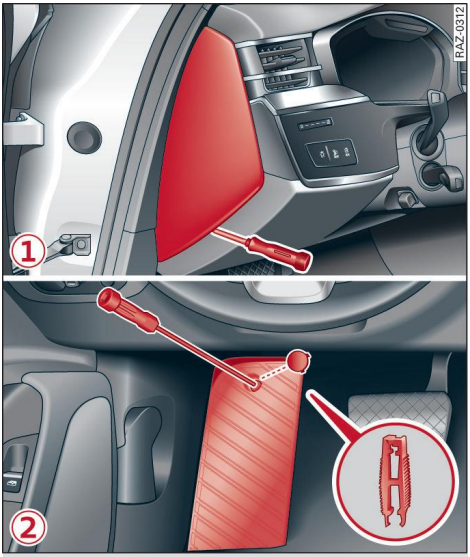



**Fig. 227** Dash panel (left-side): Fuse cover ①, driver's footwell: Fuse cover and clip ②

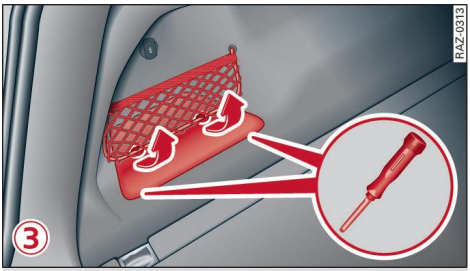



**Fig. 228** Luggage compartment (left side): Fuse cover ③

There are fuses fitted in various locations in your vehicle. The information below includes only those fuses that you can replace yourself. Should any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop. Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

The fuses are located at the left-hand end of the dash panel ①, in the driver's footwell ② and on the left side of the luggage compartment ③.

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle toolkit ⇨ *page 353*.
- Remove the appropriate cover.
- If fitted, pull the coloured plastic frame out of the fuse carrier.
- Take the clip out of the fuse carrier in the driver's footwell ②.
- Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- Attach the plastic frame again if removed earlier.
- Put the cover back on.

**Colour coding for fuses**

| Colour | Rating in amperes |
|---|---|
| black | 1 |
| grey | 2 |
| purple | 3 |
| pink | 4 |
| light brown | 5 |
| brown | 7.5 |
| red (narrow) | 10 |
| light blue | 15 |
| yellow | 20 |
| white or transparent | 25 |
| light green | 30 |
| blue-green | 35 |
| orange | 40 |
| red (wide) | 50 |

**WARNING**

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

**CAUTION**

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

**Note**

Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

## Fuses in footwell

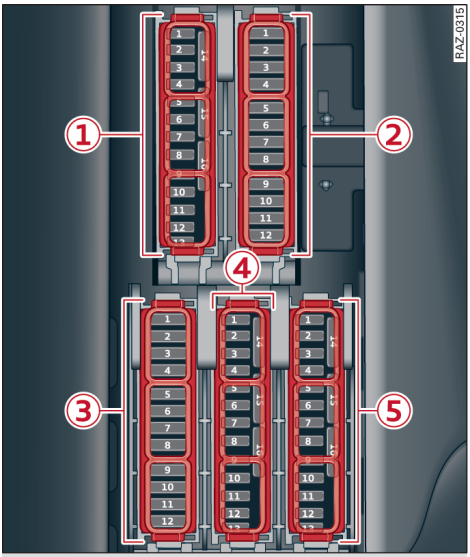



**Fig. 229** Driver's footwell (left-hand drive vehicles): Fuse carrier with plastic frames

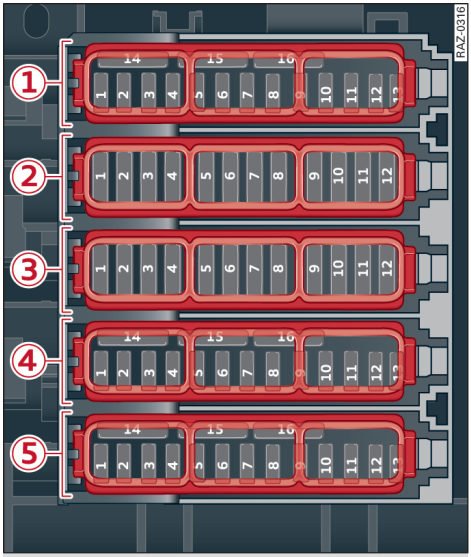



**Fig. 230** Driver's footwell (RHD vehicles): Fuse carriers with plastic frames

| Fuse carrier ① (brown) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Catalytic converter heater, camshaft adjuster |
| 2 | Air mass meter, Lambda probes |
| 3 | Engine heating, injectors, exhaust flaps |
| 4 | Heating water pump, exhaust flaps, NOx sensor, particulate sensor, biodiesel sensor |
| 5 | Brake light sensor |
| 6 | Engine valves |
| 7 | Lambda probes, air mass meter |
| 8 | High-pressure pump, engine mountings |
| 9 | Engine components, engine relays |
| 10 | Oil pressure sensor, oil temperature sensor |
| 11 | 48 V coolant pump, 48 V starter alternator, 12 V starter alternator |
| 12 | Engine valves |
| 13 | Engine cooling |
| 14 | Drive system control unit |
| 15 | Oxygen sensors |
| 16 | Fuel pump |

▶

| Fuse carrier ② (red) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Ignition coils |
| 4 | Electric compressor |
| 5 | Engine mountings |
| 6 | Windscreen washer system control unit |
| 7 | Dash panel |
| 8 | Air conditioner blowers |
| 9 | Control unit for driver assist systems |
| 10 | Emergency call and communication control unit |
| 11 | Power unit start, clutch for electric drive system |

| Fuse carrier ③ (black) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Seat heating (front) |
| 2 | Wipers |
| 3 | Headlight electronics (left) |
| 4 | Panoramic glass roof |
| 5 | Door control unit, front left |
| 6 | Sockets |
| 7 | Door control unit, rear right |
| 9 | Headlight electronics (right) |
| 10 | Control unit for windscreen/headlight washer system |
| 11 | Door control unit, rear left |
| 12 | Auxiliary heating, exterior sound generator |

| Fuse carrier ④ (brown) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Seat ventilation, seat electronics, interior mirror, A/C control console (rear), diagnostic connection |
| 2 | Control unit for vehicle electrical system, diagnostic interface |
| 3 | Engine sound control unit |
| 4 | Gear oil cooling valve |
| 5 | Power unit start, electric drive system |
| 8 | Night vision assist, active roll stabilisation |
| 9 | Adaptive cruise assist |
| 10 | External sound generator |

| Fuse carrier ④ (brown) | |
|---|---|
| 11 | Intersection assist, driver assist systems |
| 13 | Left headlight |
| 15 | USB connection |

| Fuse carrier ⑤ (red) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Anti-theft alarm system |
| 2 | Drive system control unit |
| 3 | Seat electronics (front), lumbar support |
| 4 | Selector lever for automatic gearbox |
| 5 | Horn |
| 6 | Parking brake |
| 7 | Diagnostic interface |
| 8 | Roof electronics control unit |
| 9 | Electronic toll collection system (ETC) |
| 10 | Airbag control unit |
| 11 | Electronic stabilisation control (ESC), anti-lock brake system (ABS) |
| 12 | Diagnostic connection, light sensor/rain sensor |
| 13 | Air conditioner |
| 14 | Door control unit, front right |
| 15 | Air conditioner compressor |
| 16 | Brake system pressure accumulator |

## Fuses – dash panel

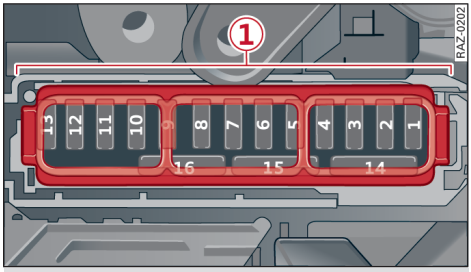



**Fig. 231** Dash panel (left side): Fuse carrier with plastic frames

| Fuse carrier ① (black) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 2 | Audi phone box, external aerial |
| 3 | Air conditioner, perfume function |

| Fuse carrier ① (black) | |
|---|---|
| 4 | Head-up display |
| 5 | USB ports with charging function |
| 7 | Steering column lock |
| 8 | Upper/lower display |
| 9 | Instrument cluster |
| 10 | DVD drive |
| 11 | Light switches, switch panels |
| 12 | Steering column electronics |
| 13 | MMI control dial |
| 14 | MMI infotainment control unit |
| 15 | Steering column adjustment |
| 16 | Heating for steering wheel |

## Fuses in luggage compartment

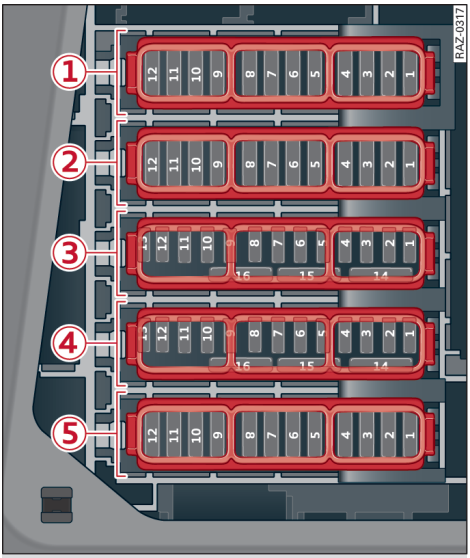



**Fig. 232** Luggage compartment, left side: Fuse carrier with plastic frames

| Fuse carrier ① (black) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | High-voltage heater, thermal management |
| 5 | Air suspension/suspension control |
| 6 | Automatic gearbox control unit |

| Fuse carrier ① (black) | |
|---|---|
| 7 | Seat heating (rear), A/C control console (rear) |
| 9 | Central locking system, rear light (left-side) |
| 10 | Front belt tensioner (driver's side) |
| 11 | Central locking for boot lid, fuel tank flap, luggage compartment cover |
| 12 | Boot lid control unit |

| Fuse carrier ② (red) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Air conditioner blowers (rear) |
| 2 | Sound system |
| 3 | Emission control, engine sound control unit |
| 4 | A/C control console (rear) |
| 5 | Towing bracket (right lights) |
| 6 | Towing bracket swivel motor |
| 7 | Towing bracket release |
| 8 | Towing bracket (left lights) |
| 9 | Electrical socket for towing bracket |
| 10 | Four-wheel sport differential |
| 11 | Emission control |
| 12 | Rear belt tensioner (driver's side) |

| Fuse carrier ③ (brown) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Control unit for driver assist systems |
| 3 | Lumbar support (right-side) |
| 4 | Side assist |
| 6 | Tyre pressure loss indicator |
| 7 | External aerial |
| 8 | Remote control receiver (auxiliary heater), fuel tank module |
| 10 | TV tuner, control unit for data exchange and telematics |
| 11 | Control unit for convenience access and start authorisation |
| 12 | Garage door opener |
| 13 | Reversing camera, surround view cameras |
| 14 | Convenience system control unit, rear light (right-side) |

▶

| Fuse carrier ③ (brown) | |
|---|---|
| 15 | Rear belt tensioner (passenger's side) |
| 16 | Front belt tensioner (passenger's side) |

| Fuse carrier ④ (red) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 1 | Active roll stabilisation |
| 2 | Emergency cut-out connection for high-voltage battery |
| 3 | Coolant pump for high-voltage battery |
| 4 | Power electronics control unit |
| 5 | Brake servo |
| 6 | Voltage converter |
| 8 | Air conditioner compressor |
| 9 | Control unit for additional battery |
| 10 | High-voltage battery |
| 11 | Charging system |
| 12 | Remote control receiver for auxiliary heater/air conditioning |
| 14 | Thermal management, coolant pumps |
| 15 | Thermal management control unit |

| Fuse carrier ⑤ (brown) | |
|---|---|
| **No.** | **Electrical equipment** |
| 7 | Seat heating (front) |
| 9 | Emission control |
| 10 | Seat heating (rear), A/C control console (rear) |
| 12 | Emission control |

## Bulbs

**Note**

Your vehicle is fitted with maintenance-free headlights and rear lights. Please contact your Audi dealer or qualified workshop if a light source does not work.

# Data protection

## Information on data protection

Further information can be found online on your regional Audi site or the MMI in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

## Image recording

### Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

The functions of the park assist require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.

**Note**

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

## Memory

### Vehicle control units

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

**Onboard diagnostic system (OBD)**

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

**WARNING**

- Improper use of the connection socket for the onboard diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

### Event data recorder

**Event data recorder**

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data will be stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal ▶

data on the occupants or the accident location will be stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

### Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM) which collects data not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

### Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

– If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or
– If the police have made an official request; or
– If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

## Memory for automated driving [1)]

Applies to: vehicles with memory for automated driving

Data are stored in a memory in the vehicle while the park assist plus ⇨ *page 233* is active. The data are encrypted and are continuously overwritten by more recent data every few seconds. The data are deleted when the ignition is switched off.

In certain situations, for instance if an airbag has been deployed or a parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding technical data are stored in the memory for automated driving. The data storage system for automated driving is a non-volatile storage medium with limited storage capacity. When the memory is full, the oldest data are overwritten by the most recent data.

### Exporting data

You can retrieve the data from the memory for automated driving and export the data to a USB stick. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, the automated systems must not be active and the ignition must be switched on. A USB stick must be connected to the USB input.

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **Data management** > **Statistics**.
▸ Follow the instructions given by the MMI.

The export will be aborted if, for instance, you switch to a different menu. ▶

[1)] The availability of the system may be restricted in certain countries.

### Recorded data

The following data are recorded and encrypted:
– Driver interaction (e.g. driver applies brakes)
– Vehicle dynamics (e.g. road speed)
– Status of automated systems
– Control requests
– Relevant measured variables from monitoring surroundings
– System status, time stamp and vehicle position when park assist plus is activated/deactivated

Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com/en/privacy-audi-connect.html, or on the MMI:

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About the memory**.

**Note**

– The processing and storage of the data is performed locally in the vehicle. There is no automatic transmission of data to Audi or other third parties (e.g. cloud-based). Data ownership remains with the holder or driver of the vehicle. Audi cannot access the data.
– For further information and evaluation of the data, please contact Audi customer support.

# Information transmitted

## Data collection

Applies to: vehicles with data collection

Depending on the country, Audi can access the vehicle and collect data for the following purposes, for example:
– Data collection for research and development
– Data collection for statistics, analyses and reporting purposes
– Data collection for personalised assessments

The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

If you wish to change the data collection settings, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to change the data collection settings in the privacy settings.

## Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

▸ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Privacy**.
▸ Further information on the privacy settings and the corresponding symbols can be displayed in the status bar by pressing ⓘ on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

### Maximum privacy setting

When the **Activate privacy** function is switched on, the data connection will be deactivated or the transmission of data restricted, because all safety-related Audi connect services and all Audi connect services required by law or contract will remain activated. The majority of Audi connect services will be deactivated.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be available for the use of Audi connect services. After deactivating the **Activate privacy** function, you should check the individual data categories as described under *Individual privacy settings*.

### Individual privacy settings

You can use individual MMI settings to determine which data are transmitted from the vehicle. Data will be transmitted if you switch on a data category.

You can also deactivate individual services for your vehicle at my.audi.com when you are logged in to the vehicle as the key user ⇨ *page 37*. These deactivated services will not be available in the vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com. ▶

**CAUTION**

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

**Note**

- The following interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, smartphone interface, Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC) and onboard diagnostic system (OBD).
- When maximum privacy is switched on, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certificates, switch maximum privacy off for at least ten minutes every three months. Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet. A symbol in the status bar of the MMI indicates whether the necessary data connection exists ⇨ *page 29*.
- If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
  - The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
  - No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
  - The Audi connect vehicle tracking system remains available in its entirety and data can still be transmitted. Please note that the Audi connect vehicle tracking system is not displayed on the MMI in the further information on privacy settings.
  - The Audi connect key remains available with complete functionality.
  - Online Car Care remains available without restrictions and data will continue to be transferred while the embedded SIM card is logged in to the mobile network.
  - If the geofencing alert, speed alert and valet alert services have been activated by the key user, these remain available without restrictions and data continue to be transmitted.
  - Stored destinations (favourites, last destinations, etc.) will only be stored in the vehicle. If you allow data transmission again, these destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account. If you do not want these destinations to be synchronised, delete them before you allow data transmission again.

## Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that Audi can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case Audi passes on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. Audi will not store your personal content. The ▶

necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site or on the MMI by selecting the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Legal information** > **About Audi connect**.

# Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

## Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle

Please read the safety information ⇨ *page 320, General information* and ⇨ *page 357, Raising the vehicle*.

### General information

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

### Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular servicing work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain servicing work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for servicing work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

### Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.

**WARNING**

- There is a risk of accident if servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- The is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- Please read the safety information on the engine compartment ⇨ *page 320*.

**CAUTION**

- If servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).

– If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
– Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.

**For the sake of the environment**

– You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
– Technical changes to the vehicle can have a negative effect on both the fuel consumption and the emissions.

**Note**

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

## Accessories and replacement parts

### Introduction

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi accessories. Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Have all work performed by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends having all work performed by a qualified Audi workshop.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the CE symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

### Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

**WARNING**

– The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
– Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
– When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

## Position for a toll device on the windscreen

Commercially available, radio-based equipment (such as toll devices) can be attached to the inside of the windscreen to the right of the interior mirror base. The surface must be clean and free of dust and grease.

- Applies to vehicles with heat-resistant glass: Attach the sticker approx. 6 cm away from the top edge of the glass and approx. 1 cm to the right of the black dot matrix pattern.
- Applies to vehicles with windscreen heating or insulated glass: Attach the sticker to the window panel provided.

4M6012720AE

# Technical data

## Identification data

### Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

– Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Car information**.
– At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen
– Stamped under the carpet below the front right seat

### Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame.

### Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different country versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

**Note**

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

## Vehicle data

### Dimensions

| | Length (mm) | Width (mm) | Width across mirrors (mm) | Height, unladen (mm) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Q8 SUV | 4992 – 5004 | 1995 – 1996 | 2190 | 1678 – 1717 |
| RS Q8 SUV | 5022 | 2007 | 2190 | 1686 – 1710 |
| SQ8 SUV | 4992 – 5004 | 1995 – 1996 | 2190 | 1678 – 1717 |

### Capacities

| | Approximate capacities (litres) |
|---|---|
| Fuel tank[a)] | 75 / 85[b)] |
| AdBlue tank[c)] | 24 |
| Windscreen/headlight washer system | 5.8 / 6.1[b)] |

a) The amount of fuel that can be added is lower than the full capacity due to remaining fuel in the tank.
b) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.
c) The capacity may be larger for technical reasons when filling from a canister.

### Weights

**Roof load**

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 100 kg.

**Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads**

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU ▶

regulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

| | Kerb weight (unladen weight) | Gross vehicle weight | Maximum front axle weight | Maximum rear axle weight |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Q8 SUV 45 TFSI quattro | 2075 | 2595 | 1360 | 1450 |
| Q8 SUV 45 TDI quattro | 2235 | 2900 | 1475 | 1530 |
| Q8 SUV 50 TDI quattro | 2235 | 2900 | 1475 | 1530 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI quattro | 2175 | 2830 | 1445 | 1490 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI e quattro | 2490 | 3110 | 1550 | 1700 |
| Q8 SUV 60 TFSI e quattro | 2490 | 3110 | 1550 | 1700 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 441 kW | 2390 | 3015 | 1600 | 1630 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 471 kW | 2350 | 3015 | 1600 | 1630 |
| SQ8 SUV TFSI quattro | 2315 | 2960 | 1550 | 1580 |

**Trailer weight**

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed:

– 115 / 140[1)] kg (Q8 SUV)

– 140 kg (RS Q8 SUV)

– 140 kg (SQ8 SUV)

The values listed do not apply to towing brackets with square tubes ⇨ *page 165*. The values in the tables below are given in kg.

| | Maximum rear axle weight when towing | Trailer | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Without brakes | With brakes on gradient up to 8% | With brakes on gradient up to 12% |
| Q8 SUV 45 TFSI quattro | 1550 | 750 | 2000 | 2000 |
| Q8 SUV 45 TDI quattro | 1630 | 750 | 2800 – 3500 | 2800 – 3500 |
| Q8 SUV 50 TDI quattro | 1630 | 750 | 2800 – 3500 | 2800 – 3500 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI quattro | 1590 | 750 | 2800 – 3500 | 2800 – 3500 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI e quattro | 1800 | 750 | 2800 – 3500 | 2800 – 3500 |
| Q8 SUV 60 TFSI e quattro | 1800 | 750 | 2800 – 3500 | 2800 – 3500 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 441 kW | 1730 | 750 | 3500 | 3500 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 471 kW | 1730 | 750 | 3500 | 3500 |
| SQ8 SUV TFSI quattro | 1680 | 750 | 3500 | 3500 |

[1)] The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

## Engine data

| | Max. power output (kW at rpm) | Max. torque (Nm at rpm) | Maximum speed (km/h) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Q8 SUV 45 TFSI quattro | 195 / 5250 – 6500 | 370 / 1600 – 4500 | 241 |
| Q8 SUV 45 TDI quattro | 170 / 3500 – 5000 | 500 / 1500 – 3000 | 226 |
| Q8 SUV 50 TDI quattro | 210 / 3500 – 4000 | 600 / 1750 – 3250 | 241 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI quattro | 250 / 5200 – 6400 | 500 / 1370 – 4500 | 250 |
| Q8 SUV 55 TFSI e quattro | 250 / 5200 – 6400 (290[a)]) | 500 / 1370 – 5200 (600[a)]) | 240 |
| Q8 SUV 60 TFSI e quattro | 250 / 5200 – 6400 (360[a)]) | 500 / 1370 – 5200 (700[a)]) | 240 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 441 kW | 441 / 6000 | 800 / 2200 – 4500 | 250 |
| RS Q8 SUV TFSI quattro 471 kW | 471 / 6000 | 850 / 2300 – 4500 | 250 |
| SQ8 SUV TFSI quattro | 373 / 5500 | 770 / 2000 – 4000 | 250 |

a) The value in brackets applies to the whole plug-in hybrid drive system.

# Other information

## Online Car Care

Applies to: vehicles with Online Car Care

Incoming messages from Online Car Care are displayed on the MMI when the ignition is switched on.

▸ Applies to MMI: To call up Online Car Care messages afterwards, select the following on the home screen: **CAR** > **Settings & service** > **Online Car Care**.

Online Car Care displays exceptional service events, service campaigns and recalls applying to your vehicle.

**WARNING**

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 254*.
– It is essential that recalls from the manufacturer be carried out. Failure to do so may void the vehicle's type approval. If measures are not carried out, the vehicle's functions may be impaired – risk of accident!

**CAUTION**

– Please always observe the information ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 254*.
– It is essential that recalls from the manufacturer be carried out – risk of damage to the vehicle!

## Trademarks and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod touch, Apple CarPlay, Lightning and iTunes Radio are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

## Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

The information is available on the following website (varies from country to country):

www.audi.de/reach

## Information on waste disposal

### General information

Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers, qualified workshops or your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

### Batteries

As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

4M6012720AE

## Electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner.

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return.

**Note**

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

## Vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

## Recycling information for France

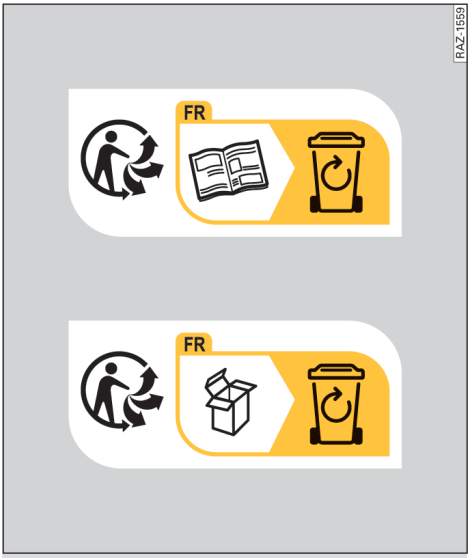



**Fig. 233** Recycling information for Owner's Manual




**Fig. 234** Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, Audi connect key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

# Radio equipment

## Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

### Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

## Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

### Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo

CE

### Frequency table

| Radio service | Frequency band | Max. radio frequency power | Supplier |
|---|---|---|---|
| Audi connect key | 13.56 MHz | < 42 dBµA/m @ 10m | 33, 19 |
| Audi phone box | LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz | 23dBm | 37 |
| | LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz | 23dBm | 37 |
| | LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz | 23dBm | 37 |
| | LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz | 23dBm | 37 |
| | NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz | 23dBm | 37 |
| Bluetooth | 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz | 8.64 dBm | 27 |
| Connectivity box/cGW/OCU | GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz | 33 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD 32: 1452 MHz – 1496 MHz | - | 27 |
| | LTE TDD B38: 2570 MHz – 2620 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE TDD B40: 2300 MHz – 2400 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | 5G FDD N1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz | 24dBm | 27 |
| | 5G FDD N3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz | 24dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | 5G FDD N28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz | 24 dBm | 27 |
| | 5G TDD N77: 3300 MHz – 4200 MHz | 24dBm | 27 |
| | GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz | 30 dBm | 27 |
| | 5G TDD N78: 3300 MHz – 3800 MHz | 24dBm | 27 |
| | UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz | 24 dBm | 27 |
| | UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz | 24 dBm | 27 |
| | UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz – 915 MHz | 24 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| | LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz | 23 dBm | 27 |
| DDA aerial module | BT: 2400 MHz - 2483.5 MHz | 5 dBm | 31 |

| Radio service | Frequency band | Max. radio frequency power | Supplier |
|---|---|---|---|
| Remote control for auxiliary heating | 868.7 MHz – 869.2 MHz | 25 mW ERP | 26 |
| Front radar 1 | 76-77 GHz | 29.2 dBm (LRR4R) | 35 |
| Remote control key | 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz | <10 mW E.R.P | 19 |
| | 21.130 kHz – 22.750 kHz | <42 dBµA/m @10m | 19 |
| Garage door opener | 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz | 0.04 mW ERP | 11 |
| | 868.00 MHz – 868.60 MHz | 1.05 mW ERP | 11 |
| | 868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz | 1.05 mW ERP | 11 |
| Tyre pressure monitoring | 433.92 MHz | 10 mW | 14 |
| Radar 1 for surroundings | 76 GHz – 77 GHz | 30 dBm (R3TR) | 25 |
| Radar 2 for surroundings | 76-77 GHz | 30 dBm (R3TR) | 25 |
| Wireless charging | 110 kHz -113 kHz | 42 dBµA/m | 37 |
| Wi-Fi | 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz | 19.33 dBm | 27 |
| | 5180 MHz – 5240 MHz | 15.92 dBm | 27 |
| | 5745 MHz– 5825 MHz | 13.31 dBm | 27 |
| Central control unit | 21.130 kHz – 22.750 kHz | <42 dBµA/m @10m | 13, 4 |

**Supplier table**

| Number | Address |
|---|---|
| 4 | Continental Automotive GmbH<br>Siemensstr. 12<br>93055 Regensburg<br>Germany |
| 11 | Gentex Corp.<br>600 North Centennial Street<br>Zeeland, MI 49464<br>USA |
| 13 | Hella KGaA. Hueck & Co.<br>Rixbecker Straße 75<br>59552 Lippstadt<br>Germany |
| 14 | Huf Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH<br>Gewerbestr. 40<br>75015 Bretten-Gölshausen<br>Germany |
| 19 | Marquardt GmbH<br>Schloss-Straße 16<br>78604 Rietheim-Weilheim<br>Germany |
| 25 | Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH<br>Am Technologiepark 1<br>42119 Wuppertal<br>Germany |
| 26 | Digades GmbH, digitales u. analoges Schaltungsdesign<br>Äußere Weberstraße 20<br>02763 Zittau<br>Germany |
| 27 | Lear Corporation GmbH<br>Industriestraße 48<br>96317 Kronach<br>Germany |

▶

| Number | Address |
|---|---|
| 31 | Continental Advanced Antenna GmbH<br>Römerring 1<br>31137 Hildesheim<br>Germany |
| 33 | Vitesco Technologies France SAS<br>Powertrain Components<br>1 avenue Paul Ourliac BP 13633<br>31036 Toulouse Cedex 1<br>France |

| Number | Address |
|---|---|
| 35 | Robert Bosch GmbH<br>Postfach 1661<br>71226 Leonberg<br>Germany |
| 37 | Molex Technologies GmbH<br>Mizarstraße 3<br>12529 Schönefeld<br>Germany |

You can also find additional information e.g. product identifications online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

## Additional customer information




**Fig. 235** Additional customer information

① Singapore
② Russia
③ Belarus
④ United Kingdom (applies to products placed on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
⑤ Thailand
⑥ Republic of Korea
⑦ Taiwan

### United Kingdom market

#### UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations: ▶

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14 5AN United Kingdom

**Türkiye**

**TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)**

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı[1]:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK: 41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

**Importer according to Article 12 of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) on imported radio equipment and electronic devices:**

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany

**Note**

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions can be found online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

[1] Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

# A


A/C cooling mode . . . . . 101
ABS
*see* Anti-lock brake system . . . . . 136
Acceleration measurement . . . . . 184
Accelerator . . . . . 115
Accessories . . . . . 376
ACVTS
*see* Audi connect vehicle tracking system (ACVTS) . . . . . 44
Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 192
Cleaning sensors . . . . . 347
Predictive control . . . . . 198
Adaptive cruise control
*see* Adaptive cruise assist . . . . . 192
AdBlue . . . . . 314
Capacity . . . . . 378
Driver messages . . . . . 315
Airbag system . . . . . 80
Deactivating front passenger's airbag . . . . . 83
Air conditioner . . . . . 100
Air conditioning when unlocking . . . . . 108
Air distribution setting . . . . . 102
Air quality display . . . . . 104
Air quality index . . . . . 104
Air recirculation mode . . . . . 102
Air suspension . . . . . 132
Alarm system
*see* Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 43
All-season tyres
*see* All-weather tyres . . . . . 340
All-weather lights . . . . . 59
All-weather tyres . . . . . 340
All-wheel steering . . . . . 134
Alpine roads . . . . . 128
Android Auto
*see* Smartphone interface . . . . . 304
Anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . . . 65
Anti-freeze
Coolant . . . . . 326
Windscreen washer system . . . . . 334
Anti-lock brake system . . . . . 136
Anti-theft alarm system . . . . . 43
Anti-theft wheel bolts . . . . . 356
App . . . . . 257
Apple CarPlay
*see* Smartphone interface . . . . . 304
AQI
*see* Air quality display . . . . . 104
Armrest (front centre) . . . . . 73
Ashtray . . . . . 90
ASR
*see* Traction control system . . . . . 136
Assist function for driving off
*see* Hold assist . . . . . 126
Assist systems, switching on/off . . . . . 175
At home
*see* Home address . . . . . 272
Audi adaptive light . . . . . 59
Audi ceramic . . . . . 124
Audi connect
Key . . . . . 39, 48
Key card . . . . . 39, 45, 48
Key (safelock mechanism) . . . . . 43
Vehicle tracking system (ACVTS) . . . . . 44
*see also* connect . . . . . 254, 255
Audi connect remote & control . . . . . 257
Audi connect vehicle tracking system (ACVTS) . 44
Audi drive select . . . . . 131
Audi e-tron compact charging system . . . . . 150
Activating/deactivating PE conductor monitoring . . . . . 151
Changing/attaching mains cable . . . . . 156
Hooking in . . . . . 157
Limiting charging capacity . . . . . 150
Status and fault indicators . . . . . 151
Audio files . . . . . 289
Audi online manuals . . . . . 7
Audi phone box . . . . . 245
Audi pre sense . . . . . 208
Driver messages . . . . . 212
Audi pre sense front . . . . . 209
Audi virtual cockpit
*see* Instrument cluster . . . . . 17
AUTO
Air conditioner . . . . . 101
Automatic headlights . . . . . 59
Automatic air conditioner
*see* Air conditioner . . . . . 100
Automatic gearbox . . . . . 113
Manual release of parking lock . . . . . 116


4M6012720AE

Automatic supplementary heater . . . . . 104
Automatic wash and wipe . . . . . 66
Auxiliary air conditioner . . . . . 107
Auxiliary heating
*see* Auxiliary air conditioner . . . . . 107
Auxiliary heating/ventilation . . . . . 105
Average fuel consumption . . . . . 22
Average speed . . . . . 22
Axle loads . . . . . 378

# B

Background lighting . . . . . 64
Bandages
*see* First-aid kit . . . . . 352
Battery
12-volt vehicle battery . . . . . 330
Charging (12-volt vehicle battery) . . . . . 333
High-voltage battery . . . . . 139
Safety information . . . . . 332
Winter conditions (12-volt vehicle battery) .331
Battery (mobile phone)
Charging via USB . . . . . 245, 288
Wireless charging . . . . . 246
Battery (vehicle)
*see* High-voltage battery . . . . . 139
Battery, replacing
12-volt vehicle battery . . . . . 331
Vehicle keys . . . . . 47
Bicycle rack (trailer) . . . . . 163
Biodiesel . . . . . 310, 311
Bioethanol (fuel) . . . . . 310
Blind
Rear side windows . . . . . 54
Rear window . . . . . 66
Roof . . . . . 55
Blower . . . . . 102
Bluetooth
Audio player . . . . . 287
Connecting a device . . . . . 308
Connecting a mobile phone . . . . . 243
Deleting a device . . . . . 308
Device overview . . . . . 307
Disconnecting a device . . . . . 308
Displaying profiles . . . . . 308
Selecting a device . . . . . 308
Setting a favourite . . . . . 308
Boost function . . . . . 115
Boost pressure display . . . . . 21
Boot
*see* Luggage compartment . . . . . 92
Boot lid . . . . . 49
Activating/deactivating foot gesture control .52
Close button . . . . . 50
General information . . . . . 49
Opening/closing . . . . . 50
Opening/closing electrically . . . . . 50
Opening with foot gesture . . . . . 51
Releasing manually . . . . . 53
Box spanner . . . . . 353
Brake fluid
Checking brake fluid level . . . . . 329
Brakes . . . . . 123
Brake fluid . . . . . 329
Emergency braking function . . . . . 127
Hot . . . . . 128
New brake pads . . . . . 124
Brightness, adjusting . . . . . 64
Bulbs, changing . . . . . 369
Business address . . . . . 272

# C

Call list . . . . . 247
Cameras . . . . . 172
Positions . . . . . 174
Capacities . . . . . 378
AdBlue . . . . . 314
Caps for wheel bolts, removing . . . . . 356
Car care
Washing/cleaning . . . . . 346
Car keys . . . . . 39
Car transport . . . . . 133
Car wash . . . . . 346
Catalytic converter . . . . . 318
Central locking switch . . . . . 41
Central locking system . . . . . 39
Adjusting settings . . . . . 40
Auto Lock . . . . . 40
Boot lid . . . . . 50
Convenience key . . . . . 46
Convenience open/close . . . . . 55
Driver messages . . . . . 42
Locking/unlocking doors manually . . . . . 42

Remote control key . . . . . 46
Vehicle key . . . . . 46
Centre backrest, folding up/down . . . . . 95
Ceramic brakes . . . . . 124
Certificate of conformity . . . . . 385
Certification . . . . . 382, 385
Cetane number (diesel) . . . . . 311
Changing bulbs . . . . . 369
Charging
*see* Power sources . . . . . 90
Charging cable for domestic or industrial power outlets
*see* Audi e-tron compact charging system . 150
Charging cable for public charging stations . 149
Charging clip
*see* Clip wall mount . . . . . 157
Charging connector, releasing manually . . . . 146
Charging flap, opening . . . . . 144
Charging flap, releasing manually . . . . . 146
Charging indicator . . . . . 145
Charging system
*see* Audi e-tron compact charging system . 150
Charging time . . . . . 141
Chassis number
*see* Vehicle identification number . . . . . 378
Chemicals . . . . . 381
Child lock
DVD . . . . . 293
Electric windows . . . . . 53
Rear air conditioner console . . . . . 53
Rear doors . . . . . 53
TV . . . . . 300
Child restraint system . . . . . 83
Attaching with i-Size . . . . . 87
Attaching with ISOFIX . . . . . 87
Securing to top tether anchorage . . . . . 88
Securing with seat belt . . . . . 88
Cigarette lighter . . . . . 90
CI+ slot . . . . . 301
Cleaning . . . . . 346
Cleaning/treating natural leather . . . . . 349
Cleaning carbon parts . . . . . 348, 349
Cleaning controls and displays . . . . . 349
Cleaning fabrics . . . . . 349
Cleaning leatherette . . . . . 349
Cleaning microfibre . . . . . 349
Cleaning plastic parts . . . . . 349
Cleaning rubber seals . . . . . 348
Clip wall mount . . . . . 157
Clock . . . . . 22
Closing
Blind (roof) . . . . . 55
Blind (window) . . . . . 54
Bonnet . . . . . 322
Boot lid . . . . . 50
Convenience close . . . . . 55
Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Power-operated boot lid . . . . . 50
Windows . . . . . 54
Coasting . . . . . 118, 119
Coat hooks . . . . . 91
Cockpit dimming . . . . . 64
Collapsible spare wheel . . . . . 359
Combustion engine . . . . . 118
Coming home/leaving home
*see* Entry/exit lights . . . . . 62
Compartments . . . . . 91
Conference calling . . . . . 249
connect . . . . . 254
Data plans . . . . . 258
Emergency call . . . . . 260
Infotainment . . . . . 255
Infotainment services . . . . . 256
Online roadside assistance call . . . . . 262
Privacy . . . . . 373
Vehicle control services . . . . . 257
Connected devices . . . . . 307
Connections
*see* Media . . . . . 286, 289
Connect key
*see* Audi connect . . . . . 48
Consumer information . . . . . 375
Consumption
Lowering . . . . . 121
Consumption (fuel) . . . . . 22
Contacts
Importing/exporting . . . . . 251
Updating in MMI . . . . . 251
*see also* Directory . . . . . 248
Convenience aux. A/C . . . . . 108

Convenience key . . . . . 39
Convenience close . . . . . 55
Safelock mechanism . . . . . 43
*see also* Vehicle keys . . . . . 45
Convenience open/close
Windows/panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Coolant temperature gauge . . . . . 19
Cooling mode . . . . . 101
Cooling system
Anti-freeze . . . . . 326
Checking coolant level . . . . . 327
Topping up coolant . . . . . 327
Cornering light . . . . . 59
Cross-traffic (intersection assist) . . . . . 216
Cup holders . . . . . 91
Current fuel consumption . . . . . 22
Customer information . . . . . 381
Customer information regarding radio equipment . . . . . 385
Cyclist detection . . . . . 185

# D

Data module
Serial number (IMEI) . . . . . 250
Data plans . . . . . 258
Data protection . . . . . 373
Date . . . . . 22
Setting . . . . . 306
Daytime running lights . . . . . 59
Deactivating front passenger's airbag . . . . . 83
Declarations of conformity . . . . . 382
DEF
*see* AdBlue . . . . . 314
Demisting (windows) . . . . . 102
Demo mode
*see* Presentation mode . . . . . 277
Destination search . . . . . 266
Destination, entering . . . . . 266
From map . . . . . 269
Device overview . . . . . 307
Diesel . . . . . 310
Fuel . . . . . 311
Paraffinic diesel . . . . . 311
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)
*see* AdBlue . . . . . 314
Dimensions . . . . . 378
Dipped headlights . . . . . 59
Directional tread (tyres) . . . . . 358
Directory . . . . . 248
Business card . . . . . 248
Display
Cleaning . . . . . 349
Distance covered . . . . . 22
Distance warning . . . . . 205
Distraction warning . . . . . 182
Doors
Child lock . . . . . 53
Courtesy lighting . . . . . 63
Locking/unlocking manually . . . . . 42
Servo-assisted closing/power-close function .39
Door safelock . . . . . 43
Downhill assist function . . . . . 130
Downhill speed control . . . . . 128
Driver assist display . . . . . 18, 22, 193
Driver assist menu . . . . . 175
Driver assist systems (driver messages) . . . . 172
Driver information system . . . . . 18
Drives
*see* Media . . . . . 286, 289
Drive select
*see* Audi drive select . . . . . 131
Drive system . . . . . 123
Audi drive select . . . . . 131
Driving abroad . . . . . 258
Driving away . . . . . 112
Driving off-road . . . . . 129
Driving off (assist function)
*see* Hold assist . . . . . 126
Driving program . . . . . 114, 204
Driving time . . . . . 22
Driving tips
Driving efficiently . . . . . 121
Driving off-road . . . . . 129
Driving through water . . . . . 129
Hills and gradients . . . . . 128
Dust filter
*see* Enhanced air filter with activated carbon . . . . . 100, 104
DVD drive . . . . . 287

# E


E-mail . . . . . 252
E10
*see* Ethanol (fuel) . . . . . 310
Easy entry function . . . . . 73
*see also* Easy exit function . . . . . 73
Easy exit function . . . . . 73
Economy tips . . . . . 191
EDL
*see* Electronic differential lock . . . . . 136
EDR
*see* Event data recorder (EDR) . . . . . 370
Efficiency assist . . . . . 190
Predictive control . . . . . 198
Efficiency assist menu . . . . . 190
Electrical socket
*see* Power sources . . . . . 90
Electrical system . . . . . 330
Electric range . . . . . 274
Electric windows . . . . . 54
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 125
Electronic differential lock . . . . . 136
Electronic immobiliser . . . . . 45
Electronic stabilisation control . . . . . 136
Embedded SIM card . . . . . 255
Emergency assist . . . . . 216
Emergency braking function . . . . . 127
Emergency call . . . . . 250, 260
Emergency key . . . . . 45
Emergency running . . . . . 116
Emission control system . . . . . 318, 319
Energy consumers . . . . . 22
Energy flow display . . . . . 120
Energy management . . . . . 121
Energy recovery . . . . . 118
Engine . . . . . 117
Coolant . . . . . 326
Jump-starting . . . . . 360
Power output . . . . . 380
Running in . . . . . 117
Start/stop system . . . . . 122
Starting/stopping . . . . . 110
Switching off in an emergency . . . . . 110
Engine compartment
Layout . . . . . 323
Opening/closing bonnet . . . . . 322
Safety information . . . . . 320
Engine data
*see* Sport displays . . . . . 21
Engine oil
Checking . . . . . 324
Consumption . . . . . 324
Oil change intervals . . . . . 334
Temperature gauge . . . . . 21
Topping up . . . . . 324
Type . . . . . 324
Warning lamp . . . . . 324
Engine sound
Audi drive select . . . . . 132
Engine start system . . . . . 111
Engine stopping
*see* Start/stop system . . . . . 122
Enhanced air filter with activated carbon . . . . . 100, 104
Entry/exit lights . . . . . 62
Environmental tips
Filling the tank . . . . . 312
Leaks . . . . . 321
EPG
*see* Programme guide . . . . . 299
ERA-GLONASS . . . . . 262
*see also* Emergency call . . . . . 262
ESC
*see* Electronic stabilisation control . . . . . 136
ESC offroad . . . . . 137
eSIM
*see* Embedded SIM card . . . . . 255
Ethanol (fuel) . . . . . 310
EU Directive 2014/53/EU . . . . . 382
Event data recorder (EDR) . . . . . 370
EV mode . . . . . 119
Exit warning . . . . . 214
Exterior lighting . . . . . 59
Exterior mirrors . . . . . 64
Folding in (setting) . . . . . 40
External aerial . . . . . 245
External voice control . . . . . 35

# F


Factory settings
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 307
TV . . . . . 300
FAME (fuel) . . . . . 311
Fastening rings . . . . . 96
Fastest route . . . . . 266
Fatigue warning . . . . . 181
Favourites . . . . . 29
Bluetooth . . . . . 308
Navigation . . . . . 268
Podcast . . . . . 283
Radio . . . . . 281
Telephone . . . . . 247
Ferry transport . . . . . 133
File formats (media sources) . . . . . 294
Filling the tank . . . . . 311
Capacity . . . . . 378
Fuel tank flap . . . . . 312
Releasing fuel tank flap manually . . . . . 314
Finding entries
*see* Destination search . . . . . 266
*see* Search function . . . . . 281, 292
Fire extinguisher . . . . . 352
First-aid kit . . . . . 352
Flooded roads, tips for driving . . . . . 129
Floor mat . . . . . 70
Floor panel . . . . . 97
Footwell temperature . . . . . 104
Forward gear
*see* Transmission position . . . . . 113
Four-wheel drive
*see* quattro . . . . . 135
Frequency band
*see* Waveband . . . . . 279
Front cabin (overview) . . . . . 10
Front collision warning
*see* Audi pre sense front . . . . . 208
Front passenger's seat adjustment
From rear cabin . . . . . 73
Front . . . . . 73
Front window
*see* Windscreen . . . . . 66
Fuel . . . . . 310
Capacity . . . . . 378
Current fuel consumption . . . . . 22
Fuel gauge . . . . . 17
Lowering consumption . . . . . 121
Functions on demand . . . . . 256
Functions requiring a licence . . . . . 256
*see also* Functions on demand . . . . . 256
Fuses, changing . . . . . 365


# G


Garage door opener . . . . . 56
Gear shift indicator . . . . . 23
Glass heating . . . . . 108
Glove box . . . . . 91
G meter
*see* Sport displays . . . . . 21
Gradients, driving on . . . . . 128
Greeting sound, setting . . . . . 306
Gross vehicle weight . . . . . 378


# H


Handbrake
*see* Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 125
Handsfree . . . . . 244
Hands Free Profile . . . . . 244
Hazard alerts . . . . . 276
Hazard warning lights . . . . . 62
Head-up display
Adjusting brightness . . . . . 64
How to use . . . . . 33
Setting . . . . . 33
Headlight range control . . . . . 59
Headlights
Headlight range control . . . . . 59
Washer system . . . . . 66
Washer system (topping up washer fluid) . 334
Washing . . . . . 347
Headlight washer system
Capacity . . . . . 378
Head restraints
Adjusting . . . . . 76
Removing/installing . . . . . 76
Heated rear window . . . . . 102
Heated steering wheel . . . . . 105
Heating . . . . . 100
HFP
*see* Hands Free Profile . . . . . 243

High-visibility vest . . . . . 352
High-voltage battery . . . . . 139
Audi e-tron compact charging system . . . . 150
Charge level display . . . . . 17
Charging . . . . . 141, 144
Charging cable for public charging stations . . . . . 149
Charging equipment . . . . . 147
Charging indicator on vehicle . . . . . 145
Charging methods . . . . . 141
Charging sockets on vehicle . . . . . 141
Charging time . . . . . 141
Connecting charging cable . . . . . 144
Driver message when charging . . . . . 146
Opening charging flap . . . . . 144
Proper use . . . . . 140
Setting timers . . . . . 147
Transporting charging equipment . . . . . 148
What to do if not using for a long time . . . 142
High-voltage system . . . . . 139
Driver messages . . . . . 139
Hazardous situations . . . . . 139
Smell of smoke/gas . . . . . 139
Hill hold assist . . . . . 112
Hills, driving on . . . . . 128
Hold assist . . . . . 126
Home address . . . . . 272
HomeLink
*see* Garage door opener . . . . . 56
Home screen . . . . . 25
Horn . . . . . 10
Hotspot
*see* Wi-Fi . . . . . 258

## I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems) . . . . 87
Ignition
Switching on/off . . . . . 110
Immediate charging mode . . . . . 146
Immobiliser
*see* Electronic immobiliser . . . . . 45
Indicator lamps
*see* Warning lamps . . . . . 11
Inflation pressures
Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . . . 342
Tyre pressure monitoring system . . . . . 343
Tyres . . . . . 338
Inspection intervals
*see* Service interval display . . . . . 334
Instrument cluster . . . . . 17
Changing views . . . . . 18
Cleaning . . . . . 349
Engine code . . . . . 309
Failure . . . . . 17
Gear shift indicator . . . . . 23
On-board computer . . . . . 22
Operation . . . . . 18
Selecting layout . . . . . 18
Selecting tabs . . . . . 18
Service interval display . . . . . 334
Software information . . . . . 309
Vehicle functions . . . . . 22
Version information . . . . . 309
Instrument lighting . . . . . 64
Integrated help . . . . . 26
Intelligent coasting
*see* Coasting . . . . . 118
Interior lights . . . . . 63
Interior mirror . . . . . 65
Interior monitor . . . . . 43
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . . . 66
Internet
*see* connect . . . . . 254, 255
Internet radio
*see* Online radio . . . . . 282, 283
Intersection assist . . . . . 215
Ioniser . . . . . 103
iPhone
*see* USB ports with charging function . . . . 288
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) . . . 87

## J

Jack . . . . . 353, 357
Jacking points . . . . . 357
Wheel change mode . . . . . 355
Jump-starting . . . . . 360

## K

Kerb weight . . . . . 378

4M6012720AE

Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag . . . . . 83
Key card
*see* Audi connect . . . . . 48
Keys . . . . . 39, 45
Audi connect key . . . . . 45, 48
Audi connect key card . . . . . 45, 48
Convenience open/close . . . . . 55
Emergency key . . . . . 45
Not detected . . . . . 111
Replacement keys . . . . . 45
Replacing battery . . . . . 47
Safelock mechanism . . . . . 43
Unlocking/locking . . . . . 46
Key user . . . . . 38
Kick-down . . . . . 115

# L

Lane assist
*see* Lane departure warning . . . . . 196
*see* Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) . 196
Lane departure warning . . . . . 206
Cleaning area around camera . . . . . 347
Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) . . . . . 196
Language, setting . . . . . 306
Lap timer . . . . . 183
Laser lights . . . . . 61
Laser scanner . . . . . 172
Cleaning . . . . . 348
Launch control . . . . . 115
Leather, cleaning/treating . . . . . 349
LED on vehicle charging socket
*see* Charging indicator . . . . . 145
Left-hand traffic . . . . . 62
Legal information
Licence periods . . . . . 308
Software information . . . . . 308
Software licences . . . . . 308
Version information . . . . . 308
Lights . . . . . 59
Driving on right/left . . . . . 62
Exterior . . . . . 59
Interior . . . . . 63
Light sensor/rain sensor
Headlights . . . . . 59
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . . 66
Load guard . . . . . 95
Load retention set . . . . . 96
Local user . . . . . 37
Locking/unlocking . . . . . 39
By remote control . . . . . 46
In the lock . . . . . 42
Using Audi connect vehicle control services . 47
With the convenience key . . . . . 46
Lowering rear of vehicle . . . . . 94
LTE
*see* External aerial . . . . . 245
Luggage
Boot lid . . . . . 49
Luggage compartment . . . . . 92
Cover (electric) . . . . . 94
Cover (manual) . . . . . 93
Extending . . . . . 94
Floor panel . . . . . 97
Power sources . . . . . 90
Luggage rack
*see* Roof carrier . . . . . 97
Lumbar support . . . . . 71, 72

# M

Mailbox . . . . . 249
Main beam headlights
Main beam assist . . . . . 60
Maintenance . . . . . 375
Maintenance intervals
*see* Service interval display . . . . . 334
Make-up mirrors . . . . . 66
Manoeuvre assist . . . . . 241
Manual gear selection . . . . . 114
Manual operation
Boot lid . . . . . 51, 53
Charging connector . . . . . 146
Charging flap . . . . . 146
Doors . . . . . 42
Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 56
Manual release of parking lock . . . . . 116
Map
Changing scale . . . . . 269
Display . . . . . 270
How to use . . . . . 269
Setting a destination . . . . . 269

MAP
*see* Message Access Profile . . . . . 251
Map preview . . . . . 268
Map update . . . . . 274
Online . . . . . 274
USB connection . . . . . 274
Massage function . . . . . 72
Front . . . . . 73
Matrix LED headlights . . . . . 60
Matt paintwork, washing . . . . . 346
Maximum speed . . . . . 380
Measurement units, setting . . . . . 306
Media . . . . . 286, 289
DVD drive . . . . . 286
Media centre . . . . . 290
Media drives
Formats supported . . . . . 294
Memory function . . . . . 80
Memory list
*see* Favourites . . . . . 281
Menu language
*see* Language, setting . . . . . 306
Menu: Driver assist . . . . . 175
Menu: Efficiency assist . . . . . 190
Menu: Opening boot lid with foot gesture . . . 52
Menu: Parking aid . . . . . 175
Message Access Profile . . . . . 251
Messages . . . . . 251
Mild hybrid drive . . . . . 118
Mileage recorder . . . . . 20
Resetting . . . . . 20
Mirrors
Adjusting exterior mirrors . . . . . 64
Anti-dazzle setting . . . . . 65
Make-up mirrors . . . . . 66
MMI
*see* Multi Media Interface . . . . . 26
Mobile phone
*see* Telephone . . . . . 243
Mobile phone tray
*see* Audi phone box . . . . . 245
Mode 3 charging cable
*see* Charging cable for public charging stations . . . . . 149
Modifications . . . . . 375
Motor braking effect
*see* Recuperation . . . . . 118
Motorway light . . . . . 59
Mountain passes . . . . . 128
Mounting pin (for changing wheels) . . . . . 353
Multi-function steering wheel
Assigning function to button . . . . . 36
Buttons . . . . . 18, 36
Operation . . . . . 18
Speech dialogue system . . . . . 34
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 26
Menus/symbols . . . . . 27
Operation . . . . . 24, 27
Switching displays on/off . . . . . 26
Music
*see* Media . . . . . 286, 289
Mute . . . . . 36
myAudi . . . . . 37, 256
myAudi navigation . . . . . 265, 268
myAudi users . . . . . 37

# N

Narrow section . . . . . 204
Navigation . . . . . 265
Better route . . . . . 275
Changing scale . . . . . 269
Destination details . . . . . 268
Destination search . . . . . 266
Favourites . . . . . 272
*see also* Map . . . . . 269
Navigation database
Version information . . . . . 308
Navigation (instrument cluster) . . . . . 271
Neutral
*see* Transmission position . . . . . 113
Night vision assist . . . . . 185
Cleaning camera . . . . . 347
Notification centre . . . . . 30
NOx catalytic converter
*see* AdBlue . . . . . 314
Number plate
Securing . . . . . 376
Number plate holder . . . . . 376

4M6012720AE

# O


Occupant detection (checking rear seats)
Setting the notification sound . . . . . 42
Octane rating (petrol) . . . . . 310
Off-road
*see* Driving off-road . . . . . 129
Office address
*see* Business address . . . . . 272
OFF (air conditioner) . . . . . 101
Oil
*see* Engine oil . . . . . 324
On-board computer . . . . . 22
Onboard diagnostic system (OBD) . . . . . 370
Online
Campaigns . . . . . 381
Car Care . . . . . 381
Service . . . . . 381
Online Car Care . . . . . 381
Online manuals
*see* Owner's Manual (digital) . . . . . 7
Online map
*see* Satellite map . . . . . 273
Online media . . . . . 287
Online Owner's Manual . . . . . 7
Online radio . . . . . 282
Online roadside assistance call . . . . . 262
Online services
*see* connect . . . . . 254, 255
Online traffic information . . . . . 275
Opening . . . . . 39
Blind (roof) . . . . . 55
Blind (window) . . . . . 54
Bonnet . . . . . 322
Boot lid . . . . . 50
Boot lid with foot gesture . . . . . 51
Convenience open . . . . . 55
Fuel tank flap . . . . . 312
Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Power-operated boot lid . . . . . 50
Windows . . . . . 54
Opening/closing
*see* Unlocking/locking . . . . . 39, 46
Operating mode . . . . . 119
Operation
Head-up display . . . . . 33
Instrument cluster . . . . . 18
Multi-function steering wheel . . . . . 18
Multi Media Interface . . . . . 24, 27
Speech dialogue system . . . . . 34
Text entry . . . . . 31
Touch display . . . . . 24
TV . . . . . 298
Options
Media . . . . . 293
Radio . . . . . 283
TV . . . . . 299
Outside noise . . . . . 121
Overtake prevention . . . . . 202
Overview diagram (front cabin) . . . . . 10
Owner's Manual
Calling up digital manual . . . . . 7
Owner's Manual (digital)
Accessing . . . . . 7
In the infotainment system . . . . . 7


# P


Paddle levers . . . . . 114
Paint damage . . . . . 348
Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Closing manually . . . . . 56
Convenience open/close . . . . . 55
Opening quickly . . . . . 56
Paraffinic diesel . . . . . 310, 311
Park assist . . . . . 231
Park assist plus . . . . . 233
Parking . . . . . 112
Parking aid menu . . . . . 175
Parking aids . . . . . 219
Adjusting volume . . . . . 220, 221
Automatic activation . . . . . 220
Cleaning sensors/camera . . . . . 347
Finding a parking space . . . . . 228
Park assist . . . . . 231
Park assist plus . . . . . 233
Parking aid plus . . . . . 220
Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 227
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 236
Reversing camera . . . . . 223
Surround view cameras . . . . . 223
Switching off manoeuvre assist . . . . . 242
Trailer view . . . . . 224
Parking and manoeuvring . . . . . 219

Parking brake
*see* Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 125
Parking lights . . . . . 60
Parking lock
*see* Transmission position . . . . . 113
Particulate display . . . . . 104
Particulate filter . . . . . 318
Path descriptions . . . . . 25
Pedals . . . . . 115
Pedestrian detection . . . . . 185
Performance driving . . . . . 127
Performance (engine) . . . . . 380
Perfume . . . . . 103, 104
Personal hotspot . . . . . 255
Personal profiles
*see* Users . . . . . 37
Petrol . . . . . 310
Petrol grade
*see* Petrol . . . . . 310
Phone book
*see* Directory . . . . . 248
Picture format
Video . . . . . 291, 293
PIN
4-digit PIN . . . . . 37
Protection . . . . . 38
Playback
Media . . . . . 289
Radio . . . . . 280
Plug-in hybrid drive . . . . . 118
Coolant . . . . . 326, 327
Power meter . . . . . 20
Plug-in hybrid mode . . . . . 119
Podcast
*see* Online radio . . . . . 282, 283
Polishing . . . . . 348
Pollen filter
*see* Enhanced air filter with activated carbon . . . . . 100, 104
Power-close function (servo-assisted door closing) . . . . . 39
Power-operated boot lid . . . . . 50, 51
Power/torque display
*see* Sport displays . . . . . 21
Power meter . . . . . 17, 20
Power sources . . . . . 90, 288
Power steering
*see* Steering . . . . . 134
Prayer compass . . . . . 278
Predictive control . . . . . 198
Predictive messages . . . . . 191
Predictive route guidance . . . . . 271
Pre sense
*see* Audi pre sense . . . . . 208
Presentation mode . . . . . 278
Pressure display (boost) . . . . . 21
Programme guide
TV . . . . . 299
Progressive steering . . . . . 134
Pyrotechnic components . . . . . 375

## Q

quattro . . . . . 135
Selective wheel torque control . . . . . 136
Quick access buttons
*see* Shortcuts . . . . . 31

## R

Racing circuit . . . . . 127
Radio . . . . . 279
Radio text . . . . . 282
Station list . . . . . 279
Radio equipment . . . . . 376, 382, 385
Radio Equipment Directive . . . . . 382
Radio frequency
*see* Waveband . . . . . 279
Radio sticker . . . . . 377
Radio transmitters . . . . . 376
Rail transport . . . . . 133
Rain sensor/light sensor
Headlights . . . . . 59
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) . . . . 66
Random playback . . . . . 291
Range . . . . . 22
Range monitor . . . . . 120
Range potential . . . . . 120
Range (electric) . . . . . 274
REACH (chemicals regulation) . . . . . 381
Reading lights . . . . . 63
Rear air conditioner console
Child lock . . . . . 53

Rear cross-traffic assist . . . . . 227
Rear fog light . . . . . 59
Rear lights
Washing . . . . . 347
Rear seats . . . . . 74
Rear seats, checking
Setting the notification sound . . . . . 42
Rear seats, folding down . . . . . 94
Rear window heating . . . . . 102
REAR (air conditioner) . . . . . 101
Recall campaigns . . . . . 381
Recuperation . . . . . 22, 118
Reminder signal . . . . . 246
Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 236
Remote access rights (key user) . . . . . 38
Remote control
Auxiliary heating/ventilation . . . . . 106
Garage door opener . . . . . 56
Remote control key . . . . . 39, 45
Convenience open/close . . . . . 55
LED . . . . . 47
Replacement keys . . . . . 45
Replacing battery . . . . . 47
Safelock mechanism . . . . . 43
Unlocking/locking . . . . . 46
*see also* Vehicle keys . . . . . 45
Remote park assist plus
*see* Remote-controlled parking . . . . . 236
Repair kit
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) . . . . . 353
Repairs . . . . . 375
Replacement keys . . . . . 45
Replacement parts . . . . . 376
Residual heat . . . . . 103
Rev counter . . . . . 17, 19
Reverse gear
*see* Transmission position . . . . . 113
Reversible floor covering . . . . . 97
Reversing camera . . . . . 223
RFID sticker . . . . . 377
Right-hand traffic . . . . . 62
Rims . . . . . 339
Washing . . . . . 348
Rolling
Electromechanical parking brake . . . . . 125
Hold assist . . . . . 126
Neutral (N) . . . . . 113
Rolling away . . . . . 112
Roof
*see* Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Roof carrier . . . . . 97
Roof load . . . . . 378
Route guidance
Stopping . . . . . 269
*see also* Navigation . . . . . 265
Running in
New brake pads . . . . . 124
New tyres . . . . . 336

## S

Safelock mechanism . . . . . 43
Satellite map . . . . . 273
Saving fuel
Economy tips . . . . . 191
Energy consumers . . . . . 22
Recuperation . . . . . 22
Scrappage . . . . . 375
Screen
*see* Touch display . . . . . 24
Screwdriver . . . . . 353
Search function
Media . . . . . 292
Radio . . . . . 281
Seat belts . . . . . 76
Cleaning . . . . . 349
Securing child restraint system . . . . . 88
Seat heating . . . . . 102
Seats
Adjusting . . . . . 71
Adjusting front seats . . . . . 72
Adjusting rear seats . . . . . 74
Cleaning . . . . . 349
Folding down . . . . . 94
Front passenger's seat adjustment . . . . . 73
Head restraints . . . . . 75
Massage function . . . . . 72
Memory function . . . . . 80
Resetting position . . . . . 73
Storing seat profile . . . . . 80

Seat ventilation . . . . . 102
Selective catalytic reduction
*see* AdBlue . . . . . 314
Selector lever . . . . . 113
Selector lever position
*see* Transmission position . . . . . 113
Self-help . . . . . 352
Self-learning navigation
*see* Predictive route guidance . . . . . 271
Sensors
Areas covered . . . . . 172
Positions . . . . . 174
Service campaigns . . . . . 381
Service interval display . . . . . 334
Service intervals
*see* Service interval display . . . . . 334
Service Schedule (digital) . . . . . 7
Servo-assisted closing (doors) . . . . . 39
Settings . . . . . 306
Announcements and sounds . . . . . 306
Bluetooth . . . . . 306
Date and time . . . . . 306
Directory . . . . . 250
E-mail . . . . . 252
Language . . . . . 306
Measurement units . . . . . 306
Media . . . . . 293
Navigation . . . . . 277
Opening boot lid with foot gesture . . . . . 52
Radio . . . . . 284
Sound . . . . . 306
System . . . . . 306
Telephone . . . . . 250
Text message . . . . . 251
Time zone . . . . . 306
TV . . . . . 300
Wi-Fi . . . . . 258
Wi-Fi hotspot . . . . . 258
Setup wizard . . . . . 26
Shift light display . . . . . 21
Shop . . . . . 256
Shortcuts . . . . . 31
Shuffle
*see* Random playback . . . . . 291
Side assist . . . . . 212
Cleaning sensors . . . . . 347
Side lights . . . . . 59
SIM card . . . . . 255
Smartphone
*see* Telephone . . . . . 243
Smartphone interface . . . . . 304
Legal information . . . . . 309
Snow chains . . . . . 341
Software information
Legal information . . . . . 308
Software update . . . . . 307
Software version (MMI)
Version information . . . . . 308
Sound adjustment . . . . . 306
Source, selecting
Media . . . . . 289
Radio . . . . . 280
Spare wheel
*see* Collapsible spare wheel . . . . . 359
Speech dialogue system . . . . . 34
How to use . . . . . 34
Speed limit display
*see* Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 177
Speed limits
*see* Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 177
Speedometer . . . . . 17
Speed regulation systems
Cruise control . . . . . 188
Speed limiter . . . . . 188
Speed warning . . . . . 177
Sport differential . . . . . 135
Sport displays . . . . . 21
Start/stop system . . . . . 122, 123
Driver messages . . . . . 123
Switching off/on . . . . . 122
Starting with jump leads . . . . . 360
Starting (engine) . . . . . 123
Station memory
*see* Favourites . . . . . 281
Steering . . . . . 134
Audi drive select . . . . . 132
Steering lock . . . . . 110, 134
Steering wheel
Adjustment . . . . . 75
Electric adjustment . . . . . 75
Paddle levers . . . . . 114
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 105
*see also* Multi-function steering wheel . . . . 18

4M6012720AE

Stopover (navigation) . . . . . 269
Stopping vehicle . . . . . 112
Storage compartments . . . . . 91
Streaming
*see* Online media . . . . . 287
Stretch net . . . . . 96
Subtitles (DVD) . . . . . 293
Sun blind
Rear window . . . . . 66
*see also* Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Sunroof
*see* Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Sun visors . . . . . 66
Surround view cameras . . . . . 223
Suspension . . . . . 132
Audi drive select . . . . . 132
Suspension control . . . . . 132
Swerve assist . . . . . 211
Switching between calls . . . . . 249
Switching engine off . . . . . 123
Symbols
Charging equipment . . . . . 147
CI+ malfunctions . . . . . 302
Media . . . . . 291
Navigation . . . . . 269
Programme guide . . . . . 299
Radio . . . . . 280, 281
Teletext . . . . . 299
TV . . . . . 297, 298
*see also* Warning lamps . . . . . 11
SYNC (air conditioner) . . . . . 101
System settings . . . . . 306

## T

Tailgate
*see* Boot lid . . . . . 50
Technical data . . . . . 378
Technical Product Information . . . . . 381
Telephone . . . . . 243
Answering/ending calls . . . . . 249
Audi phone box . . . . . 245
Charging battery (USB) . . . . . 245
Connecting a mobile phone . . . . . 243
Connecting a second phone . . . . . 244
Dialling a number . . . . . 249
Disconnecting a mobile phone . . . . . 245
External aerial . . . . . 245
Options during a call . . . . . 249
Playing music . . . . . 287
Reminder signal . . . . . 246
Wireless charging . . . . . 246
Television
*see* TV . . . . . 297
Temperature display
Coolant . . . . . 17
Outside temperature . . . . . 20
Temperature displays
*see* Sport displays . . . . . 21
Temperature setting . . . . . 102
Tethering . . . . . 255
*see also* Wi-Fi . . . . . 258
Text entry . . . . . 31
Text message . . . . . 251
Themes . . . . . 303
Throttle
*see* Accelerator . . . . . 115
Tightening torque (wheel bolts) . . . . . 359
Tilt angle display . . . . . 128
Timer
*see* Lap timer . . . . . 183
Timer charging mode . . . . . 146
Timers (high-voltage battery) . . . . . 147
Time, setting . . . . . 306
tiptronic
*see* Manual gear selection . . . . . 114
Toll device . . . . . 377
Tone (sound)
*see* Sound adjustment . . . . . 306
Tools . . . . . 353
Top tether anchorage (securing a child restraint system) . . . . . 88
Torque
Engine . . . . . 380
Wheel bolts . . . . . 359
Touch display
Adjusting brightness . . . . . 26
Operation . . . . . 24
Touch displays
*see* Multi Media Interface . . . . . 26
Tow-away protection . . . . . 43

Towing . . . . . 158
Draw bar weight . . . . . 158
Rear carrier systems . . . . . 163
Swivelling towing bracket . . . . . 161
Towing bracket with square tube . . . . . 165
Trailer stabilisation . . . . . 163
Trailer weight . . . . . 158, 379
Towing away . . . . . 362
Towing mode
Air suspension . . . . . 160
Towline anchorage . . . . . 363, 364
TPMS
Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . . . 342
Tyre pressure monitoring system . . . . . 343
Warning lamp . . . . . 345
Tracking system
*see* Audi connect vehicle tracking system (ACVTS) . . . . . 44
Traction control system . . . . . 136
Trademarks . . . . . 381
Traffic information . . . . . 275
Online traffic information . . . . . 275
Traffic light information . . . . . 180
Traffic sign recognition . . . . . 177
Traffic signs . . . . . 181
Trailer assist . . . . . 167
Trailer view . . . . . 224
Transmission position . . . . . 113
Transporting charging equipment . . . . . 148
Turn assist . . . . . 211
Turning light . . . . . 59
Turn signals . . . . . 60
TV . . . . . 297
Type plate . . . . . 378
Tyres . . . . . 336, 353
Changing . . . . . 355
Directional tread . . . . . 358
Inflation pressure . . . . . 338
Lettering . . . . . 336
Load index . . . . . 336
Loose wheel warning . . . . . 340
Low-profile tyres . . . . . 341
Manufacturing date . . . . . 336
Service life . . . . . 338
Speed rating . . . . . 336
Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . . . 342
Tyre pressure monitoring system . . . . . 343
Tyre pressure (towing a trailer) . . . . . 158
Wear indicator . . . . . 338

## U

Unlocking/locking
By remote control . . . . . 46
In the lock . . . . . 42
Using the Audi connect key . . . . . 46
Using the Audi connect key card . . . . . 46
With central locking switch . . . . . 41
With the convenience key . . . . . 46
Usage tips . . . . . 26
USB adapters . . . . . 288
USB input . . . . . 90
USB ports with charging function . . . . . 288
USB stick
Types/formats supported . . . . . 294
*see also* USB ports with charging function . 288
Users
Local user . . . . . 37
myAudi users . . . . . 37

## V

Vehicle
Dimensions . . . . . 378
Identification data . . . . . 378
Raising . . . . . 357
Securing . . . . . 112
Starting . . . . . 110
Stopping . . . . . 112
Taking out of service . . . . . 351
Tilt angle . . . . . 128
Transporting the vehicle . . . . . 133
Unlocking/locking . . . . . 46
Vehicle control services . . . . . 257
*see also* Audi connect remote & control . . 257
Vehicle identification number . . . . . 378
Vehicle keys . . . . . 45
Vehicle rear, lowering . . . . . 94
Vehicle sound . . . . . 121
Ventilation . . . . . 100
Vents, adjusting . . . . . 104
VIEW button . . . . . 18
VIN
*see* Vehicle identification number . . . . . 378

4M6012720AE

Voice control function
External . . . . . 35
Volume of announcements, setting . . . . . 306
Volume, adjusting . . . . . 36
VTS
*see* Audi connect vehicle tracking system (ACVTS) . . . . . 44

# W

Warning lamps . . . . . 11
Warning triangle . . . . . 352
Washing . . . . . 346
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings . 348, 349
Washing tailpipes . . . . . 348
Waveband . . . . . 279
Waxing . . . . . 348
Weights . . . . . 378
Wheel bolts . . . . . 339
Anti-theft . . . . . 356
Torque . . . . . 359
Wheel imbalance . . . . . 338
Wheels . . . . . 336
Changing . . . . . 355
Loose wheel warning . . . . . 340
Tyre pressure loss indicator . . . . . 342
Tyre pressure monitoring system . . . . . 343
Washing . . . . . 348
Wi-Fi . . . . . 258
Settings . . . . . 258
Using hotspot . . . . . 255
Wi-Fi network . . . . . 255
Wi-Fi tethering . . . . . 255
Wild animal detection . . . . . 185
Window blind
*see* Panoramic glass roof . . . . . 55
Windows
Child lock . . . . . 53
Cleaning/de-icing . . . . . 349
Convenience open/close . . . . . 55
Defrosting . . . . . 102
Electric windows . . . . . 54
Opening/closing . . . . . 54
Windscreen
Washing . . . . . 66
Windscreen washer system . . . . . 66, 334
Capacity . . . . . 378
Windscreen wipers . . . . . 66
Winter conditions
12-volt vehicle battery . . . . . 331
Auxiliary air conditioner . . . . . 107
Auxiliary heating . . . . . 105
Cooling system . . . . . 326
De-icing windows . . . . . 349
Defrosting windows . . . . . 102
Diesel . . . . . 311
Rear window heating . . . . . 102
Seat heating . . . . . 102
Snow chains . . . . . 341
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 105
Tyres . . . . . 340
Washing the vehicle . . . . . 346
Windscreen washer system . . . . . 334
Winter tyres . . . . . 340
Wiper blades (front)
Changing . . . . . 67
Cleaning . . . . . 67
Wiper blade (rear)
Changing . . . . . 68
Cleaning . . . . . 68
Wireless Android Auto
*see* Smartphone interface . . . . . 304
Wireless Apple CarPlay
*see* Smartphone interface . . . . . 304
Wireless charging . . . . . 246
Work
*see* Business address . . . . . 272